

# Te Mahere Takutai Moana ā-Rohe o Waikato e Marohitia Nei **Proposed Waikato Regional Coastal Plan**



## Rules that have Immediate Legal Effect in the Proposed Waikato Regional Coastal Plan | Te Mahere Takutai Moana ā-Rohe o Waikato Marohitia Nei

[Note: this section does not form part of the Proposed Waikato Regional Coastal Plan]

The following rules have immediate legal effect upon notification of the Proposed Waikato Regional Coastal Plan | Te Mahere Takutai Moana ā-Rohe o Waikato Marohitia Nei (as at 18 August 2023).

Where a rule has immediate legal effect all associated standards, schedules, maps and definitions also have immediate legal effect.

Chapter	Applicable rules
AIR – Discharges to air   Ngā rukenga ki te rangi	<b>AIR-R1 to AIR-R5 inclusive.</b> All rules have immediate legal effect under section 86B(3)(a).
AQA – Aquaculture   Ahumoana	<b>AQA-R1 to AQA-R19 inclusive.</b> All rules have immediate legal effect under section 86B(3)(e). <i>Advisory note: the operative Waikato Regional Coastal Plan prohibited rules 16.5.6, 16.5.6A and 16.5.7 prevail and no resource consent can be applied for in relation to these activities.</i>
BIO – Biosecurity   Ārai taiao	None of these rules (BIO-R1 to BIO-R11 inclusive) have immediate legal effect.
DD – Disturbances and deposition   Whakararutanga me ngā waipara	None of these rules (DD-R1 to DD-R32 inclusive) have immediate legal effect.
ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity   Te mauri o te taiao me te rerenga rauropi	None of these rules (ECO-R1 to ECO-R19 inclusive) have immediate legal effect.
HH – Historic Heritage   Taonga onamata	<b>HH-R1 to HH-R5 inclusive.</b> All rules have immediate legal effect under section 86B(3)(d).
MO – Moorings   Ngā pou herenga waka	None of these rules (MO-R1 to MO-R19 inclusive) have immediate legal effect.
NOISE – Noise and vibration   Harurutanga	None of these rules (NOISE-R1 to NOISE-R5 inclusive) have immediate legal effect.
STR - Structures and occupation of space   Ngā hanganga i te takutai	None of these rules (STR-R1 to STR-R20 inclusive) have immediate legal effect.
WD – Discharges to water   Rūkenga ki te wai	<b>WD-R1 to WD-R18 inclusive.</b> All rules have immediate legal effect under section 86B(3)(a).
WT – Water Take, Use, Dam, Divert   Herenga, whakamahinga, aukati me te kaupare ā-wai	<b>WT-R1 to WT-R9 inclusive.</b> All rules have immediate legal effect under section 86B(3)(a).



# Chair's foreword | He kupu whakataki nā te Tiamana

*Kia tika ai mō te takutai*

## Getting it right for our coasts

Spending time on our seas or at the beach is a favourite Kiwi pastime. It's a place where we gather with whānau and friends. Where we go to maintain our physical, spiritual and mental health. And it's also where we can go to gather food.

It's not surprising then, iwi, stakeholders and communities share the desire to protect and enhance these qualities so they can continue to be enjoyed for generations to come.

That's where the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan has the really important job of setting out how we sustainably manage our region's coastal environment.

Input from iwi, stakeholders and communities have had a big influence on how we've developed the proposed plan as a tool that will help us to strike a balance between protecting our environment and using its resources.

In this new plan we have taken a fresh look at whether activities in the coastal marine area have the right level of scrutiny for the outcomes we seek and have made the plan easier to understand and use in decision-making.

We've also taken into account the specific issues, needs and requirements of our region as well as legislative changes and national and regional policy direction.

We now want to hear your views on whether the new plan has got it right or what changes may be required. You should also refer to the accompanying section 32 evaluation report which provides an assessment of plan provisions by topic/chapter.

It's our coast. It's our collective responsibility to get this right.

**The proposed Waikato Regional Coastal Plan is now presented for your submissions.**

Pamela Storey  
Chair, Waikato Regional Council



# Contents | Rārangi kaupapa

PART 1 - INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS   .....	1
WĀHANGA 1 – HE TĪMATANGA KŌRERO ME NGĀ WHAKARITENGA MATUA .....	1
1 INTRODUCTION   TE TĪMATANGA KŌRERO.....	2
2 HOW THE PLAN WORKS   MŌ TE WHAKAMAHI I TE MAHERE.....	4
3 INTERPRETATION   HE WHAKAMĀRAMATANGA .....	15
4 NATIONAL DIRECTION INSTRUMENTS   NGĀ TURE .....	37
5 TANGATA WHENUA .....	40
PART 2 – MANAGEMENT OF RESOURCES   .....	50
WĀHANGA 2 – TE WHAKAHAERE RAWA .....	50
6 IM – Integrated management   Whakahaere rawa pāhekoheko.....	51
7 AIR – Discharges to air   Ngā rukenga ki te rangi .....	57
8 AQA – Aquaculture   Ahumoana .....	61
9 BIO – Biosecurity   Ārai taiao.....	79
10 DD – Disturbances and deposition   Whakararutanga me ngā waipara .....	90
11 ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity   Te mauri o te taiao me te rerenga rauropi ...	105
12 EI – Energy and infrastructure   Pūngao me ngā hanganga matua.....	119
13 HH – Historic heritage   Taonga onamata .....	121
14 MO – Moorings   Ngā pou herenga waka .....	125
15 NATC – Natural character   Āhua tūturu .....	131
16 NFL – Natural features and landscapes (Seascapes)   Ngā tirohanga whenua .....	133
17 NH – Natural hazards   Ngā mōrearea ao tūroa.....	135
18 NOISE – Noise and vibration   Harurutanga .....	138
19 PA – Public access and recreation   Ara tumatanui me ngā mahi a rēhia.....	143
20 SASM – Ngā whenua tapu a te Māori   Sites and areas of significance to Māori .....	145
21 SB – Surf breaks   Ngā ngaru moana .....	148
22 STR - Structures and occupation of space   Ngā hanganga i te takutai.....	150
23 WAQ – Water quality   Kounga wai.....	162
24 WD – Discharges to water   Rūkenga ki te wai .....	164
25 WT – Water take, use, dam, divert   Herenga, whakamahinga, aukati me te kaupare ā-wai ...	175
PART 3 – APPENDICES AND MAPS   WĀHANGA 3 – NGĀ ĀPITI HANGA ME NGĀ MAHERE .....	180
Schedule 1 – Coastal marine area and river mouth boundaries   Āpiti 1 – Ngā rohenga takutai moana me ngā ngutuawa .....	181
Schedule 2 – Mooring areas   Āpiti 2 – Ngā wāhi pou herenga waka.....	183
Schedule 3 – Seascapes – Outstanding natural features and landscapes   Āpiti 3 - Ngā tirohanga takutai – ngā tirohanga whenua .....	185
Schedule 4 - Outstanding natural character areas   Āpiti 4 – Āhua tūturu.....	219
Schedule 5 – Historic heritage   Āpiti 5 – Taonga onamata .....	223
Schedule 6 - Sites and areas of significance to Māori   Āpiti 6 - Ngā wāhi tapu a te Māori .....	238

Schedule 7 – Significant indigenous biodiversity areas   Āpiti 7 – Ngā wāhi motuhake rerenga rauropi 258	
Schedule 8 – Surf breaks   Āpiti 8 – Ngā ngaru moana .....	285
Schedule 9 – Water quality standards   Āpiti 9 – Ngā paerewa kounga wai .....	287
Schedule 10 – Financial contributions   Āpiti 10 – Ngā pūtea tautoko .....	290
Schedule 11 – Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 .....	293
Schedule 12 – Accidental Discovery Protocol   Āpiti 12 – Tikanga tūhuratanga.....	296

---

# **PART 1 - INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS |**

# **WĀHANGA 1 – HE TĪMATANGA KŌRERO ME NGĀ WHAKARITENGA MATUA**

---



# 1 INTRODUCTION | TE TĪMATANGA KŌRERO

## Purpose | Aronga matua

The purpose of the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan (**the plan**) is to promote the sustainable management of the natural and physical resources of the Waikato coastal marine area (**CMA**).

The plan sets out a framework for the integrated and sustainable management of natural and physical resources. It includes objectives, policies and rules to manage use and development activities within the CMA under the jurisdiction of the regional council.

The plan is prepared in accordance with the Resource Management Act 1991 (**RMA**). It will assist the Waikato Regional Council in achieving the purpose of the RMA, which is the sustainable management of natural and physical resources.

The plan has been prepared recognising and providing for the relationship of tangata whenua with their culture and traditions with ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga. In both preparing and administering the plan, Waikato Regional Council is required to have particular regard to kaitiakitanga and take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi), amongst other statutory requirements.

## Description of the region | Āhua o te rohe

The Waikato region stretches from the Bombay Hills and Port Waikato in the north, south to Mōkau on the west coast, and across to the Coromandel Peninsula and the Kaimai Range in the east. In the south, the region extends to the slopes of Mount Ruapehu.

The Waikato region has 1,200km of diverse coastline, ranging from the white sands of the eastern Coromandel to the rugged west coast (from Port Waikato to Mōkau) with its distinctive black sands and windswept shoreline.

The coastal marine area covers the area from mean high water springs (**MHWS**) out to the 12 nautical mile (approximately 22km) limit of the territorial sea (refer to Figure 1). The management of the CMA focuses on the foreshore, seabed, coastal water and the air space above the water, and aims to manage its use, development, and protection in a sustainable manner.

In the Waikato region, the CMA covers more than one million hectares (10,239km<sup>2</sup>) and approximately 30 per cent of the area of the region.

In the Waikato region, the CMA includes:

- Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
- Hauraki Gulf Marine Park
- West Coast Marine Mammal Sanctuary
- Firth of Thames Ramsar site (internationally recognised for its significant conservation values).

The region also includes submarine cable and pipeline zones designated for protection, and areas designated as local fishing grounds under the Māori Fisheries Act 1989. A mātaimai reserve is an example of a local/traditional fishing ground.



# 2 HOW THE PLAN WORKS | MŌ TE WHAKAMAHI I TE MAHERE

## Statutory context | Horopaki ā-ture

### Resource Management Act 1991

The Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) defines natural and physical resources to include 'land, water, air, soil, minerals and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures'.

The purpose, function and contents of the plan are directed towards achieving the purpose of the RMA, which is 'to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources' (under section 5). Waikato Regional Council must have a coastal plan at all times under section 64 of the RMA.

Sections 6, 7 and 8 of the RMA place particular duties on council when exercising its functions and powers, as follows.

- Section 6 (Matters of National Importance) – Council must recognise and provide for the matters of national importance listed in this section.
- Section 7 (Other Matters) – Council must have regard to the matters listed in this section.
- Section 8 (Treaty of Waitangi) – Council must take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

These matters have been addressed in the objectives, policies, rules and standards in the plan alongside the various schedules. In addition, the plan has been prepared to give effect to, have regard to, or not be inconsistent with various other planning documents to achieve the integrated management of natural and physical resources (as directed by the RMA and explained below).

In developing the plan, Council is required to give effect to the [New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 \(NZCPS\)](#).

## Relationship with other plans and documents

Planning document	Document purpose	Relationship with Waikato Regional Coastal Plan
<a href="#">New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010</a>	The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement includes objectives and policies that are intended to achieve the purpose of the RMA in relation to the coastal environment of New Zealand.	The plan must give effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement.
National Policy Statements (as set out in the National policy statements and New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement chapter)	A national policy statement must state objectives and policies for matters of national significance that are relevant to achieving the purpose of the RMA.	The plan must give effect to National Policy Statements.
National Environmental Standards (as set out in the National environmental standards chapter)	Regulations that prescribe technical standards, methods, or requirements in relation to the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources.	The plan must not duplicate or conflict with a provision in a national environmental standard.
<a href="#">National Planning Standards 2019</a>	The purpose of the National Planning Standards is to assist in achieving the purpose of the RMA, by setting out requirements or other provisions relating to any aspect of the structure, format, or content of regional policy statements and plans.	A regional plan must give effect to a national planning standard.
<a href="#">Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998</a>	The purpose of the regulations is to control dumping and discharges from ships and offshore installations in the coastal marine area. The regulations deal with the dumping of waste and discharges from vessels including oil, garbage and sewage.	The plan cannot control activities included in the regulations unless specifically provided for within the regulations.
<a href="#">Marine and Coastal Areas (Takutai Moana) Act 2011</a>	Recognises customary rights and interests in the common marine and coastal area (refer Schedule 11 in this plan for further information).	The plan must recognise and provide for customary marine title and protected customary rights. If resource consent is required, it cannot be granted unless approval has been given by the title holder.
<a href="#">Waikato Regional Policy Statement: Te Tauāki Kaupapahere Te-Rohe O Waikato 2016</a>	Provides an overview of resource management issues facing the region and outlines objectives, policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the Waikato Region.	The plan must give effect to the Waikato Regional Policy Statement.
Waikato Regional Plan 2007	The purpose of the preparation, implementation, and	The plan must not be inconsistent with any other

	administration of regional plans is to assist a regional council to carry out its functions in order to achieve the sustainable management purpose of the RMA.	regional plan for the Waikato region.
<a href="#">Iwi management plans</a>	These plans are developed and approved by iwi and hapū to address resource management matters of significance to tangata whenua.	When preparing or changing a regional plan, council must take into account any relevant planning document recognised by an iwi authority, and lodged with the council, to the extent that its content has a bearing on the resource management issues of the region.
Statutory acknowledgements	<p>Statements of statutory acknowledgements are set out in Treaty of Waitangi settlement legislation.</p> <p>A statutory acknowledgement is a formal recognition by the Crown of the mana of tangata whenua over a specified area. It recognises the particular cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association of an iwi with the site, which is identified as a statutory area.</p> <p>Statutory acknowledgements are listed in <a href="#">Appendix 1</a> of the RPS.</p>	<p>Council has obligations to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• identify statutory acknowledgement areas in the coastal marine area</li> <li>• have regard to the statutory acknowledgements in decision-making.</li> </ul>
Heritage New Zealand List – Rārangī Kōrero	This list is required by the <a href="#">Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014</a> . It identifies New Zealand’s significant and valued historical and cultural heritage places.	The plan must have regard to any relevant entry on the Heritage New Zealand List – Rārangī Kōrero.
<a href="#">The Waikato Plan 2017</a>	The Waikato Plan identifies issues and opportunities for the region and sets its course for the next 30 years. The Waikato Plan was developed between local government, iwi/Māori, central government, the private sector, and the community. It is a non-statutory plan.	The plan must have regard to any other strategy, policy or plan that may be relevant, including the Waikato Plan.
<a href="#">Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato</a> (Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River)	As part of the Waikato River Settlement between the Crown and Waikato-Tainui, Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato (the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River) was developed. This Vision and Strategy was developed by the Guardians	The plan must give effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.

	Establishment Committee, iwi and communities of the Waikato River catchment and is periodically reviewed by the Waikato River Authority. The strategy seeks to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.	
<a href="#">Sea Change - Tai Timu Tai Pari</a> (Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan)	<i>Tai Timu Tai Pari</i> was released in December 2016. It contains a set of proposals for improving the health and mauri of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park across the Auckland and Waikato regions.	The plan must have regard to any other strategy, policy or plan that may be relevant, including <i>Tai Timu Tai Pari</i> .
<a href="#">Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000</a>	<p>The purpose of this Act is to:</p> <p>(a) integrate the management of the natural, historic, and physical resources of the Hauraki Gulf, its islands, and catchments:</p> <p>(b) establish the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park:</p> <p>(c) establish objectives for the management of the Hauraki Gulf, its islands, and catchments:</p> <p>(d) recognise the historic, traditional, cultural, and spiritual relationship of the tangata whenua with the Hauraki Gulf and its islands:</p> <p>(e) establish the Hauraki Gulf Forum.</p>	<p>Sections 7 and 8 must be treated as a national policy statement and a New Zealand coastal policy statement. Regional councils must give effect to sections 7 and 8 in their regional policy statements and plans. If there is a conflict between sections 7 and 8 and the provisions of the New Zealand coastal policy statement, the New Zealand coastal policy statement prevails.</p> <p>Local authorities must ensure that any part of a regional policy statement or a regional plan that applies to the Hauraki Gulf, its islands, and catchments, does not conflict with sections 7 and 8.</p>

## General approach | Huarahi whakarite

The [National Planning Standards 2019](#) contain standards that set out the required structure, format, spatial layers and mapping requirements for a regional plan, as well as standard definitions. This plan has been prepared in accordance with the National Planning Standards.

The plan should be read in full. It contains three interrelated parts as outlined below. The objectives and policies apply to any relevant activity undertaken in the CMA under this plan.

<p><b>Part 1 – Introduction and general provisions</b></p>	<p>This part of the plan contains the chapters that explain the plan's context and how it works. It also contains definitions, abbreviations and a glossary to assist in interpretation.</p> <p>The chapters provide context and process-related information in relation to tangata whenua and resource management matters.</p>
<p><b>Part 2 – Management of resources</b></p>	<p>This part of the plan is divided into several headings, as required by the National Planning Standards, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• integrated management</li> <li>• domains</li> <li>• topics, and</li> <li>• area-specific matters.</li> </ul> <p>Because the majority of the plan sits under just one domain (coastal marine area), all topic-based chapters – which set out the objectives, policies and rules for both values and activities, sit in this part of the plan.</p> <p>The area-specific matters are incorporated into the relevant Plan chapters, schedules and maps, as discrete mooring and marina areas, marine infrastructure development areas and aquaculture management areas, which apply to portions of the CMA only.</p> <p>A development area identifies and manages areas where plans, such as master plans or development plans, apply to determine future use and/or development.</p>
<p><b>Part 3 – Appendices and maps</b></p>	<p>Part 3 includes a series of schedules, which contain technical information and data, such as schedules of specific values. These are called overlays and are managed under the various topic and activity-based chapters in Part 2.</p> <p>For example, Schedule 3 - Seascapes Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes lists those areas of the CMA that have been identified as outstanding natural features and landscapes and includes a description of each area's characteristics and values. The objectives, policies, rules and standards that apply to the areas contained in Schedule 3 are contained in the Natural Features and Landscapes chapter in Part 2.</p> <p>Electronic planning maps spatially define zones, areas, overlays and features referred to within the topic chapters in Part 2.</p>

## Format of topic chapters

Each of the topic chapters in Part 2 follows the same format:

- Overview
- Objectives
- Policies
- Rules (if any),
- Standards (if any).

Each chapter has a unique acronym that identifies the topic being covered. For example, the Structures and occupation of space chapter is identified as STR.

The overview section provides a summary of the topic covered by the chapter. It also identifies any other key chapters that may have relevance to the topic.

The objectives set out the outcome to be achieved for the topic. There may be a number of objectives that apply. Each objective has a specific number - for example STR-O1.

The policies set out the direction to be taken to achieve the objective. There may be a number of policies that apply. Each policy has a specific number - for example STR-P1.

The rules have the effect of regulations and set out the activity status for different activities that may be proposed. There may be a number of rules that apply. Each rule has a specific number - for example STR-R1.

Rules may refer to standards that need to be complied with. Again, there may be a number of standards that apply.

## Integrated management

The IM - Integrated management chapter of the plan sets out the objectives and policies for integrated use and development in the CMA. This includes iwi resource management, climate change considerations and integrated management of coastal resources within the Waikato region.

### Treaty of Waitangi

Waikato Regional Council recognises that tangata whenua of the region have an important relationship with coastal resources. In undertaking its functions under the RMA, council must also take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi). Matters of special value to tangata whenua need to be protected through provisions in this plan. The council recognises the need for on-going consultation and engagement with tangata whenua over management of the coast and will continue to seek their involvement in the implementation of this plan.

### Precautionary approach

Waikato Regional Council will take a precautionary approach when making decisions about the use, development and protection of coastal resources where effects are uncertain or where potential risks to the environment are considered to be unacceptable. The precautionary approach will ensure that any decision made will err on the side of protecting the environment and that any adverse effects will be avoided, remedied, or mitigated. This approach recognises there is limited information available for much of the region's CMA, and the effects activities may have on it in the present or future need to be carefully considered.



## Resource consents and activities

The activities managed by the plan reflect Waikato Regional Council's functions under section 30 of the RMA.

Part 3 of the RMA sets out a number of restrictions to control the adverse effects of certain activities on the environment. The following key statutory restrictions apply in relation to the CMA.

1. Restrictions on use of the CMA (section 12) including:
  - a. reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed
  - b. erection, reconstruction (repair), placement, alteration, extension, removal or demolition of any structure
  - c. destruction, damage or disturbance of the foreshore or seabed
  - d. depositing any material in a manner that is likely to have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed
  - e. introduction of exotic or introduced plants
  - f. occupation of the common marine and coastal area, and
  - g. removal of any sand, shingle, shell or other natural material from the common marine and coastal area.
2. Restrictions relating to the taking, use, damming or diversion of water (section 14).
3. Restrictions relating to the discharge of harmful substances, contaminants, water, waste or other matter into water, onto or into land, or into air (sections 15, 15A and 15B).
4. Duty to avoid unreasonable noise (section 16).

Activities covered by sections 12, 14, 15, 15A and 15B may not be undertaken within the CMA unless expressly allowed by a national environmental standard, a rule in a regional plan, or a resource consent. The national environmental standard, plan or resource consent may prescribe the noise standards for those activities (section 16).

## Classes of activities

A 'traffic light' colour coding approach is used in the plan rules to indicate the status of an activity:

- green – for permitted activities (no consent required)
- yellow, orange and purple – indicating where resource consent is required,
- red – where the activity is prohibited in the CMA (consent cannot be applied for).

Whether resource consent is required and what council is required to consider are set out for each activity in the rules of the plan. The six types of activity class provided for by the RMA are detailed in the table below.

Activity status	Requires resource consent?	Explanation
Permitted	No	Permitted activities do not require resource consent, provided standards and all other relevant rules are met.

<b>Controlled</b>	Yes, and consent must be granted	Council must grant consent for a controlled activity, except in specific circumstances under sections 104 and 106 of the RMA, and can only consider matters, or impose conditions, over which the Coastal Plan or a national environmental standard has specifically reserved control. The activity may need to meet specified standards.
<b>Restricted discretionary</b>	Yes, and consent may be granted or declined	Council may or may not grant consent or impose conditions for a restricted discretionary activity but only on the matters over which the Coastal Plan has restricted its discretion. These matters of discretion will be listed in the relevant rule or standard. The activity may need to meet specified standards.
<b>Discretionary</b>	Yes, and consent may be granted or declined	Council may or may not grant consent or impose conditions for a discretionary activity and may consider any relevant matter.
<b>Non-complying</b>	Yes, and consent may be granted or declined	Council may or may not grant consent or impose conditions for a non-complying activity and may consider any relevant matter. Resource consent can only be granted if:  (a) the effects of a proposal are no more than minor, or  (b) the proposal is not contrary to the objectives and policies of the Coastal Plan.
<b>Prohibited</b>	No application possible	No resource consent can be applied for or granted for a prohibited activity.

## Guide for resource consent applicants

The steps below set out how to determine whether an activity is regulated by the plan, and if so, whether a resource consent is needed from the Waikato Regional Council.

The Waikato Regional Council encourages early engagement with iwi prior to lodging a consent application. Early engagement can ensure that applications appropriately address matters of concern to tangata whenua in accordance with the RMA and contribute to the effective and efficient processing of consents, reduce delays and encourage good will between parties.

**Step one:** Determine whether the activity involves:

- aquaculture of any form (refer AQA rules in the Aquaculture chapter)
- discharges to air (refer AIR rules in the Discharges to Air chapter)
- discharges to the coastal marine area (refer WD rules in the Discharges to water chapter)
- coastal structures and occupation of space (refer STR rules in the Structures and occupation of space chapter, except for moorings refer MO rules in the Moorings chapter)

- disturbance, deposition and extraction (refer DD rules in the Disturbances and deposition chapter)
- reclamation or drainage (refer DD rules in the Disturbances and deposition chapter)
- removal of plants and animals, including mangroves (refer to ECO rules in Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity chapter)
- taking or use of water, heat or energy (refer WT rules in the Water take, use, dam, divert chapter)
- the management of marine pests (refer BIO rules in the Biosecurity chapter).

**Step two:** If so, further determine where the activity occurs. The activity will be located within one or more of the zones, areas or overlays shown on the Maps and Schedules in Part 3 of the plan.

**Step three:** Having identified the relevant rule(s) based upon activity and location, refer to the classification of the activity under that rule(s).

Advisory note:

1. *If the 'activity' is made up of several parts, several rules and classifications may apply. Refer activity status table above. The most stringent activity status will apply when more than one rule applies to the activity.*

**Step four:** If any part or parts of the activity require a resource consent:

- check the policies and rules to find out which effects are of concern and any limitations or standards that may apply
- prepare a document that describes the assessment of effects on the environment
- make your resource consent application(s) to the Waikato Regional Council, and include the assessment of effects on the environment and any other information required.

You are encouraged to consult with any persons likely to be affected by your activity, including tangata whenua if their interests are affected, prior to lodging your resource consent application.

**Step Five:** If in doubt, particularly regarding the information requirements of Step Four above, or the classification of your activity, contact the Waikato Regional Council.

## Information to be submitted with resource consents

Schedule 4 of the RMA sets out information that is required in all resource consent applications. This includes an Assessment of Environmental Effects.

An Assessment of Environmental Effects is a written statement that must be prepared in accordance with Schedule 4 of the RMA. For controlled activities, the Assessment of Environmental Effects is only required to address those matters over which the plan has specifically reserved its control. In respect of any application for a restricted discretionary activity, the assessment should only address those matters over which the plan has specifically restricted its discretion. These matters of control and discretion are detailed within the rules of the plan.

For all other types of activities, the Assessment of Environmental Effects should address all relevant matters relating to the actual or potential effects of the proposed activity on the environment, as well as the other mandatory requirements set out in Schedule 4 of the RMA. Additionally, any application involving a resource consent for a discretionary or non-complying activity must also include an assessment against relevant objectives and policies in the other chapters of the plan including the IM - Integrated management chapter of the plan.

Where relevant and/or applicable, applicants should demonstrate they have considered any tangata whenua interests and impacts. See the Tangata Whenua chapter for further information.

Some rules in the plan also include a requirement for specific information to be submitted with any resource consent application required under that rule.

## **Cross boundary matters | Ngā kaupapa whakawhitinga rohe**

Cross boundary issues have been addressed through this plan, and will continue to be addressed when they arise by maintaining an ongoing dialogue with the relevant adjoining regional council and/or territorial authority to ensure effective and integrated management of resource management issues at a district and regional level.

Any cross-boundary issues will be addressed through a process of proactive collaboration and information sharing with neighbouring local authorities. Those local authorities are: Taranaki Regional Council, Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Auckland Council, Hauraki District Council, Waitomo District Council, Waikato District Council, Ōtorohanga District Council and Thames-Coromandel District Council.

Where activities that require a resource consent cross the line of MHWS, and consent requirements are also triggered under a District Plan, Waikato Regional Council may seek to undertake the following:

- defer notification or hearing of an application until applications for any 1 or more of those other resource consents have been made (section 91 RMA)
- hold a joint hearing with the local authority (section 103 RMA)
- transfer functions in accordance with section 33 of the RMA to enable one agency to be responsible for processing the related consents.

The procedure for resource consents that may give rise to cross boundary matters is as follows:

1. Establish whether any resource consents are required from other consent authorities. If so, the RMA sets out the procedures for joint hearings
2. Where activities may also trigger consent requirements under a district plan of an adjoining local authority, encourage resource consent applicants to also consult with that local authority.
3. Include the consent authority as an affected party, where applicable, and
4. Notify the consent authority of proposals for which an application has been received where it is considered that a cross boundary effect is likely.

Where a resource consent is identified as being a cross boundary matter, Waikato Regional Council will seek to adopt the following process (subject to the particular circumstances, the approach adopted by the other consent authorities concerned, and any relevant matters relating to delegations):

1. Where the adjacent authority does not require a resource consent application for the proposed activity, the application will proceed as provided for in this plan.
2. Where both the council and the other consent authority require a resource consent application, and that application is provided for as a non-notified application, the consent and any conditions will be decided by the authorities with a single decision being issued.
3. Where at least one authority requires a resource consent to be notified, all authorities will notify the application and the consent and any conditions, be decided by the authorities jointly with a single decision being issued. Wherever practicable, any application that requires the consent of two or more local authorities will be heard jointly by an equal number of elected officials from both organisations and/or agreed commissioners at a mutually agreeable time and location.

Waikato Regional Council will encourage practices that will enable resource consent applications to be considered in a similar manner.

## Relationships between spatial layers | Te hononga a ngā momo apa

Spatial layers recognise areas where there is a high level of existing modification and where activities may have a relatively low impact - these include existing marinas, moorings areas and marine farms. There are also overlays in the plan for:

- sites or areas of significance to Māori
- areas of outstanding natural character
- natural features and landscapes (seascapes)
- significant indigenous biodiversity
- historic heritage
- national and regionally significant surf-breaks.

Overlays are used to identify the different values of the CMA, and have additional objectives, policies and rules that are used to manage the adverse effects of activities.

Overlays are shown as layers on the maps to the plan and are described in the schedules to the plan in Part 3.

Spatial layer	Description / Function	Examples
<b>Zones/Areas</b>	A zone or area spatially maps and manages those parts of the CMA with common characteristics or where common outcomes are sought, by addressing compatible activities or effects together, and controlling those that are incompatible. There are three broad activity zones/areas in the plan.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Marinas – e.g. Whangamatā marina</li> <li>2. Moorings – e.g. Whitianga Mooring Area</li> <li>3. Aquaculture Management Areas <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wilson Bay</li> <li>• Coromandel Marine Farming</li> <li>• Western Coromandel</li> <li>• Colville</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
<b>Overlays</b>	An overlay maps distinctive values that require management or protection in a different manner from underlying zone provisions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outstanding Natural Character</li> <li>• Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori</li> <li>• Nationally significant surf breaks</li> </ul>
<b>Development area</b>	A development area spatially identifies and manages areas where site specific plans apply to determine future use or development.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Te Ariki Tahī (Sugarloaf Wharf)</li> <li>• Kōpū Marine Precinct</li> </ul>

# 3 INTERPRETATION | HE WHAKAMĀRAMATANGA

## Definitions | Ngā whakamāramatanga

Advisory note:

1. Definitions shaded light grey are from the RMA, or other legislation as indicated. Those shaded light blue are from the NZCPS. The mandatory definitions required to be used in the plan by the National Planning Standards 2019 are shown in light orange shading.

Term	Definition
<b>abandoned</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 19 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011:</i> a structure is <b>abandoned</b> if the regional council with statutory functions in the part of the common marine and coastal area in which the structure is located has, after due inquiry, been unable to ascertain the identity or the whereabouts of the owner of the structure.
<b>abrasive blasting</b>	means the cleaning, smoothing, roughening, cutting or removal of part of the surface of any article by the use, as an abrasive, of a jet of sand, metal, shot or grit or other material propelled by a blast of compressed air or steam or water or by a wheel.
<b>adaptive management approach</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020:</i> a. means a systematic and iterative process of decision-making that aims to reduce and manage uncertainty about the environmental effects of an activity over time through: i. monitoring the activity and its effects; and ii. making changes to management in response to the results of that monitoring; and b. includes management by a staged development programme, each stage proceeding only when the monitoring of the biological or physical effects of the previous stage demonstrates that the adverse effects— i. are within limits prescribed in the provisions of this plan; and ii. are reversible.
<b>adaptive management strategy</b> (in relation to coastal hazards)	means a strategy that: a. identifies the risks to the community or infrastructure due to natural hazards including the effects of climate change over at least a 100-year time frame; and b. identifies and assesses different adaptation options to reduce that risk; and c. identifies relevant trigger points where management activities need to change in response to climate change. See also RPS HAZ-M3 – Assess natural hazard risk to communities.  The strategies for communities will, as a minimum: a. include recommendations for any hazard zones that should be applied, including primary hazard zones b. identify options for reducing the risks to the community to an acceptable level and the relative benefits and costs of those options, including taking into account any effects on: i. public access

	<p>ii. amenity values, or</p> <p>iii. natural character (including natural physical processes, indigenous biodiversity, landscape and water quality),</p> <p>c. have undergone a public consultation process such as the Special Consultative Procedure under the Local Government Act.</p> <p>The strategies for infrastructure will, as a minimum, include:</p> <p>a. an assessment of options and trigger points where a change in response may be appropriate to reduce long term risk to the infrastructure;</p> <p>b. benefits and costs to private individuals, community and the environment.</p>
<b>air quality</b>	means the general quality of the surrounding air, reflecting the cumulative effect of all activities.
<b>amenity values</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people’s appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes.
<b>anchorage</b>	means a place (enclosed or otherwise) used for anchoring vessels, whether the place is reserved for such purposes by the council or not.
<b>anchoring</b>	means the temporary securing of a vessel to the foreshore or seabed by means of an anchor, cable or other device that is removed with the vessel when it leaves the site or anchorage. In this context “temporary” means less than one week and does not occur in the same general vicinity, for another month.
<b>ancillary activity</b>	means an activity that supports and is subsidiary to a primary activity.
<b>anti-fouling</b>	means a coating, paint, surface treatment, surface, or device that is used on a vessel or submerged equipment to control or prevent the attachment of organisms.
<b>aquaculture</b>	means the farming of aquatic fish, shellfish and plants, including seaweed.
<b>aquaculture activities</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> <p>a. means any activity described in section 12 done for the purpose of the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed for harvest if the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; and</p> <p>b. includes the taking of harvestable spat if the taking involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; but</p> <p>c. does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) if the fish, aquatic life, or seaweed—</p> <p>i. are not in the exclusive and continuous possession or control of the person undertaking the activity; or</p> <p>ii. cannot be distinguished or kept separate from naturally occurring fish, aquatic life, or seaweed; and</p> <p>d. does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) or (b) if the activity is carried out solely for the purpose of monitoring the environment</p>
<b>aquaculture management area</b>	means an area intended for commercial aquaculture activities in the maps to this plan and includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wilson Bay Areas A, B and C</li> <li>• Coromandel Marine Farming Area</li> <li>• Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area</li> <li>• Colville Aquaculture Management Area</li> <li>• Any aquaculture settlement area gazetted under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.</li> </ul>

<b>aquaculture settlement area</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Maori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004:</i> means space in the coastal marine area declared in a Gazette notice under section 12 to be an aquaculture settlement area
<b>archaeological site</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014:</i> means, subject to section 42(3), — a. any place in New Zealand, including any building or structure (or part of a building or structure), that— i. was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900 or is the site of the wreck of any vessel where the wreck occurred before 1900; and ii. provides or may provide, through investigation by archaeological methods, evidence relating to the history of New Zealand; and b. includes a site for which a declaration is made under section 43(1).
<b>authorised marine farm</b>	means a marine farm that was lawfully established by lease or licence under the Marine Farming Act 1971, or marine farming permit under the Fisheries Act 1983, or a coastal permit under the Resource Management Act 1991, and that lease, licence or permit has not expired.
<b>authorised mooring owner</b>	means a person who holds a current resource consent or a current mooring licence for the mooring structure.
<b>beach renourishment</b>	means the process of placing additional sediment or natural material on a beach, intertidal, or nearshore area of the CMA to replenish or restore an area that has lost sediment. It is normally undertaken in response to material, such as sand, being lost from a beach due to natural coastal processes, including coastal erosion.
<b>bed</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA and means:</i> a. in relation to any river— i. for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks; ii. in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks; and b. in relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means,— i. for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin; ii. in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin; and c. in relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and d. in relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea.
<b>best practicable option</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> in relation to a discharge of a contaminant or an emission of noise, means the best method for preventing or minimising the adverse effects on the environment having regard, among other things, to— a. the nature of the discharge or emission and the sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects; and b. the financial implications, and the effects on the environment, of that option when compared with other options; and



	c. the current state of technical knowledge and the likelihood that the option can be successfully applied.
<b>biocontrol agent</b>	means biological control (biocontrol), which uses one living organism (an agent) to control another. It is a way to control pests by introducing a natural enemy or predator into the environment.
<b>biofouling</b>	means aquatic organisms such as micro-organisms, plants and animals that have accumulated on surfaces and structures immersed in or exposed to the aquatic environment.
<b>biogas</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Gas Act 1992:</i> means the mixture of gases that is produced by anaerobic microbial decomposition of organic matter and that principally comprises methane and carbon dioxide together with lesser amounts of hydrogen sulphide, water vapour, or other gases.
<b>biogenic habitat</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in regulation 7 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020:</i> a. means the natural habitat created by the physical structure of living or dead organisms or by the interaction of those organisms with the substrate, including either a hard (reef) or soft (sediment) substrate; but b. does not include— i. non-indigenous living organisms; or ii. organisms attached to a marine farm or other man-made structure; or iii. holes, mounds, and similar seabed irregularities created by burrowing organisms in soft sediments.
<b>biosecurity</b>	means the protection of the regional and national economy, environment, and people’s health and social and cultural wellbeing from pests and diseases including marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms.
<b>Catchment Management Plan</b>	means a plan for addressing stormwater runoff that is generated within a catchment to meet specific water quantity, water quality and receiving environment objectives. A CMP will determine the best practicable option for managing stormwater at an integrated catchment level and include design parameters and a means of compliance that are specific to the catchment.
<b>channel clearance</b>	means the clearance of vegetation and debris from river channels and river mouths within the CMA to maintain efficient water flow, reduce the risk of flooding and erosion, maintain structures, remove plant pest species and remove hazards for navigational uses.  <u>Includes:</u> a. clearing vegetation and debris or cutting vegetation in rivers and streams. b. maintenance of land drainage and stormwater systems. c. maintenance and clearing of road and drainage and water tables.  <u>Excludes:</u> a. Capital dredging.
<b>coastal environment</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 1.6 of the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement – Te Tauaki Kaupapahere Te Rohe O Waikato:</i> means the environment where the coast is a significant part or element, comprising at least:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the coastal marine area;</li> <li>b. islands within the coastal marine area;</li> <li>c. areas where coastal processes, qualities or influences are significant, including coastal lakes, lagoons, tidal estuaries, salt marshes, coastal wetlands, and the margins of these;</li> <li>d. areas at risk from coastal hazards;</li> <li>e. coastal vegetation and the habitat of indigenous coastal species, including migratory birds;</li> <li>f. elements and features that contribute to natural character, visual qualities or amenity values;</li> <li>g. items of cultural and historic heritage in the coastal marine area or on the coast;</li> <li>h. inter-related coastal marine and terrestrial systems, including the intertidal zone; and</li> <li>i. physical resources and built facilities, including infrastructure, that have modified the coastal environment.</li> </ul> <p><i>Advisory note:</i></p> <p>1. <i>An indicative coastal environment line is shown in the planning maps to the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement - Te Tauaki Kaupapahere Te-Rohe O Waikato.</i></p>
<b>coastal hazard</b>	means the subset of <i>natural hazards</i> covering tidal or coastal storm inundation, rising sea level, tsunami or meteorological tsunami inundation, coastal erosion (shorelines or cliffs), rise in groundwater levels from storm tides and sea-level rise (plus associated liquefaction), and salinisation of surface fresh waters and groundwater aquifers.
<b>coastal marine area</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i></p> <p>means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea;</li> <li>b. of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. 1 kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or</li> <li>ii. the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>coastal water</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i></p> <p>means seawater within the outer limits of the territorial sea and includes —</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. seawater with a substantial fresh water component; and</li> <li>b. seawater in estuaries, fiords, inlets, harbours, or embayments.</li> </ul>
<b>commercial aquaculture</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as defined in section 4 of the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004:</i></p> <p>means an aquaculture activity undertaken for the purpose of sale.</p>
<b>common marine and coastal area</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 9(1) of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011:</i></p> <p>means the marine and coastal area other than—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. specified freehold land located in that area; and</li> <li>b. any area that is owned by the Crown and has the status of any of the following kinds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. a conservation area within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ii. a national park within the meaning of section 2 of the National Parks Act 1980;</li> <li>iii. a reserve within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Reserves Act 1977; and</li> </ul> <p>c. the bed of Te Whaanga Lagoon in the Chatham Islands</p>
<b>Comprehensive Stormwater Discharge Consent</b>	means a consent that authorises multiple discharges from single stormwater networks within existing urban areas (including coastal settlements), which are owned and/or operated by single network providers (most commonly district and city councils).
<b>connectivity</b> (in relation to ecosystems)	means the extent to which spatially distinct populations, communities, ecosystems, or habitats are linked by the exchange of genes, organisms (propagules, juveniles, and adults), nutrients and energy.
<b>contaminant</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and microorganisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat— (a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or (b) when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.
<b>degraded water</b>	means where the quality of water in the coastal environment has deteriorated so that it is having a significant adverse effect on ecosystems, natural habitats, or water-based recreational activities, or is restricting existing uses, such as aquaculture, shellfish gathering, and cultural activities. These areas are identified in Schedule 9C.
<b>development areas</b>	means Te Ariki Tahī (Sugarloaf Wharf) development area and Kōpū Marine Precinct development area.
<b>discharge</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> includes emit, deposit, and allow to escape.
<b>disturbance</b>	means the disruption of a current state, including the activities of excavation, extraction, dredging, drilling and tunnelling.
<b>dry abrasive blasting</b>	means abrasive blasting using materials to which no water has been added.
<b>ecosystem-based management</b>	means a holistic and inclusive way to manage marine environments and the competing uses for, demands on, and ways that New Zealanders value them, which recognises the interactions within ecosystems (including people) and identifies the impacts of activities within this context, is informed by science and mātauranga Māori, and provides for adaptive management approaches, where appropriate.
<b>ecological integrity</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 4 of the Environmental Reporting Act 2015:</i> means the full potential of indigenous biotic and abiotic features and natural processes, functioning in sustainable communities, habitats, and landscapes.
<b>effect</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the RMA:</i> includes— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. any positive or adverse effect; and</li> <li>b. any temporary or permanent effect; and</li> <li>c. any past, present, or future effect; and</li> <li>d. any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects— regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes—</li> <li>e. any potential effect of high probability; and</li> </ul>

	f. any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.
<b>environment</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> includes— a. ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and b. all natural and physical resources; and c. amenity values; and d. the social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in paragraphs (a) to (c) or which are affected by those matters.
<b>excessive noise</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 326 of the RMA:</i> 1. means any noise that is under human control and of such a nature as to unreasonably interfere with the peace, comfort, and convenience of any person (other than a person in or at the place from which the noise is being emitted), but does not include any noise emitted by any — i. aircraft being operated during, or immediately before or after, flight; or ii. vehicle being driven on a road (within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Land Transport Act 1998); or iii. train, other than when being tested (when stationary), maintained, loaded, or unloaded; but 2. without limiting (1) excessive noise— a. includes noise that exceeds a standard for noise prescribed by a national environmental standard; and b. may include noise emitted by— i. a musical instrument; or ii. an electrical appliance; or iii. a machine, however powered; or iv. a person or group of persons; or v. an explosion or vibration.
<b>exotic plant</b>	means a living plant, seaweed or algae that is, or could be established, in the intertidal zone or coastal marine area and is not native to New Zealand. This includes plants, seaweed and algae that have been introduced by accident or imported for particular use.
<b>exploration</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991:</i> means any activity undertaken for the purpose of identifying mineral deposits or occurrences and evaluating the feasibility of mining particular deposits or occurrences of 1 or more minerals; and includes any drilling, dredging, or excavations (whether surface or subsurface) that are reasonably necessary to determine the nature and size of a mineral deposit or occurrence; and <b>to explore</b> has a corresponding meaning.
<b>fed aquaculture</b>	means farming of any aquatic organism that involves the discharge of feed into the coastal marine area and includes finfish farming.
<b>foreshore</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means any land covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides and, in relation to any such land that forms part of the bed of a river, does not include any area that is not part of the coastal marine area
<b>functional need</b>	means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because the activity can only occur in that environment.

<b>green infrastructure</b>	means a natural or semi-natural area, feature or process, including engineered systems that mimic natural processes, which are planned or managed to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. provide for aspects of ecosystem health or resilience, such as maintaining or improving the quality of water, air or soil, and habitats to promote biodiversity; and</li> <li>b. provide services to people and communities, such as stormwater or flood management or climate change adaptation.</li> </ul>
<b>hapū</b>	means kinship group, section of a large kinship group and the primary political unit in traditional Māori society.
<b>hard protection structure</b>	means a structure such as a seawall, rock revetment, groyne, breakwater, stop bank, structure retaining wall or comparable structure or modification to the seabed, foreshore or coastal land that has the primary purpose or effect of protecting an activity from a coastal hazard, including erosion and inundation.
<b>harmful aquatic organisms</b>	aquatic organisms which, if introduced into coastal water, may adversely affect the environment or biological diversity, pose a threat to human health, or interfere with legitimate use or protection of natural and physical resources in the coastal environment.
<b>hazardous substance</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i></p> <p>includes, but is not limited to, any substance defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 as a hazardous substance.</p> <p><i>Per the definition in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, hazardous substances:</i></p> <p>means, unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations or an EPA notice, any substance—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) with 1 or more of the following intrinsic properties: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) explosiveness:</li> <li>(ii) flammability:</li> <li>(iii) a capacity to oxidise:</li> <li>(iv) corrosiveness:</li> <li>(v) toxicity (including chronic toxicity):</li> <li>(vi) ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any 1 or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a).</li> </ul>
<b>health</b> (in relation to ecosystems)	means the status and potential of an ecosystem to maintain its organizational structure, its vigour of function and resilience under stress, and to continuously provide quality ecosystem services for present and future generations in perpetuity.
<b>high risk facility</b>	means the following list of high risk facilities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Mechanical workshops and service stations.</li> <li>b. Printers.</li> <li>c. Spray painting facilities.</li> <li>d. Meat, fish and shellfish processing industries.</li> <li>e. Dairy products processing.</li> <li>f. Waste management sites (transfer stations, compost sites, landfills etc.).</li> <li>g. Truck wash facilities.</li> <li>h. Unenclosed manufacturing and bulk storage of fertiliser.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Textile fibre and textile processing industries where dyeing and washing of fabric occurs.</li> <li>j. Tanneries and leather finishing.</li> <li>k. Footwear manufacture.</li> <li>l. Manufacture of paper and paper products.</li> <li>m. Manufacture or processing of chemicals, and of petroleum, coal, rubber and plastic products.</li> <li>n. Manufacture of clay, glass, plaster, masonry, asbestos and related mineral products.</li> <li>o. Manufacture of fabricated metal products, machinery and equipment.</li> <li>p. Electroplaters, Foundries, galvanizers and metal surfacing.</li> <li>q. Concrete batching plants and, asphalt manufacturing plants.</li> <li>r. Stock saleyards.</li> <li>s. Bakeries.</li> <li>t. Car wash and valet services.</li> <li>u. Commercial laundries (excluding self-service laundrettes and Laundromats).</li> <li>v. Furniture/wood manufacturing and refinishing industries.</li> <li>w. Timber preservation, treatment and storage sites where chemically treated timber is sorted.</li> <li>x. Boat maintenance areas.</li> </ul> <p><i>Advisory note:</i></p> <p>1. <i>The reasons for high risk classification are listed in section 3.5.12 of the Waikato Regional Plan.</i></p>
<b>historic heritage</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. means those natural and physical resources that contribute to an understanding and appreciation of New Zealand’s history and cultures, deriving from any of the following qualities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. archaeological:</li> <li>ii. architectural:</li> <li>iii. cultural:</li> <li>iv. historic:</li> <li>v. scientific:</li> <li>vi. technological; and</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. includes— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. historic sites, structures, places, and areas; and</li> <li>ii. archaeological sites; and</li> <li>iii. sites of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu; and</li> <li>iv. surroundings associated with the natural and physical resources.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>historic heritage sites</b>	<p>means sites including archaeological sites and shipwrecks, areas of cultural importance to tangata whenua and historic places and areas on the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangī Kōrero that are located in the CMA, and includes the areas of land-based historic heritage sites at or below mean high water springs.</p>
<b>hull and niche areas</b>	<p>means the immersed surfaces of a vessel including areas on a vessel or movable structure more susceptible to biofouling accumulation due to different hydrodynamic forces, susceptibility to anti-fouling coating wear or damage or absence of anti-fouling coatings. They include, but are not limited to, waterline, sea chests, bow thrusters, propeller shafts, inlet gratings, jack-up legs, moon pools, bollards, braces, and dry-docking support strips.</p>

<b>in-water cleaning</b>	means the physical removal of biofouling and/or anti-fouling coating surface deposits from submerged surfaces. For the purposes of these guidelines, 'in-water' refers to the parts of a vessel or movable structure that are either below the load line or normally submerged and/or are coated in anti-fouling coating.
<b>incineration</b>	means the application of a combustion process under controlled conditions to convert waste into ash and gases. The combustion system controls oxygen, temperature, turbulence and residence time. Incinerator has a corresponding meaning.
<b>interceptor system</b>	for discharges from high risk sites, 'interceptor system' means a facility designed with the purpose of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. preventing deliberate or accidental releases of any hazardous substances in the discharge system, or</li> <li>b. in the event of contamination by a hazardous substance, reducing all such substances in the discharge to concentrations that will not result in contamination of either water or sediments to such a degree that is likely to result in significant adverse effects on aquatic life.</li> </ul>
<b>iwi</b>	means extended kinship group- often refers to a large group of people descended from a common ancestor and associated with a distinct territory.
<b>iwi/hapū management plans</b>	means planning documents that are recognised by an iwi authority, relevant to the resource management issues of the region/district/rohe and/or lodged with the relevant local authority.
<b>kāinga</b>	means village, settlement, habitation, habitat, dwelling.
<b>kaitiakitanga</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Māori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship.
<b>karakia</b>	means to recite ritual chants, say grace or recite prayer.
<b>L<sub>A90</sub> (t)</b>	has the same meaning as the 'Background sound level' in New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound.  <i>Advisory note:</i> 1. The term is explained as being the A-weighted sound level exceeded for 90 % of the measurement period, measured in decibels (dB). Commonly referred to as the background noise level.
<b>L<sub>Aeq</sub></b>	has the same meaning as 'time-average A-weighted sound pressure level' in New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound.  <i>Advisory note:</i> 1. The term is explained as being the equivalent continuous (time-averaged) A-weighted sound level. Commonly referred to as the average sound level and is measured in decibels (dB).
<b>L<sub>Amax</sub></b>	has the same meaning as the 'maximum A-frequency weighted, F-time weighted sound pressure level' in New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound.  <i>Advisory note:</i> 1. The term is explained as being the A-weighted maximum sound level. The highest sound level which occurs during the measurement period. Usually measured with a fast time-weighting i.e. L <sub>Afmax</sub> .
<b>L<sub>peak</sub></b>	has the same meaning as 'Peak sound pressure level' in New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound.

	<p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <p>1. The term is explained as being the peak instantaneous pressure level recorded during a measurement period, expressed in decibels. Normally presented with a C-weighting (<math>L_{Cpeak}</math>) when used for assessing occupational health and safety and blasting overpressure.</p>
<b>land</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>includes land covered by water and the airspace above land; and</li> <li>in a national environmental standard dealing with a regional council function under section 30 or a regional rule, does not include the bed of a lake or river; and</li> <li>in a national environmental standard dealing with a territorial authority function under section 31 or a district rule, includes the surface of water in a lake or river.</li> </ol>
<b>Level of Fouling scale</b>	<p>means a scale expressed in the international Level of Fouling (LOF) used to assess the level of macrofouling on vessels, ranging from 1 to 5 based on the percentage macrofouling cover.</p> <p>1 = Slime layer fouling only. Nil macrofouling cover.</p> <p>2 = Light fouling. Hull covered in biofilm and 1-2 very small patches of macrofouling. 1 – 5 per cent macrofouling cover.</p> <p>3 = Considerable fouling. Presence of biofilm, and macrofouling still patchy but clearly visible. 6 – 15 per cent macrofouling cover.</p> <p>4 = Extensive fouling. Presence of biofilm, and abundant fouling assemblages consisting of more than one species. 16 – 40 per cent macrofouling cover.</p> <p>5 = Very heavy fouling. Diverse assemblages covering most of visible hull surfaces. 41 – 100 per cent macrofouling cover.</p>
<b>livestock</b>	means dairy cows, dairy support cattle, beef cattle, pigs, and deer.
<b>macrofouling</b>	means large, distinct multicellular organisms visible to the human eye, such as barnacles, tubeworms, mussels, fronds of algae and other large attached or mobile organisms.
<b>mahinga kai</b>	means the customary methodology and practices used for the gathering of food and natural materials, the food and resources themselves and the places where those resources are gathered.
<b>maimai</b>	means a small shelter used for hunting, normally a duckshooter’s hide or stand.
<b>maintenance</b> (in relation to historic heritage)	means regular and ongoing protective care of a site to prevent deterioration and retain heritage values.
<b>maintenance</b> (in relation to a structure)	means the ongoing and regular activities that aid in the preservation of a structure and includes repair works conducted for the purpose of keeping the structure in good condition and/or working efficiently and where the character, intensity and scale of the structure remains the same.
<b>maintenance dredging</b>	means excavating material from the bed of the CMA and removing the excavated material, where the excavation is for the purpose of removing accumulated sediment so that the seabed is returned to previously approved levels.
<b>mana whenua</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</p> <p>means customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area.</p>



<b>manaakitanga</b>	means hospitality, kindness, generosity, support – the process of showing respect, generosity and care for others.
<b>mangrove removal</b>	means partially or wholly removing, burying or clearing mangroves. Includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pruning mangrove branches;</li> <li>• pulling out mangrove seedlings;</li> <li>• removing mangroves at the trunk; and</li> <li>• removing mangrove root systems.</li> </ul>
<b>mangrove seedlings</b>	means a mangrove that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• is no more than 50cm tall; and</li> <li>• shows no reproductive capability.</li> </ul>
<b>marae-based aquaculture</b>	means aquaculture with the following attributes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the purpose of the aquaculture activities is to improve traditional customary kaimoana provision for marae, and</li> <li>b. the farmed kaimoana is not for sale, and</li> <li>c. the area of occupation is no more than one hectare per marae, and</li> <li>d. the area of occupation is within the area traditionally harvested by the marae.</li> </ol> <p><i>“sale” has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Fisheries Act 1996:</i></p> <p>Sale includes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. every method of disposition for valuable consideration, including barter, and</li> <li>ii. the disposition to an agent for sale on consignment, and</li> <li>iii. offering or attempting to sell, or receiving or having in possession for sale, or exposing for sale, or sending or delivering for sale, or causing or permitting to be sold, offered, or exposed for sale, and</li> <li>iv. disposal by way of gambling (as that term is defined in section 4(1) of the Gambling Act 2003), and</li> <li>v. the use by a person of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed as bait in that person's commercial fishing operations, and</li> <li>vi. any other use by a person of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed as part of that person's commercial activities.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>The organisations entitled to hold coastal permits for marae-based aquaculture are:</i> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>a marae committee of a Māori reservation gazetted for the purposes of a marae, in accordance with Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1992, or</i></li> <li>b. <i>a marae committee of a marae recognised by, and formally affiliated to, a mandated iwi organisation (as recognised in the Māori Fisheries Act 2004).</i></li> </ol> </li> </ol>
<b>marina</b>	means a comprehensively designed facility primarily for the accommodation of boats comprising berths, pontoons, piers, boat launching ramp and public jetties, and any associated reclamations, breakwaters and wave protection barriers. It may also include land-based areas for carparking and associated facilities and services, which are not subject to this plan.
<b>marina area</b>	means an area used as a marina, and includes marina structures, channel works, reclamations, and vessel maintenance facilities.

<b>marine facilities</b>	includes ports, dry docks, slipways, moorings, marinas, boat servicing grids, wharves, jetties and ramps, offshore platforms, navigational aids, and associated structures and activities.
<b>marine farm</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in regulation 4 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020:</i> means a space that— a. is used for aquaculture activities; and b. has a current coastal permit to occupy the common marine and coastal area; and c. may have other coastal permits that allow— i. the erection, placement, and use of structures for aquaculture activities; ii. the associated disturbance of the foreshore and seabed: iii. deposition or discharges in the coastal marine area
<b>marine farming</b>	means the activities of breeding, hatching, collection, cultivation, rearing, on-growing or harvesting of fin fish, shellfish, aquatic life or marine vegetation (and includes spat catching and spat holding), and includes the placement or erection of structures or other equipment, the deposition or disturbance of matter on the foreshore and/or seabed, discharges into and from the marine farm, and the use and occupation of the foreshore, seabed or water in the CMA.
<b>marine pest</b>	means any identified or suspected aquatic organism (or terrestrial organism encroaching into the coastal marine area) listed in the following: a. Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan; b. Biosecurity (Notifiable Organisms) Order 2016 (or subsequent amendments) administered by the Ministry for Primary Industries; or c. Unwanted Organisms Register held by the Ministry for Primary Industries. d. Ministry for Primary Industries (2019). New Zealand Marine Pest ID Guide. Biosecurity New Zealand, Wellington. 32pp
<b>mātauranga Māori</b>	means Māori customary knowledge, traditional knowledge or intergenerational knowledge.
<b>mature mangroves</b>	means any plants that are multi-stemmed and >50cm in height, or any mangrove plant that is not defined as a seedling.
<b>mauri</b>	means the life principle instilled in objects by Atua. Mauri is also the life principle that gives being and form to all things in the universe.
<b>mean high water springs</b>	means the place on the foreshore where spring high tides reach on average over a period of time (often recognised by the upper line of debris on the beach)
<b>microfouling</b>	means a layer of microscopic organisms including bacteria and diatoms and the slimy substances they produce. It is often referred to as a 'slime layer' and can be easily removed by gently passing a finger over the surface.
<b>minor reclamation</b>	means reclamation that is less than 20m <sup>2</sup> in area associated with: a. restoration or enhancement activity b. the erection, placement or construction of regional significant infrastructure c. deposition of material associated with the construction of a seawall within private property d. creation of walkways for public access.
<b>mixing zone</b>	the area within which "reasonable mixing" of contaminants from discharges occurs in receiving waters and within which the relevant water quality standards do not apply.

<b>mooring</b> (when used for vessels)	means any structure, screw anchor, weight, device, and other associated equipment, which is placed in or on the foreshore or seabed to secure a vessel, and includes pole moorings, swing moorings, bungee moorings, trot moorings and other similar structures.
<b>mooring area</b>	means an area identified in Schedule 2 and in the maps to the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan for the mooring of vessels.
<b>mooring licence</b>	means a licence issued to the mooring owner by the Waikato Regional Council in accordance with the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw.
<b>motor vehicle</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Land Transport Act 1998:</i> a. means a vehicle drawn or propelled by mechanical power; and b. includes a trailer; but c. does not include — i. a vehicle running on rails; or ii. a trailer (other than a trailer designed solely for the carriage of goods) that is designed and used exclusively as part of the armament of the New Zealand Defence Force; or iii. a trailer running on 1 wheel and designed exclusively as a speed measuring device or for testing the wear of vehicle tyres; or iv. a vehicle designed for amusement purposes and used exclusively within a place of recreation, amusement, or entertainment to which the public does not have access with motor vehicle; or v. a pedestrian-controlled machine; or vi. a vehicle that the Agency has declared under section 168A is not a motor vehicle; or vii. a mobility device
<b>moveable structure</b>	means a structure of installation deployed in aquatic environments that can be moved between locations. Moveable structures include (but are not limited to) temporary structures, oil and other exploration rigs, floating dry-docks, pontoons and navigational structures. Structures for aquaculture activities are excluded from this definition.
<b>natural and physical resources</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures.
<b>natural character</b>	means the description of the natural elements of the coastal marine area. The degree or level of natural character within an environment depends on the extent to which the natural elements, patterns and processes occur and the nature and extent of modification to the ecosystems and seascape. The degree of natural character is highest where there is least modification.
<b>natural hazard</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment.
<b>natural hazard risk</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 1.6 of the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement – Te Tauaki Kaupapahere Te Rohe O Waikato:</i> the probability or likelihood of specified negative consequence to life, well-being, property, economic activity, environmental or other specified values, due to a particular hazard or group of hazards. Three levels of risk are identified in the Regional Policy Statement:

	<p>a. intolerable: risk which cannot be justified and risk reduction is essential e.g. residential housing being developed in a primary hazard zone;</p> <p>b. tolerable: risk within a range that a community can live with so as to secure certain net benefits. It is a range of risk that is not regarded as negligible or as something to ignore, but rather as something to be kept under review and reduced if possible; and</p> <p>c. acceptable: risk which is minor, and the cost of further reducing risk is largely disproportionate to the benefits gained e.g. residential housing being developed beyond coastal setbacks.</p>
<b>noise</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> includes vibration.
<b>notional boundary</b>	means a line 20 metres from any side of a residential unit or other building used for a noise sensitive activity, or the legal boundary where this is closer to such a building.
<b>occupy</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means the activity of occupying any part of the coastal marine area— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. where the occupation is reasonably necessary for another activity; and</li> <li>b. where it is to the exclusion of all or any class of persons who are not expressly allowed to occupy that part of the coastal marine area by a rule in a regional coastal plan and in any relevant proposed regional coastal plan or by a resource consent; and</li> <li>c. for a period of time and in a way that, but for a rule in the regional coastal plan and in any relevant proposed regional coastal plan or the holding of a resource consent under this Act, a lease or licence to occupy that part of the coastal marine area would be necessary to give effect to the exclusion of other persons, whether in a physical or legal sense.</li> </ul>
<b>operational need</b>	means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because of technical, logistical or operational characteristics or constraints.
<b>outstanding natural character</b>	means those areas identified as outstanding, that exhibit a combination of natural elements, patterns and processes that are exceptional in their extent, intactness, integrity and lack of built structures (the ‘clutter’ factor) and other modifications compared to other areas in the Waikato Region. These areas are identified and summarised in Schedule 4 to the plan.
<b>outstanding natural feature/ landscape</b>	means those areas identified as outstanding due to physical, sensory or associative attributes. These attributes may be ecological, physical, spiritual, cultural or aesthetic in nature. These areas are identified and summarised in Schedule 3 to the plan.
<b>pātaka kai</b>	means food basket/food store.
<b>personal water craft (jetski)</b>	means a power-driven vessel that: has a fully enclosed hull; does not take on water if capsized; and is designed to be operated by a person standing, sitting astride, or kneeling on it, but not seated within it.
<b>physical treatment methods for removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms</b>	means physical treatments involving manual removal/containment or exposure to environmental parameters exceeding biological tolerance of the target marine pest or harmful aquatic organism. These treatments include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Manual removal – hand collection and containment of organisms by divers in the intertidal zone, or by removal of the infested moveable or immovable structure to land;</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Mechanical removal – automated collection and containment of organisms via mechanical means such as dredging, suction, brush systems, robotics, or other machinery;</li> <li>c. Trapping – use of baited or un-baited traps and nets to capture and remove mobile marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms;</li> <li>d. Physical disruption – physical damage of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms by mechanical means, such as crushing;</li> <li>e. Thermal stress – application of elevated (hot water, steam, ambient) or reduced (cold water, ambient) temperature in the environment or to materials/equipment/infrastructure in containment;</li> <li>f. Encapsulation – enclosing, wrapping, or otherwise smothering surfaces or equipment to induce suffocation via reduced dissolved oxygen and/or secondary toxicity via formation of reducing agents (e.g., hydrogen sulphide);</li> <li>g. Desiccation – removal from water/air exposure to induce drying of extracellular and intracellular water; and</li> <li>h. Osmotic stress – exposure to hyposaline (via addition of fresh water) or hypersaline (via addition of sodium chloride) conditions that disrupt osmotic balance.</li> </ul>
<b>precautionary approach</b>	means a risk management approach that favours caution where an activity may have significant or irreversible effects and where there is imperfect information about the effects of an activity. On a case-by-case basis, it may be implemented through an avoidance response, or an adaptive management method where this would sufficiently diminish risk and uncertainty.
<b>process water</b>	means water generated from specific activities undertaken at industrial, commercial and high-risk facilities.
<b>prohibited mooring area</b>	means an area identified in Schedule 2 and in the maps to the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan in which the mooring of vessels is prohibited and for which no resource consent can be granted.
<b>rāhui</b>	means a tool used by kaitiaki to manage natural resources and are declared by kaitiaki to restrict access to and use of natural resources. Rāhui is a form of temporary restriction relating to the condition of a resource and the nature of the tapu in or around a specific area. Rāhui resemble prohibitions.
<b>raft</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means any moored floating platform which is not self-propelled; and includes platforms that provide buoyancy support for the surfaces on which fish or marine vegetation are cultivated or for any cage or other device used to contain or restrain fish or marine vegetation; but does not include booms situated on lakes subject to artificial control which have been installed to ensure the safe operation of electricity generating facilities.
<b>reasonable mixing zone</b>	means the zone in which a discharge would dissipate into existing waters. In relation to permitted activities, a distance 20 metres from the point of discharge, or for the purpose of activities that require resource consent, the zone of reasonable mixing will be determined on a case by case basis by consideration of location, size, shape, outfall design and in-zone water quality.
<b>reclamation</b>	means the manmade formation of permanent dry land by the positioning of material into or onto any part of a waterbody, bed of a lake or river or the coastal marine area, and: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. includes the construction of any causeway; but</li> </ul>

	<p>b. excludes the construction of natural hazard protection structures such as seawalls, breakwaters or groynes except where the purpose of those structures is to form dry land.</p>
<b>regionally significant infrastructure</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 1.6 of the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement – Te Tauaki Kaupapahere Te Rohe O Waikato:</i></p> <p>includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. pipelines for the distribution or transmission of natural or manufactured gas or petroleum;</li> <li>b. infrastructure required to permit telecommunication as defined in the Telecommunications Act 2001;</li> <li>c. radio apparatus as defined in section 2(1) of the Radio Communications Act 1989;</li> <li>d. the national electricity grid, as defined by the Electricity Industry Act 2010;</li> <li>e. a network (as defined in the Electricity Industry Act 2010);</li> <li>f. infrastructure for the generation and/ or conveyance of electricity that is fed into the national grid or a network (as defined in the Electricity Industry Act 2010);</li> <li>g. significant transport corridors as defined in Map 25 and 26 [of the RPS];</li> <li>h. lifeline utilities, as defined in the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act 2002, and their associated essential infrastructure and services;</li> <li>i. municipal wastewater treatment plants, water supply treatment plants and bulk water supply, wastewater conveyance and storage systems, municipal supply dams (including Mangatangi and Mangatāwhiri water supply dams) and ancillary infrastructure;</li> <li>j. flood and drainage infrastructure managed by Waikato Regional Council;</li> <li>k. Hamilton City bus terminal and Hamilton Railway Station terminus; and</li> <li>l. Hamilton International Airport.</li> </ul>
<b>restricted anchorage area</b>	<p>means any area designated as such in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw.</p>
<b>river and flood protection schemes</b>	<p>means activities undertaken under approved river and flood protection schemes, or land drainage schemes, managed by Waikato Regional Council in accordance with the Land Drainage Act 1908, Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1948, Taupiri Drainage and River District Act 1929 and the Resource Management Act 1991.</p>
<b>rohe</b>	<p>means boundary, district, region, territory, area, border (rohe moana is within the coastal marine area).</p>
<b>sea level rise</b>	<p>means the trend of annual mean sea level over time scales of at least three or more decades. Must be tied to one of the following two types: global – overall rise in absolute sea level in the world’s oceans; or relative – net rise relative to the local landmass (that may be subsiding or being uplifted)</p>
<b>Sound Exposure Level</b>	<p>means the total sound energy of an event, normalised to an average sound level over one second. It is the time-integrated, sound-pressure-squared level. SEL is typically used to compare transient sound events having different time durations, pressure levels and temporal characteristics, such as a train pass-by or an aircraft flyover.</p>
<b>sewage</b>	<p>means human excrement and urine.</p>
<b>Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area A (SIBA-A)</b>	<p>means areas that, due to their physical form, scale or inherent indigenous biodiversity values, are regionally significant because of their: rarity; value to threatened species; provision of critical habitat and/or vulnerable</p>

	<p>ecosystem types; and/or their disproportionate contribution to broader ecological functions and values. They are also considered to be vulnerable to any adverse effects of anthropogenic activities.</p> <p>These areas meet the criteria contained in policy 11(a) of the NZCPS.</p>
<b>Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area B (SIBA-B)</b>	<p>means areas that, due to their physical form, scale or inherent biodiversity values, are regionally significant because of their: predominance of native vegetation; provision of indigenous habitat and/or vulnerable ecosystem types that also form important migratory pathways or ecological corridors in the coastal environment. They are considered more resilient ecosystem types, or ecosystem types that are widespread throughout the region.</p> <p>These areas meet the criteria contained in policy 11(b) of the NZCPS</p>
<b>significant surf break</b>	means a surf break of national significance identified in Schedule 8A or regional significance identified in Schedule 8B.
<b>soft protection</b>	<p>means nature-based solutions intended to work with natural processes rather than against them to protect an activity from a coastal hazard, including erosion.</p> <p>Examples of soft protection include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. beach replenishment or nourishment</li> <li>b. planting</li> <li>c. back beach reconstruction (dune building)</li> <li>d. slope profile modification</li> <li>e. access restriction (in combination with other soft options).</li> </ol>
<b>spat</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020:</i></p> <p>means any stage in the life cycle of the following molluscs:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. dredge oysters less than 40 mm in length</li> <li>b. scallops less than 20 mm in length</li> <li>c. cockles less than 20 mm in length</li> <li>d. green-lipped mussels (greenshell mussels) less than 40 mm in length</li> <li>e. blue mussels less than 30 mm in length</li> <li>f. Pacific oysters less than 37 mm in length.</li> </ol>
<b>spat catching</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020:</i></p> <p>means the obtaining or retention of spat and the harvesting of spat from marine farm structures.</p>
<b>stormwater</b>	means run-off that has been intercepted, channelled, diverted, intensified or accelerated by human modification of a land surface, or run-off from the surface of any structure, as a result of precipitation and includes any contaminants contained within.
	<p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Does not include natural catchment drainage or process water from industrial, commercial or other trade premises and high-risk facilities.</li> </ol>
<b>stormwater best practice</b>	means stormwater design, management, operation and maintenance informed primarily through the 'Waikato stormwater management guideline' (Waikato Regional Council, Technical Report 2020/07) or subsequent updates. For existing and new stormwater networks, best practice may also be described in 'Catchment Management Plans',



	‘Stormwater Network Management Plans’, ‘Operation and Maintenance Plans’ and ‘Stormwater Receiving Environment Monitoring Plans’.
<b>stormwater management</b>	means – a. for quantity control, a system of vegetative and structural management measures that control the increased volume and rate of surface runoff caused by human made changes to the land. b. for quality control, a system of vegetative, structural and other measures that reduce or eliminate contaminants that might otherwise be carried by stormwater runoff.
<b>stormwater receiving environment monitoring plan</b>	means a plan that addresses the various receiving environment monitoring initiatives relating to discharges from a stormwater network. Key observations help to inform what management measures to include in Stormwater Network Management Plans, and/or what remediation or mitigation is required to address residual adverse effects in the receiving environment.
<b>structure</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means any building, equipment, device, or other facility, made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft.
<b>surf break</b>	means a natural feature that is comprised of swell, currents, water levels, seabed morphology, and wind. The hydrodynamic character of the ocean (swell, currents and water levels) combines with seabed morphology and winds to give rise to a “surfable wave”. A surf break includes the “swell corridor” through which the swell travels, and the morphology of the seabed of that wave corridor, through to the point where waves created by the swell dissipate and become non-surfable.  “Swell corridor” means the region offshore of a surf break where ocean swell travels and transforms to a “surfable wave”.  “Surfable wave” means a wave that can be caught and ridden by a surfer. Surfable waves have a wave breaking point that peels along the unbroken wave crest so that the surfer is propelled laterally along the wave crest.
<b>sustainable management</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the RMA:</i> means managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while— (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and (b) safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and (c) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.
<b>taiāpure</b>	means a coastal fishing area of special significance to Māori.
<b>takiwā</b>	means district, area, territory, vicinity, region.
<b>tangata whenua</b>	means people of the land.
<b>tapu</b>	means the sacred, dedicated, protected or that which is not ordinary or everyday. Tapu is the state or condition of a person or objects placed under the patronage of Atua. It is directly related to the mauri of a person, area or object and recognises an appreciation and respect of another life force.
<b>taxa</b>	means named biological classification units assigned to individuals or sets of species (eg species, subspecies, genus, order, variety).
<b>temporary</b>	means lasting for a duration of no longer than one week and does not recur for another month.



<b>temporary military training activity</b>	<p>means a temporary activity undertaken for the training of any component of the New Zealand Defence Force (including with allied forces) for any defence purpose. Defence purposes are those purposes for which a defence force may be raised and maintained under section 5 of the Defence Act 1990 which are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the defence of New Zealand, and of any area for the defence of which New Zealand is responsible under any Act;</li> <li>b. the protection of the interests of New Zealand, whether in New Zealand or elsewhere;</li> <li>c. the contribution of forces under collective security treaties, agreements, or arrangements;</li> <li>d. the contribution of forces to, or for any of the purposes of, the United Nations, or in association with other organisations or States and in accordance with the principles of the Charter of the United Nations;</li> <li>e. the provision of assistance to the civil power either in New Zealand or elsewhere in time of emergency;</li> <li>f. the provision of any public service.</li> </ol>
<b>territorial authority</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Local Government Act 2002:</i> means a city council or a district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2.</p>
<b>tikanga</b>	Means customary practices or behaviours.
<b>tikanga Māori</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> means Māori customary values and practices.</p> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Tikanga can be described as lore, custom, or practices based on the Māori belief system. The application of tikanga is diverse and can vary depending upon when and where an event takes place. Tikanga provides a framework for rules that govern harvesting, the care and respect for customary resources and the environment.</i></li> </ol>
<b>takutai moana</b>	means coast, foreshore and seabed.
<b>toxic substance</b>	means an agent or material capable of producing an adverse response (effect) in a biological system, seriously injuring structure or function, or producing death.
<b>toxicants</b>	means any substance that causes injury or illness or death of a living organism.
<b>unwanted organism</b>	<p><i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Biosecurity Act 1993:</i></p> <p>means any organism that a chief technical officer believes is capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm to any natural and physical resources or human health; and</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. includes— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i any new organism, if the Authority has declined approval to import that organism; and</li> <li>ii any organism specified in Schedule 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; but</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. does not include any organism approved for importation under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, unless— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. the organism is an organism which has escaped from a containment facility; or</li> <li>ii. a chief technical officer, after consulting the Authority and taking into account any comments made by the Authority concerning the organism, believes that the organism is capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm to any natural and physical</li> </ol> </li> </ol>

	resources or human health.
<b>urban area</b>	means an area identified in a district plan or proposed district plan as being primarily zoned for residential, industrial, or commercial activities, together with adjoining special-purpose and open-space zones, however described, but does not include an area zoned primarily for rural or rural-residential activities.
<b>vessel</b>	means every description of a boat or a craft used in navigation on the water, whether or not it has any means of propulsion, and includes a: barge, lighter, or other like vessel, hovercraft or other thing deriving full or partial support in the atmosphere from the reaction of air against the surface of the water over which it operates, submarine or other submersible, seaplane while on the surface of the water, personal water craft (jetski), raft, or kite board, sailboard or paddle board but does not include a surfboard.
<b>wāhi taonga</b>	means special places e.g. waka landing sites.
<b>wāhi tapu</b>	means sacred or spiritual places e.g. battle sites, urupā, burial site.
<b>wāhi tūpuna</b>	means a place associated with traditional uses.
<b>wastewater</b>	means any combination of two or more the following wastes: sewage, greywater or industrial and trade waste.
<b>water</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> a. means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground: b. includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water: c. does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern.
<b>water sensitive design</b>	means an approach to freshwater management, it is applied to land use planning and development at complementary scales including region, catchment, development and site. Water sensitive design seeks to protect and enhance natural freshwater systems, sustainably manage water resources, and mimic natural processes to achieve enhanced outcomes for ecosystems and our communities.
<b>wetland</b>	<i>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA:</i> includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions.

## Abbreviations | Ngā whakapotonga

Abbreviations	Full term
CMA	Coastal marine area
CMCA	Common marine and coastal area
CMT	Customary marine title
DOC	Department of Conservation
DIS	Discretionary
JMA	Joint Management Agreement
LOF	Level of fouling
MACAA	Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011
MHWS	Mean High Water Springs
N/A	Not Applicable
NES	National Environmental Standard
NES-MA	National Environmental Standard for Marine Aquaculture 2020
NC	Non-complying
NPS	National policy statement
NZCPS	New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010
ONF	Outstanding Natural Feature
ONL	Outstanding Natural Landscape
PCR	Protected customary rights
PER	Permitted Activity
PR	Prohibited
RDA	Restricted Discretionary Activity
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991
RPS	Waikato Regional Policy Statement: Te Tauākī Kaupapahere Te-Rohe O Waikato
SIBA	Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area
WRA	Waikato River Authority

# 4 NATIONAL DIRECTION INSTRUMENTS | NGĀ TURE

## National policy statements and New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement | Ngā tauākī kaupapahere ā-motu me te Tauākī Kaupapahere Takutai a Aotearoa

National policy statements (NPSs) and the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) form part of the RMA's policy framework and are prepared by central government. NPSs and the NZCPS contain objectives, policies and methods that must be given effect to by policy statements and plans. NPSs and the NZCPS must also be given regard to by consent authorities when making decisions on resource consent applications, alongside other considerations.

The following table provides an overview of whether any relevant review/s of the plan has been undertaken in relation to NPSs and the NZCPS.

<a href="#">National Policy Statement for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat 2023</a>	This plan has been reviewed (August 2023)
<a href="#">National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020</a>	This plan has been reviewed (August 2023)
<a href="#">National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020</a>	This national policy statement does not apply to the plan
<a href="#">National Policy Statement on Renewable Electricity Generation 2011</a>	This plan has been reviewed (August 2023)
<a href="#">New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010</a>	This plan has been reviewed (August 2023)
<a href="#">National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008</a>	This plan has been reviewed (August 2023)
<a href="#">Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000</a> (sections 7 and 8)	This plan has been reviewed (August 2023)

## National environmental standards | Ngā paerewa taiao ā-motu

National environmental standards (**NESs**) are prepared by central government and can prescribe technical standards, methods (including rules) and/or other requirements for environmental matters throughout the whole country or specific areas. If an activity doesn't comply with an NES, it is likely to require a resource consent. NESs must be observed and enforced by local authorities. The following NES's are currently in force:

- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Storing Tyres Outdoors) Regulations 2021
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standard on Plantation Forestry) Regulations 2017
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Telecommunication Facilities) Regulations 2016
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Electricity Transmission Activities) Regulations 2009
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Sources of Drinking Water) Regulations 2007
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (amended 2011)

## Regulations | Ngā herenga ā-ture

The regulations included in this chapter come under the RMA (excluding the national environmental standards listed above). These regulations are:

- Resource Management (Measurement and Reporting of Water Takes) Amendment Regulations 2020
- Resource Management (Exemption) Regulations 2017
- Resource Management (Network Utility Operations) Regulations 2016
- Resource Management (Discount on Administrative Charges) Regulations 2010
- Resource Management (Forms, Fees, and Procedure) Regulations 2003
- Resource Management (Infringement Offences) Regulations 1999
- Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998
- Resource Management (Exemption) Regulations 1996
- Resource Management (Transitional, Fees, Rents, and Royalties) Regulations 1991

## 5 TANGATA WHENUA

*Ko te moana, ehara rawa i te wai kau. Nō Tangaroa kē tēnā marae. He maha ōna hua e ora ai, ngā manu o te rangi, te iwi ki te whenua.*

*The sea is not any water. It is the marae of Tangaroa. It yields life for many things, the birds in the sky, the people upon the land.*

*(Te Ahukaramū Charles Royal 1989)*

---

### Recognising te ao Māori

The Māori world view (te ao Māori) acknowledges the interconnectedness and interrelationship of all living and non-living things. This holistic approach, seeking to understand the total system, not just parts of it, is necessary to create solutions to ‘wicked’ problems that minimise negative repercussions in other parts of the system.

The inclusion of te ao Māori in scientific research can deepen our collective understanding of connections, interdependencies and long-term intergenerational perspectives.

Opening up research to include Māori values and mātauranga Māori (Māori knowledge) is also part of this evolution. Māori values are centred around the obligation to foster reciprocal relationships with all aspects of the environment, living and non-living.

Mātauranga Māori is highly transdisciplinary and integrative in its approach to building new knowledge, through the organising principle of whakapapa (literally meaning ‘to layer’).

This system of whakapapa means that many Māori take an intergenerational view of the impacts of the actions we take now. This ultra-long-term perspective is another important frame of reference in science and an important incentive for change. All landowners feel a duty to leave the land and water they care for in good condition for their grandchildren and generations to come.

There is emerging evidence to suggest that the processes used in Māori science have an important role in removing the walls between scientific disciplines and helping teams of scientists with different areas of expertise to integrate their knowledge. This can help transdisciplinary research teams develop integrated methods to identify practical and sustainable solutions.

As ocean navigators, Māori have a rich history and tradition with the sea, which figures prominently in their world view. In some traditions the oceans’ depths are considered to be the origin and source of all life. The islands are believed to be fish, pulled up from beneath the sea, and humans are thought to have evolved from aquatic beginnings. The sea has dominated traditional Māori life for many practical reasons as it was an essential source of food and other resources.

Correspondingly, all tangata whenua groups within the Waikato region have an affiliation with the coastal marine area. Māori migration patterns point to initial occupation and settlement beginning in coastal areas, with some groups remaining while others moved inland. Genealogical ties expressed in whakapapa continue to maintain ongoing connection amongst these groups.

Tangata whenua groups within our region are numerous with predominant tribal affiliations across the region coming from the Tainui and Te Arawa waka and some groups having affiliation to Mataatua, Horouta and Aotea waka.

Every tangata whenua group has developed their own perspectives, obligations and values that approach environmental management in a different way but remain founded in commonalities held together through the expression of a te ao Māori worldview. Key relevant commonly held tangata whenua values include:

- Mana
- Whakapapa
- Mauri
- Kaitiakitanga
- Taonga
- Tikanga
- Mahinga kai
- Ahi kā roa
- Wāhi tapu
- Ki uta ki tai

Waikato Regional Council recognises these values and perspectives, and how they relate to each tangata whenua group, need to be considered and incorporated as part of resource management policy development and decision-making. The National Planning Standards 2019 requires councils to include a chapter in their plans for tangata whenua related content. This chapter provides a location for provisions that detail processes and context relating to tangata whenua.

## **Ngā pānga takutai moana - Customary rights and interests**

The Resource Management Act 1991, New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011, and the Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016 give special status to tangata whenua and set out principles and mechanisms through which their interests are provided for. These principles include, but are not limited to:

- the requirements to take account of iwi management plans when developing policy
- the requirements to consult with tangata whenua when developing policy
- the requirement for consent applications to identify and document, within an assessment of environmental effects, tangata whenua interested in or affected by consent proposals, the consultation undertaken, and any response to the views of those consulted
- the requirement to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi
- recognition of customary interests in the common marine and coastal area.

The RMA specifically recognises the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, kaitiakitanga, the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga, and the protection of customary rights (sections 6, 7 and 8). All persons exercising functions and powers must recognise and provide for these matters.

Coastal areas are significant to tangata whenua both spiritually, and as a source of food, resources for cultural activities such as weaving and carving, and as a place for customary rituals and practices.

Coastal resources continue to provide sustenance and identity to tangata whenua. Rare weaving materials, such as pīngao, grow on coastal dunes. Harbours and estuaries are important breeding, nursery and feeding grounds for fish and birds such as pātiki (flounder), matamata (whitebait) and kuaka (godwits). Kaimoana served at marae hākari as kīnaki (a tribal delicacy) performs a key function of marae – to show manaakitanga to guests in reciprocity for the mana their presence and involvement at important hui, tangihanga and other tribal events provides.

As a consequence, tangata whenua often regard the coastal marine area as 'baskets of food' providing kaimoana for the coastal and wider community and as a food source, the coast needs to be treated with respect. Resource activity and its adverse effects have reduced the coast's natural values and its ability to provide food in ways that recognise and provide for the relationship of tangata whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taonga, have



particular regard to kaitiakitanga, and take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi).

## Treaty of Waitangi (Fisheries Claims) Settlement Act 1992

The Treaty of Waitangi (Fisheries Claims) Settlement Act 1992 and the 1992 Deed of Settlement protects customary fishing rights guaranteed under the Treaty of Waitangi. The 1992 Deed of Settlement contains specific obligations for the Crown to provide for customary fisheries management practices and traditional gathering of fish.

Customary fisheries management areas include mātaimai reserves (areas closed to commercial fishing that may have bylaws affecting recreational and customary fishing), taiāpure (local fisheries of special significance), and temporary closures (or rāhui).

Legislation that offers taiāpure (customary fisheries) is provided for in Part 9 of the Fisheries Act 1996.

The Fisheries (Kaimoana Customary Fishing) Regulations 1998 empower tangata whenua to manage customary food gathering in a rohe moana and provide for the establishment of mātaimai reserves. Section 186A of the Fisheries Act provides a regime for temporary closure including rāhui.

## Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011

The Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 (**MACAA**) sets out a legal framework for recognising customary interests in the common marine and coastal area (**CMCA**).

The common marine and coastal area includes any part of the coastal marine area that is not privately owned, conservation land, a reserve or national park.

Iwi, hapū or whānau can apply for:

- Customary marine title (**CMT**), and/or
- Protected customary rights (**PCR**).

If either of these customary recognitions is granted, they can affect the way that resource consents are considered and what affected party approvals are required.

Further information for MACAA rights and interests is included in Schedule 11 of the plan.

## Tribal areas - Ngā rohe pōtae o ngā tangata whenua

The natural world provides identity for Māori. Māori people introduce themselves in relation to their tribal boundaries and their tūrangawaewae, with reference to:

- their mountain (maunga)
- the lands adjacent to the mountain (whenua)
- their river and its flow (awa)
- the coastline, or for inland tribes, often a large lake (moana).

## Regional iwi partners

At the regional scale the description of tangata whenua within the Waikato region begins with the Waikato regional iwi partners group. This group is based on iwi Māori entities that regional council has, or has pending, co-governance or co-management arrangements with that stem from Treaty settlement legislation. It includes entities representing:

- Waikato-Tainui
- Te Arawa iwi
- Raukawa
- Ngāti Maniapoto
- Hauraki iwi
- Ngāti Tūwharetoa.

## Iwi authorities

In addition, the region also includes a wider group of iwi Māori entities representing tangata whenua interests at a local or sub-regional scale. These groups have been identified by the Crown for RMA purposes and further through treaty claims settlement processes undertaken within, or overlapping with, the Waikato region.

Iwi identified within the Waikato region <sup>1</sup>	Treaty settlement iwi <sup>2</sup>	Settlement legislation
<b>Predominantly in region</b>		
<b>Hauraki</b>		
	<u>Pare Hauraki</u>	
	<u>Marutūāhu</u>	
<u>Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki</u>	<u>Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki</u>	<u>Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki Claims Settlement Act 2018</u>
<u>Ngāti Hako</u>	<u>Ngāti Hako</u>	
<u>Ngāti Hei</u>	<u>Ngāti Hei</u>	
<u>Ngāti Maru</u>	<u>Ngāti Maru (Hauraki)</u>	
<u>Ngāti Pāoa</u>	<u>Ngāti Paoa</u>	
<u>Ngāti Porou ki Harataunga ki Mataora</u>	<u>Ngāti Porou ki Harataunga ki Mataora</u>	
<u>Ngāti Pūkenga ki Waiau</u>		<u>Ngāti Pūkenga Claims Settlement Act 2017</u>
<u>Ngāti Rāhiri Tumutumu</u>	<u>Ngāti Rāhiri Tumutumu</u>	
<u>Ngāti Tamaterā</u>	<u>Ngāti Tamaterā</u>	
<u>Ngāti Tara Tokanui</u>	<u>Ngāti Tara Tokanui</u>	
<u>Ngāti Whanaunga</u>	<u>Ngāti Whanaunga</u>	
<u>Te Patukirikiri</u>	<u>Te Patukirikiri</u>	
<b>Maniapoto</b>		

<sup>1</sup> as identified on Te Puni Kokiri website

<sup>2</sup> as identified on [Te Arawhiti Pathway](#) website

<u>Maniapoto</u>	<u>Maniapoto</u> <u>Ngāti Maniapoto (Waipa River)</u>	<u>Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012</u>
<u>Maniapoto</u>	<u>Maniapoto</u> <u>Ngāti Maniapoto</u>	<u>Maniapoto Claims Settlement Act 2022</u>
<u>Maraeroa A &amp; B (Land Block)</u>	<u>Maraeroa A &amp; B Blocks</u>	<u>Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012</u>
	<u>Waitomo</u>	
<b>Raukawa</b>		
<u>Raukawa</u>	<u>Raukawa</u> <u>Raukawa (Waikato River)</u>	<u>Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014</u> <u>Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010</u>
<b>Matamata</b>		
<u>Ngāti Hinerangi</u>	<u>Ngāti Hinerangi</u>	<u>Ngāti Hinerangi Claims Settlement Act 2021</u>
<b>Tūwharetoa</b>		
<u>Ngāti Tūwharetoa</u>	<u>Ngāti Tūwharetoa</u> <u>Ngāti Tuwharetoa (Waikato River)</u>	<u>Ngāti Tūwharetoa Claims Settlement Act 2018</u> <u>Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010</u>
<u>Ngāti Tūrangitukua</u>	<u>Ngāti Tūrangitukua</u>	<u>Ngāti Tūrangitukua Claims Settlement Act 1999</u>
<b>Pouakani</b>		
<u>Pouakani (Land Block)</u>	<u>Pouakani People</u>	<u>Pouakani Claims Settlement (Resource Management Consent Notification) Regulations 2001</u> <u>Pouakani Claims Settlement Act 2000</u>
<b>Waikato</b>		
<u>Waikato</u>	<u>Waikato Tainui Raupatu</u> <u>Waikato Tainui (Waikato River)</u> <u>Waikato Tainui remaining claims</u>	<u>Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010</u> <u>Waikato Raupatu Claims Settlement Act 1995</u>
<u>Ngāti Hauā</u>	<u>Ngāti Hauā</u>	<u>Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014</u>
	<u>Ngāti Koheriki</u>	
<u>Te Ākitai Waiohūa</u>	<u>Te Ākitai Waiohūa</u>	
<u>Ngāti Korokī Kahukura</u>	<u>Ngāti Korokī Kahukura</u>	<u>Ngāti Korokī Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014</u>
	<u>Ngāti Te Ata</u>	
<u>Ngāti Tamaoho</u>	<u>Ngāti Tamaoho</u>	<u>Ngāti Tamaoho Claims Settlement Act 2018</u>
<b>Te Arawa</b>		

	<u>Te Arawa River Iwi (Waikato River)</u>	<u>Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010</u>
<u>Ngāti Kea / Ngāti Tuarā</u>		
<u>Ngāti Tahu / Ngāti Whaoa</u>		
	<u>Tūhourangi</u>	
<b>Partly in region</b>		
<b>Te Arawa</b>		
	<u>Te Arawa Lakes</u>	<u>Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claims Settlement Act 2008</u>
<u>Te Ure o Uenukukōpako / Ngati Whakaue</u>	<u>Ngāti Whakaue</u>	
<u>Ngāti Rangitihi</u>	<u>Ngāti Rangitihi</u>	<u>Ngāti Rangitihi Claims Settlement Act 2022</u>
<u>Ngāti Rangiwewehi</u>	<u>Ngāti Rangiwewehi</u>	
<b>Central North Island</b>		
<u>Ngāti Hineuru</u>	<u>Ngāti Hineuru</u>	<u>Hineuru Claims Settlement Act 2016</u>
<u>Ngāti Kahungunu</u>		
<u>Ngāti Manawa</u>	<u>Ngāti Manawa</u>	<u>Ngāti Manawa Claims Settlement Act 2012</u>
<u>Ngāti Whare</u>	<u>Ngāti Whare</u>	<u>Ngāti Whare Claims Settlement Act 2012</u>
<u>Tūhoe</u>	<u>Ngāi Tūhoe</u>	<u>Tūhoe Claims Settlement Act 2014</u>
<b>Tauranga Moana</b>		
	<u>Tauranga Moana</u>	
<u>Ngāi Te Rangi</u>	<u>Ngāi Te Rangi and Ngā Pōtiki</u>	
<u>Ngāti Pūkenga</u>	<u>Ngāti Pūkenga</u>	
<u>Ngāti Ranginui</u>	<u>Ngāti Ranginui</u>	
<b>Whanganui / Taranaki</b>		
<u>Ngāti Hāua (Upper Whanganui)</u>	<u>Ngāti Hāua</u>	
<u>Whanganui Iwi / Te Atihaunui a Pāpārangī</u>	<u>Whanganui Iwi</u>	
<u>Te Korowai o Wainuiārua (Central Whanganui)</u>	<u>Central Whanganui (Te Korowai o Wainuiārua)</u>	
	<u>Mōkai Pātea Nui Tonu</u>	
<u>Ngāti Tamakōpiri</u>		
<u>Ngāti Tama</u>	<u>Ngāti Tama (Taranaki)</u>	<u>Ngati Tama Claims Settlement Act 2003</u>
<u>Ngāti Rangi</u>	<u>Ngāti Rangi</u>	<u>Ngāti Rangi Claims Settlement Act 2019</u>
<b>Tāmaki Makaurau</b>		
	<u>Tāmaki Makaurau</u>	
	<u>Ngāti Whātua</u>	

<u>Ngāti Manuhiri</u>	<u>Ngāti Manuhiri</u>	
<b>Regional / National</b>		
	<u>Fisheries Settlement</u>	<u>Maori Fisheries Act 2004</u> <u>Treaty of Waitangi (Fisheries Claims) Settlement Act 1992</u>
		<u>Maori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement (Aquaculture Settlement Register) Regulations 2006</u> <u>Maori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004</u>
	<u>Central North Island Forests</u>	<u>Central North Island Forests Land Collective Settlement Act 2008</u>

## Relationships between tangata whenua and council

The relationships Waikato Regional Council has with iwi Māori entities occurs at multiple levels and is recognised through a range of instruments, including:

- relationships resulting from the lodgement of iwi planning documents with Waikato Regional Council
- relationships formed out of the treaty claims settlement process (both pre-settlement and post-settlement)
- relationships as iwi authorities under the RMA
- relationships as tangata whenua and ahi kā roa groups at place throughout the region.

Tangata whenua groups can hold multiple relationships at different levels and through multiple instruments. The Treaty claims settlement process often clarifies and further defines these relationships through formalised arrangements for the management of natural resources and clearly defined areas of interest.

Effective engagement with a single tangata whenua group may mean engaging with more than one representative entity.

## Treaty settlement legislation

Treaty settlement legislation has led the council to form joint management agreements, co-management arrangements and co-governance relationships with the following iwi:

- Raukawa (through the Raukawa Charitable Trust)
- Ngāti Maniapoto (through Te Nehenehenui Trust)
- Te Arawa (through the Te Arawa River Iwi Trust)
- Waikato-Tainui (through the Waikato Raupatu River Trust)
- Ngāti Tūwharetoa (through the Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board).

## Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act establishes the Hauraki Gulf Forum, which promotes and facilitates integrated management and the protection and enhancement of the Hauraki Gulf, and recognises the historic, traditional, cultural, and spiritual relationship of tangata whenua with Tīkapa Moana.

Membership of the forum includes six tangata whenua representatives of Tikapa Moana in consultation with tangata whenua and the Minister of Māori Affairs. The forum also includes representatives of the Ministers of Conservation, Fisheries and Māori Development, and elected representatives from Auckland Council, Waikato Regional Council, and the Waikato, Hauraki, Thames-Coromandel and Matamata-Piako District Councils.

## Joint management agreements

There are five joint management agreements (**JMAs**) between iwi and Waikato Regional Council and one co-managed lands agreement with Waikato rohe iwi. These derive from the provisions within the iwi-specific Treaty Settlement legislation. The current JMAs are with the following entities:

- Waikato Raupatu River Trust – Waikato-Tainui (has the sole co-management agreement with Waikato Regional Council for river related lands)
- Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board
- Raukawa Charitable Trust
- Crown-iwi co-management of the Waikato River catchment
- Te Arawa River Iwi Trust
- Te Nehenehenui Trust (this is a collective agreement with all the relevant local authorities in this rohe).

These JMAs acknowledge the iwi Māori relationship with the environment. Both parties agree to embrace a new era of holistic co-governance and co-management, where iwi involvement in decision-making is enabled through the joint sub-committees, and where effective relationships are strengthened through biannual operational and co-governance meetings.

## The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

As part of the Waikato River Settlement between the Crown and Waikato-Tainui, Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River was developed. This Vision and Strategy was developed by the Guardians Establishment Committee, iwi and communities of the Waikato River catchment and will be periodically reviewed by the Waikato River Authority.

The Waikato River Authority (**WRA**) was established through the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, the Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, and with additional responsibilities arising from the Ngā Wai o Maniapoto (Waipā River) Act 2012.

The WRA is required to set the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River to achieve the restoration of the health and wellbeing of the river for further generations. The Vision and Strategy, known as Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato, applies to the Waikato River and activities within its catchment affecting the Waikato River. The Vision and Strategy is the primary direction setting document for the river and it forms part of the Waikato Regional Policy Statement. Its status means that it prevails over any inconsistencies in other policies, plans or processes affecting the river.

The Vision and Strategy must be given effect to by regional and district plans within the river's catchments. The WRA's other functions include promoting an integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to the implementation of the Vision and Strategy and the management of the Waikato River, and to fund rehabilitation initiatives for the river in its capacity as the trustee of the Waikato River Cleanup Trust.

The WRA is comprised of five Crown appointed members and one from each of the five river iwi. One Crown member is nominated by Waikato Regional Council, with a second nominated by territorial authorities.

## Statutory acknowledgements

A statutory acknowledgement is a means by which the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of their cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association with a statutory area. Local authorities must attach information recording statutory acknowledgements to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover the area. The attachment of such information is not subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the RMA. Statutory acknowledgements are listed in Appendix 1 to the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement.

## Hapū and iwi planning documents

### Ngā mahere taiao a ngā iwi - Iwi management plans

An iwi management plan is a document developed and approved by iwi to address matters of resource management activity of significance within their respective rohe (region). The plans can contain information relating to specific cultural values, historical accounts, descriptions of areas of interest (hapū/iwi boundaries) and consultation and engagement protocols for resource consents and plan changes.

Planning documents recognised by an iwi authority provide a mechanism in which iwi interests can be considered in the council processes. There are specific legislative requirements that place a duty on council staff to take these plans into account. In practice, local authorities must balance a number of competing interests, including iwi plans.

Iwi and hapū planning documents lodged with the Waikato Regional Council can be found at the following link - [Iwi management plans](#)

The plans that include the CMA have been taken into account by the council in the preparation of the plan.

Iwi management plans provide a robust view of the aspirations and interests of individual iwi. They contain information relating to specific cultural values, historical accounts, and natural resources as well as descriptions of areas of interest such as iwi/hapū boundaries and wāhi tapu (sacred site).

For the plan, iwi management plans have been used to build our understanding of the coastal issues and priorities for iwi in the coastal marine area. The iwi management plans we have drawn information from include:

- Whaia te Mahere Taiao o Hauraki
- Ko tā Maniapoto Mahere Taiao: Environmental Management Plan
- Motakotako Marae Hapu Management Plan
- Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan
- Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki Plan
- Raukawa Fisheries Plan
- Tai Tumu Tai Pari Tai Ao: Waikato-Tainui Environmental Plan.

## **Involvement and participation with tangata whenua**

Waikato Regional Council will consult the relevant iwi authority on all matters related to tangata whenua values and interests identified in this plan, and will maintain regular and open communication with iwi and hapū authorities on resource management matters and processes.

Resource consent applicants should also consult early with tangata whenua on any matters where the plan identifies that cultural values need to be considered.

Users of this plan should also refer to the IM - Integrated management and SASM - Sites and areas of significance to Māori chapters.



---

# **PART 2 – MANAGEMENT OF RESOURCES |**

## **WĀHANGA 2 – TE WHAKAHAERE RAWA**

---

## 6 IM – Integrated management | Whakahaere rawa pāhekoheko

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Integrated management is the co-ordination of activities that cross administrative boundaries and recognition of the interconnections between people and natural and physical resources. While this plan addresses the coastal marine area from MHWS seaward, this is also a dynamic boundary affected by natural physical processes, human activities, climate change and sea level rise.

Taking an integrated management approach to the wider coastal environment will maintain the moana in a healthy, productive and resilient condition, whilst providing for cultural, social and economic values over different time scales and focuses on:

- **Cross-boundary and cross-resource integration:** which recognises activities can have effects across the line of MHWS between the CMA and the land and also that activities can affect many different resources, directly and indirectly, such as seabed, water, air, ecosystems and natural physical processes.
- **Managing cumulative stress:** factoring into decision-making that the effect of individual activities on their own can be minor, but at some point the accumulation of minor effects becomes significant, and that effects can result from multiple activities.
- **Cross-agency integration:** which acknowledges that the management of coastal activities is shared between many parties, including tangata whenua, statutory authorities and community organisations, and involves many different pieces of legislation and planning documents.

This chapter provides direction for achieving integrated management across coastal resources and activities in the coastal marine area while recognising the relationship with the wider coastal environment. It includes objectives and policies that recognise the unique relationship Māori have with the coastal environment and promotes the protection of tangata whenua values and their active involvement in the management of the coast and its resources. A cultural impact assessment is required if a proposed activity may result in adverse effects to these values.

Joint Management Agreements establish processes for ensuring that iwi authorities have an opportunity to provide feedback on resource consent applications. The Marine and Coastal (Takutai Moana) Act (MACAA) provides for the recognition of the customary rights of iwi, hapū and whānau in the common marine and coastal area. For further information, see Schedule 11 of the plan.

This chapter is supported by specific objectives and policies in other chapters of this plan that contribute to integrated management. The IM - Integrated Management chapter encompasses and complements an ecosystem-based management approach to decision-making. Ecosystem-based management involves a holistic management approach involving people and resources and associated interactions.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### **IM-O1 Integrated management of resources**

Resources and activities in the coastal environment are managed in an integrated manner that recognises the inter-relationships between resources and people.

### **IM-O2 Active involvement of tangata whenua**

Tangata whenua are actively involved in resource management decisions affecting the management of the coastal environment.

### **IM-O3 Tangata whenua values**

Te ao Māori, tangata whenua values, mātauranga Māori and tikanga Māori, and the relationships and responsibilities tangata whenua have with the coast, are recognised and provided for in decision-making.

### **IM-O4 Mauri and life supporting capacity**

The mauri and life-supporting capacity of the coastal environment is safeguarded from the adverse effects of use and development.

### **IM-O5 Climate change**

Resource management decisions in the coastal environment have particular regard to the potential effects of climate change, including exacerbated natural hazards and sea level rise.

### **IM-O6 Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato (Waikato River)**

Integrated management of the coastal environment includes giving effect to Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### **IM-P1 Ki uta ki tai (Mountains to the Sea)**

Recognise and provide for ki uta ki tai - the interconnectedness between resources, activities and their effects on water quality, sedimentation, indigenous biodiversity and coastal hazards in the coastal environment.

### **IM-P2 Cross agency management**

Work with tangata whenua, central government, local authorities, stakeholders and communities to achieve integrated management by ensuring resources are used sustainably, the mauri of te taiao is protected, and the needs of people and communities are met.

### **IM-P3 Statutory obligations in decision-making**

Ensure statutory obligations to Māori and tangata whenua are safeguarded and met through decision-making on resource use, development or protection, including those embodied in:

1. Treaty settlement legislation and statutory acknowledgements
2. Customary rights and interests under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011
3. Formal partnership arrangements and joint management agreements between local authorities and tangata whenua
4. Taiāpure and mātaimai under the Fisheries Act 1996
5. Iwi management plans prepared under the RMA.

#### **IM-P4 Ko te Pataka kai o Tīkapa Moana Te Moananui a Toi/ Hauraki Gulf**

Protect, restore and enhance the mauri, the life supporting capacity of the environment and the associated human values of Tīkapa Moana/Hauraki Gulf and ensure activities are managed in an integrated manner, so that marine habitats and their fisheries support the pātaka kai for customary, recreational and commercial uses.

#### **IM-P5 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River**

Restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River by:

1. Giving effect to the objectives of [Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato](#) (Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River)
2. Recognising the needs of communities and future generations
3. Enabling ki uta ki tai.

#### **IM-P6 Other statutory responsibilities**

Consider the purpose of other statutory responsibilities relevant to the coastal environment, including conservation, fisheries, infrastructure and water and soil conservation, and manage activities in the coastal marine area to integrate with these responsibilities, as far as practicable.

#### **IM-P7 Tangata whenua relationship with the coast**

Recognise and provide for the special relationship tangata whenua and their historical, spiritual, cultural and traditional values have with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga, including by:

1. Protecting taonga, sites, resources and values of cultural significance, acknowledging that some of these may not be publicly identified
2. Ensuring tangata whenua have the opportunity in consent decision-making to identify sites and values that have cultural and spiritual significance, and protect these sites from the adverse effects of use and development
3. Enabling tangata whenua to undertake customary activities in the coastal marine area, including management of kaimoana, mahinga mātaītai and cultural sites of significance.

#### **IM-P8 Kaitiakitanga**

Enable tangata whenua to exercise kaitiakitanga and the restoration, protection and enhancement of the mauri of coastal resources and ecosystems, marine habitats and marine life for present and future generations.

#### **IM-P9 Mātauranga Māori**

Recognise and provide for, where practicable, the importance of mātauranga Māori and customary knowledge, in accordance with tikanga Māori, to:

1. Improve and safeguard the coastal environment for future generations
2. Monitor the state of the environment and impacts of activities
3. Enhance resources or degraded areas
4. Contribute to decision-making.

#### **IM-P10 Cultural impact assessment**

Require resource consent applications to provide a cultural impact assessment if a proposed activity may result in one or more of the following:

1. Adverse effects on mahinga kai or access to kaimoana beds
2. Adverse effect on wāhi tapu, sites of significance and other taonga identified in Schedule 6, or as otherwise identified by tangata whenua
3. Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity that would affect tangata whenua carrying out cultural and traditional activities
4. Adverse effects on taiāpure, mahinga mātaītai or Māori non-commercial fisheries
5. Adverse effects on the relationship tangata whenua have with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga
6. Introduction of new species to the Waikato region.

#### **IM-P11 Requirements of a cultural impact assessment**

Require a cultural impact assessment to:

1. Be of a corresponding scale and detail to the effects that the activity may have on tangata whenua and their taonga
2. Address any matters arising from IM-P3, IM-P4 or IM-P5
3. Have particular regard to:
  - a. any planning document recognised by an iwi authority and lodged with council, that is relevant to the activity
  - b. the outcomes of any consultation with tangata whenua over the activity
4. Be evidence-based and incorporate, where appropriate, mātauranga Māori
5. Include cultural place-based information
6. Identify and describe the cultural resources and activities that may be affected by the activity and the adverse effects that may arise from the activity
7. Identify, where possible, how to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects on cultural values of the activity that are more than minor
8. Include any other relevant information.

#### **IM-P12 Use and development**

Sustain and protect the life-supporting capacity of the coastal marine area while enabling appropriate use and development to provide for the cultural, social and economic wellbeing of communities.

#### **IM-P13 Interconnected nature of the coast**

Safeguarding the dynamic, complex and interconnected nature of ecological and physical processes and functions in the coastal environment and the interconnections between marine ecosystems and people, in order to provide for the cultural, social, recreational and economic health and wellbeing of present and future generations.

#### **IM-P14 Functional and operational need**

Provide for use and development in appropriate areas by ensuring that:

1. Activities have a functional or operational need to be located in the coastal marine area
2. Activities that could otherwise be practicably located outside the coastal marine area are avoided
3. Activities associated with adjacent land uses, but which may adversely affect the coastal marine area or coastal ecological and physical processes and functions, are avoided as far as practicable.

#### **IM-P15 Efficient use of space**

Promote the efficient use of space in the coastal marine area by:

1. Ensuring space is of a scale appropriate to the activity

2. Requiring use and development in the CMA to be adequately supported by land-based access, services and infrastructure
3. Requiring use and development to avoid sprawling or sporadic developments
4. Ensuring space is allocated in a way that recognises and provides for protected customary rights.

#### **IM-P16      Precautionary approach**

Adopt a precautionary approach when the effects of an activity are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potentially significantly adverse, or where use and development is potentially vulnerable to the effects of climate change and sea level rise. Measures to manage any uncertainty or lack of understanding in the potential effects of an activity may include one or more of the following:

1. Declining resource consent
2. Limiting the duration of a resource consent term
3. Applying adaptive management approach
4. Requiring monitoring (including additional baseline monitoring)
5. Staging of development
6. The review of consent conditions
7. The scope of consent conditions (including the use of expert panels where necessary).

#### **IM-P17      Adaptive management**

Apply an adaptive management approach to the management of coastal resources, including but not limited to:

1. Using evidence-based decision-making that assesses whether the environmental risk and consequences and the degree of uncertainty can be addressed through consent conditions, in a way that reduces risk and uncertainty
2. Requiring monitoring to address:
  - a. baseline information on the effects of the activity (or multiple activities) on the receiving environment
  - b. effects that are unknown but where the risk of the activity proceeding is considered to be acceptable
3. Setting thresholds or boundaries and adaptation actions or decisions to be taken, if potential adverse effects arise
4. Specifying the circumstances when a review of consent conditions will be undertaken, including to ensure best management practices are undertaken
5. Enabling indigenous biodiversity habitats affected by climate change, including marine acidification, to be remedied, restored or relocated

#### **IM-P18      Climate change – resilience and adaptation**

Manage the potential effects of climate change on existing and proposed use and development in the coastal marine area by:

1. Taking into account any activity included in:
  - a. an emissions reduction plan made in accordance with section 5Z1 of the Climate Change Response Act 2002; or
  - b. a national adaptation plan made in accordance with section 5Z5 of the Climate Change Response Act 2002; and
2. Ensuring resource consent applicants have adopted the most recent national guidance on climate change projections, in assessing risk and in designing scale, resilience, design-life and future adaptations of the activity; and
3. Taking into account any strategy or plan prepared to manage natural hazard risks; and

4. Recognising that some activities will need to adapt to the potential effects of climate change including marine warming, acidification, sea level rise, and increased storm surge, coastal inundation and coastal erosion.

#### **IM-P19 Cumulative effects**

Avoid significant cumulative adverse effects from activities by:

1. Assessing the significance of cumulative effects based on a geographic area of an appropriate scale relative to the proposed activity
2. Assessing the direct, indirect and consequential impacts of the proposed activity on existing uses, and on ecological, cultural, social and economic values and pressures, now and in the reasonably foreseeable future
3. Assessing whether the proposed activity exacerbates an existing environmental issue or threshold, or results in reverse sensitivity effects.

#### **IM-P20 Bonds**

Require a bond or equivalent assurance, for activities where it is deemed necessary relative to risk, to cover potential costs including for:

1. The removal of abandoned or derelict structures
2. The restoration or reinstatement of the environment
3. The restoration or reinstatement of a cultural site/ cultural site of significance
4. Any emergency repairs or response required due to a failure of structural integrity.

Advisory note:

1. *Examples of assurance include the establishment of a fidelity fund or a form of insurance.*

#### **IM-P21 Financial contributions**

Consider the application of financial contributions, as set out in Schedule 10, to address significant residual adverse effects that cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for IM – Integrated management are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

# 7 AIR – Discharges to air | Ngā rukenga ki te rangi

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Discharges to air include odour, products of combustion, agrichemical spray drift, particulate matter, solvents, nitrogen oxides, and other gases. They can be complex in nature and specific discharges must be assessed individually and regulated appropriately. These discharges have the potential to release toxic substances into the environment that can adversely impact human health, ecosystems, and natural character values in the CMA. Discharges to air from land-based activities can also result in adverse effects being noticed in the CMA.

Discharge to air from ships, offshore installations and other ocean freight activities can contribute to greenhouse gas emissions in the atmosphere. However, the plan cannot regulate discharges from the normal operations of ships and the subsequent greenhouse gas emissions, as this is covered under Regulation 16 of the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### AIR-O1 Protection of air quality

Air quality in the coastal marine area is protected.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### AIR-P1 Avoid significant adverse effects of discharges on air quality

Ensure discharges to air in the coastal marine area do not:

1. Produce significant objectionable or offensive effects from the discharge of odour or dust
2. Cause hazardous, dangerous or toxic effects on human or ecosystem health
3. Cause suspended or deposited particulate matter that has an adverse effect
4. Have a significant adverse effect on visibility
5. Cause accelerated corrosion of structures
6. Cause significant adverse effects on the relationship tangata whenua as kaitiaki have with their identified taonga such as ancestral lands, water and wāhi tapu.

### AIR-P2 Manage adverse effects from activities that may affect air quality

Manage the adverse effects of activities on air quality by:

1. Allowing discharges to air where the discharge has only a minor or temporary adverse effect.
2. Ensuring specific activities that have a higher risk of significant adverse effects on air quality only occur where adverse effects can be appropriately avoided, remedied or mitigated.



### **AIR-P3 Discharge of greenhouse gases to air from heat devices on a site**

Before granting a resource consent for the discharge of greenhouse gases to air from heat devices on a site, the regional council must:

1. Consider the total discharges of greenhouse gases from all heat devices on the site that the application relates to.
2. Recognise that, cumulatively, all discharges of greenhouse gases resulting from the production of industrial process heat, regardless of volume, contribute to climate change, and any reduction in greenhouse gas emissions contributes to mitigating climate change.

### **AIR-P4 Consideration of emissions plan for restricted discretionary activities relating to discharges to air of greenhouse gases from heat devices**

When considering an emissions plan as part of an application for a resource consent for a restricted discretionary activity relating to discharges to air of greenhouse gases from heat devices, the consent authority must consider:

1. The timing and content of updates of the emissions plan to be made by the holder of the consent.
2. How those updates will reflect changes in technology and best practices.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### **Permitted activities**

#### **AIR-R1 Permitted discharges to air in the coastal marine area**

<b>Activity status PER</b> The discharge of contaminants to air in the coastal marine area, provided it is not covered by any other rule in the plan and does not result in any of the following:  <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Objectionable odours that cause an adverse effect</li><li>2. Degraded air quality that may have an adverse effect on human health</li><li>3. Significant adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity</li><li>4. Objectionable effects of particulate matter</li><li>5. Impeded visibility more than 50m away from the discharge</li><li>6. Accelerated corrosion or accelerated deterioration to structures.</li></ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>AIR-R4 - DIS</b>
--	--

#### **AIR-R2 Open burning in the coastal marine area**

<b>Activity status PER</b> The discharge of contaminants to air from open burning.  <u>Where:</u> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. AIR-P1 can be complied with</li><li>2. The discharge of contaminants to air and any subsequent discharge onto foreshore from open burning is from:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Untreated wood and vegetative matter; or</li><li>b. Paper and cardboard; or</li><li>c. Food waste; or</li><li>d. Animal carcasses, carried out under the instruction of the responsible authority; or</li></ol></li></ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>AIR-R4 - DIS</b>
---	--

	<p>e. Fire-fighting under control of Fire and Emergency New Zealand</p> <p>3. The burning is not located within 100m of any dwelling (unless written approval from the homeowner or their tenant is obtained prior to commencing)</p> <p>4. The discharge of smoke does not adversely affect the safety of any vehicle, aircraft or vessel</p> <p>5. Ash is removed from the CMA prior to the next high tide</p> <p>6. The material being incinerated does not include the following:</p> <p>a. fluorine, chlorine, phosphorus, nitrogen or sulphur that has been chemically combined by human manufacturing.</p>	
--	---	--

### Discretionary activities

#### **AIR-R3 Specific activities that have a higher risk of significant adverse effects on air quality**

	<p><b>Activity status DIS</b></p> <p>The discharge of contaminants to air and any subsequent discharge of contaminants into the coastal marine area that does not comply with AIR-R1 or from:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Abrasive blasting</li> <li>2. Application of contaminants not otherwise provided for in the BIO - Biosecurity chapter rules of this plan</li> <li>3. Coating processes</li> <li>4. Processing, storage, transfer and flaring of hydrocarbons and biogas</li> <li>5. Open burning that does not meet the standards of AIR-R2.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

#### **AIR-R4 Discharge of contaminants to air in the coastal marine area**

	<p><b>Activity status DIS</b></p> <p>Any discharge of contaminants to air that does not comply with AIR-P1 and is not explicitly covered by another rule in this chapter.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

### Prohibited activities

#### **AIR-R5 Prohibited open burning activities**

	<p><b>Activity Status: PR</b></p> <p>Open burning activities that include burning of any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Halogenated organic chemicals such as fluorescent light fittings</li> <li>2. Material that contains any type of plastic</li> <li>3. Material containing heavy metals</li> <li>4. Pitch, paint and paint residues and surface coatings</li> <li>5. Any material containing asbestos</li> <li>6. Pathological waste (excluding animal carcasses)</li> <li>7. Agrichemicals and agrichemical containers</li> <li>8. Copper, chrome or arsenic treated timber or timber treated with organochlorine</li> <li>9. Rubber and tyres</li> <li>10. Waste oil and other petroleum products including sludge</li> <li>11. Sludge from industrial processes</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>12. Hazardous materials from contaminated sites and buildings</li><li>13. Materials associated with recovery of metals from cables</li><li>14. Household appliances</li><li>15. Components of motor vehicles</li><li>16. Tar and bitumen</li><li>17. Any material within a municipal waste disposal premises.</li></ol>
--	---

## 8 AQA – Aquaculture | Ahumoana

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Aquaculture (or marine farming) is the breeding and growing of fish, aquatic life or seaweed in the coastal marine area. It generally involves occupation of space, structures, discharges and deposition on, and disturbance to, the foreshore and seabed, and requires high water quality.

While aquaculture is important to the region and has economic benefits, it may also impact on aspects of the coastal marine area valued by the community, such as public access, recreational use, cultural, natural character, indigenous biodiversity and amenity values.

Aquaculture can be affected by land uses above MHWS that can adversely affect coastal water quality and influence the ability of an area to sustain aquaculture activities.

Aquaculture activities are enabled in aquaculture management areas on the western Coromandel Peninsula, while being generally inappropriate in identified significant areas, some harbours and estuaries and the eastern side of the Coromandel Peninsula. Spat catching and retention are important to provide for within the region to support the operation and development of commercial aquaculture activities. Policy 8 of the NZCPS requires this plan to enable aquaculture in appropriate locations.

Aside from existing marine farms, commercial aquaculture activities are provided for within the following aquaculture management areas:

- Wilson Bay (Areas A, B and C)
- Coromandel Marine Farming Area
- Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area A and B
- Colville Aquaculture Management Area
- Any aquaculture settlement area gazetted under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.

The Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020 (**NES-MA**) came into force on 1 December 2020. If an activity provided for in this chapter, including any associated matters of discretion, is regulated by the NES-MA then the NES-MA applies and prevails over the rules. If the NES-MA regulations do not apply to an activity, then the plan rules apply.

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### **AQA-O1 Aquaculture in appropriate locations**

Sustainable aquaculture is provided for in appropriate locations.

#### **AQA-O2 Water quality fit for aquaculture**

Use and development maintains water quality fit for aquaculture in and around areas approved for aquaculture.

### **AQA-03 Tangata whenua aspirations for aquaculture**

Tangata whenua aspirations for aquaculture activities are provided for in accordance with tikanga Māori.

### **AQA-04 Enable existing aquaculture**

Existing aquaculture activities are enabled.

## **Policies | Ngā kaupapahere**

### **A. General**

#### **AQA-P1 Benefits of aquaculture to communities**

Recognise the benefits that existing and new aquaculture activities can provide to local communities, tangata whenua and the region, by taking the following potential benefits into account when considering aquaculture activities:

1. Local employment opportunities
2. Opportunities for enhancing Māori economic and social development, particularly in areas where alternative opportunities are limited
3. Research and training opportunities that would grow the community's knowledge base and upskill the labour force
4. The provision of improved information about the region's coastal marine area, including water quality and marine biological processes
5. Opportunities to restore, supplement or complement natural fish, shellfish or seaweed stocks.
6. The contribution to primary and secondary industries and the overall regional and national economy.

#### **AQA-P2 Commercial aquaculture in significant areas**

Commercial aquaculture is inappropriate in the following areas of the CMA unless adverse effects are avoided on the attributes and values of these areas:

1. Areas of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4
2. Sites or areas of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
3. SIBA-A that meet the criteria in policy 11(a) of the NZCPS 2010 identified in Schedule 7A
4. Nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A.

In addition any further commercial aquaculture (excluding existing marine farms) is generally inappropriate on the Eastern Coromandel, but may be appropriate in the identified possible aquaculture areas shown on the maps to this plan.

#### **AQA-P3 Avoidance of adverse effects from aquaculture activities**

Require aquaculture activities to avoid significant adverse effects, and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on:

1. Navigation safety and recreational use of the coastal marine area
2. The operation of existing marine farms
3. Sites or areas of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
4. SIBA-B that meet the criteria in policy 11(b) of the NZCPS 2010 identified in Schedule 7B
5. Marine mammals, seabirds and shorebirds and their habitats
6. Historic heritage sites identified in Schedule 5
7. Regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B and their swell corridors.

#### **AQA-P4 Consideration of aquaculture activities**

Ensure the following matters are considered when making decisions on any application for aquaculture activities:

1. The suitability of the location for the proposed type of aquaculture and species to be farmed, including consideration of the cumulative effects of other aquaculture in the area
2. The sensitivity of the receiving environment, including effects on water quality and the benthic environment, habitat and species
3. The potential adverse effects of the proposed aquaculture activities on other environmental, social, cultural and economic values, including:
  - a. the productivity and functioning of other marine farms
  - b. potential conflict with existing uses and values of the coastal marine area, including significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8, and their swell corridors, shipping routes and recreational activities
4. Measures to minimise the introduction and spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
5. The potential social, cultural and economic benefits of the proposed aquaculture activity
6. Navigation and safety issues
7. The provision of appropriate site access, and the potential effects associated with any off-site structures, facilities or activities forming part of the proposal

#### **AQA-P5 Precautionary approach for new species, farming methods or locations**

Take a precautionary approach to the introduction of new species, farming methods or locations, where the risk of effects are uncertain, unknown or little understood but potentially significantly adverse.

#### **AQA-P6 Flexibility in aquaculture to respond to climate change, innovation and best practices, farming methods or locations**

Enable aquaculture activities to respond to climate change, innovation and best practices through providing a flexible operating environment and review of consent conditions. This may include allowing new farming methods within existing consented space or enabling alternative locations for existing aquaculture activities.

#### **AQA-P7 Marae-based aquaculture**

Enable tangata whenua to undertake marae-based aquaculture in accordance with tikanga Māori.

#### **AQA-P8 Public recreational use within aquaculture areas**

Ensure public recreational use is provided for within aquaculture management areas or marine farms, except where access restrictions are necessary to:

1. Protect public health and safety; or
2. Protect the operational health and safety of farm vessels and operators; or
3. Ensure a level of security consistent with the requirements of a resource consent.

#### **AQA-P9 Introduction or spread of diseases, marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms**

Require that structures, vessels and equipment used for aquaculture, including the introduction or relocation of stock, are managed to minimise the risk of introduction or spread of diseases, marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms.

## B. New aquaculture

### **AQA-P10 Commercial aquaculture within aquaculture management areas**

Provide for commercial aquaculture within aquaculture management areas and consider through the resource consent process the appropriateness of commercial aquaculture activities in the identified possible aquaculture areas shown in the maps to this plan.

### **AQA-P11 Provide for scientific trials and research**

Provide for aquaculture activities for scientific trials and research purposes in appropriate locations for a limited duration and scale.

### **AQA-P12 Coromandel Marine Farming Area**

Provide for fed aquaculture as the primary aquaculture activity in the Coromandel Marine Farming Area. Other aquaculture activities as part of a multi-trophic aquaculture system may occur as secondary aquaculture activities provided they are compatible with the primary aquaculture activity and are located in areas unable to be used, or already used, for the primary aquaculture activity.

### **AQA-P13 New aquaculture activities to be developed in a staged manner**

Consider requiring new aquaculture activities to be developed in a staged manner, where:

1. New species are being introduced and any adverse effects are not known and are potentially significant; or
2. New technology is being proposed and the adverse effects from such technology are uncertain and potentially significant; or
3. The sensitivity of the receiving environment to aquaculture activities warrants a precautionary approach.

A staged approach will require:

1. Baseline environmental information, which may include benthic or marine mammal surveys
2. A Development Plan detailing the stages appropriate to the scale of the aquaculture activity being applied for
3. An Environmental Monitoring Plan including environmental limits and triggers against which to assess environmental change to inform decisions on the progression of further stages of the aquaculture development
4. Identification of actions to be undertaken to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects that exceed the environmental limits or triggers, through resource consent conditions or within the Environmental Monitoring Plan that forms part of any granted consent.

## C. Existing aquaculture

### **AQA-P14 Reconsenting of existing marine farms**

Provide for the reconsenting of existing marine farms not covered by the NES-MA where:

1. The scale and type of effects of the activity on the environment are lesser, the same, or similar
2. Safe recreation and maritime navigation is not compromised
3. There is an existing substantial level of economic investment
4. Best practices are implemented to avoid or minimise adverse effects on biogenic habitats, reefs and threatened marine species.

### **AQA-P15 Water quality of other uses and activities on Aquaculture Management Areas and existing marine farms**

Ensure that existing marine farms, and areas set aside for aquaculture activities, including Aquaculture Management Areas, are not compromised by other uses or by activities that degrade water quality.

## D. Allocation of space

### AQA-P16 Aquaculture settlement areas

Recognise and provide for areas identified as aquaculture settlement areas under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.

#### Advisory notes:

1. Section 12 of the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004 provides for areas to be set aside for aquaculture for iwi.
2. This policy recognises the importance of the plan in enabling iwi to achieve their aquaculture aspirations through being able to apply for resource consents within existing and future aquaculture settlement areas.
3. Only holders of authorisations issued under section 13 of that Act may apply for a resource consent for a marine farm in these areas.

### AQA-P17 Allocation of space in aquaculture management areas

Allocate unconsented space in aquaculture management areas, through a coastal tendering method in accordance with the RMA and as determined by Waikato Regional Council.

Any tender process will use criteria that includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. The extent to which the tender proposal achieves the purpose of the aquaculture management area
2. Promotion of the sustainable management of natural resources
3. Contribution to the economic and social wellbeing of the region and country
4. Environmental management practices of the applicant
5. The level of monetary contribution.

#### Advisory notes:

1. This policy also applies when a coastal permit has lapsed, or when a coastal permit has expired and no application has been lodged to replace it.
2. Authorisations are not transferable unless the authorisation is a treaty settlement asset under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.
3. No tendering is able to occur for aquaculture settlement areas within AMAs.

## E. Information requirements and monitoring

### AQA-P18 Information requirements for commercial aquaculture applications

Require applications for commercial aquaculture activities to include, but not be limited to, the following information:

1. A navigation and lighting plan and maintenance programme, with approval in principle from the Harbourmaster
2. A marine mammal and seabird interaction management plan
3. A biosecurity management plan, which includes how the operation of the farm will address the requirements of AQA-P9.
4. An Environmental Monitoring Plan.

### AQA-P19 Environmental Monitoring Plan for aquaculture activities



Ensure applications for aquaculture activities include an Environmental Monitoring Plan that addresses, as a minimum, the following potential effects and risks as relevant to the activity for which resource consent is being sought, and any relevant guidelines identified by council:

1. Effects on the benthic environment and indigenous biodiversity values, including any biogenic habitats, reefs and threatened marine species
2. Effects on water quality
3. Effects of changes in hydrodynamic conditions
4. Effects on marine mammals
5. Effects on seabirds, shorebirds and wading birds
6. Effects of genetic interactions of the proposed species to be farmed with wild populations
7. Biosecurity risks from the introduction and spread of marine pests, harmful aquatic organisms, and disease
8. Contribution to cumulative effects.

Advisory note:

1. *Waikato Regional Council guidelines for monitoring of non-fed aquaculture should be referred to in preparing an Environmental Monitoring Plan.*

#### **AQA-P20 Monitoring of aquaculture activities**

Consider the following matters when preparing an Environmental Monitoring Plan for aquaculture activities in accordance with AQA-P19:

1. Monitoring is to be proportionate to the nature, scale and intensity of the predicted effects of the aquaculture activity
2. Monitoring is to be proportionate to the nature and sensitivity of the receiving environment
3. Monitoring is to reflect the current level of scientific knowledge and certainty on the predicted effects of the aquaculture activity

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

The aquaculture activities covered by the rules of this chapter include:

- Construction, placement, alteration, removal or demolition of structures used for aquaculture activities (RMA section 12(1)(b))
- Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed, incidental to the aquaculture activities (RMA section 12(1)(c), (e), (g))
- Deposition of material in, on or under the foreshore or seabed, incidental to the aquaculture activities (RMA section 12(1)(d))
- Occupation of the common marine and coastal area by the aquaculture activities (RMA section 12(2)(a))
- Discharge of contaminants or water into water, incidental to the aquaculture activities (RMA section 15).

Advisory notes:

1. *The rules in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter do not apply to aquaculture activities, with the exception of STR-R8 Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure and STR-R9 Removal or demolition of any structure (not involving the use of explosives), which are both permitted activities.*
2. *If an aquaculture activity is also regulated by the NES-MA then the NES-MA applies and prevails over the rules, unless the activity involves reconsenting of existing marine farms in inappropriate areas in which case AQA-R8 prevails.*
3. *Discharge of contaminants includes discharges associated with harvesting.*

4. A biosecurity management plan is a requirement of all new commercial aquaculture activities (refer AQA-P18).

## A. Aquaculture activities – General rules

### Permitted activities

In accordance with section 68A of the RMA, there are no permitted activities for aquaculture activities in this plan.

### Controlled activities

#### AQA-R1 Aquaculture scientific trials and research

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b></p> <p>Aquaculture activities undertaken for scientific experiments or trials to research or investigate one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The suitability of an area for aquaculture activities</li> <li>2. Species of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed</li> <li>3. Aquaculture structures</li> <li>4. Aquaculture techniques or methods.</li> </ol> <p>which involve any of the following activities:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, or extension of a structure that is fixed in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>2. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed associated with the structure</li> <li>3. Occupation of space in the common marine and coastal area</li> <li>4. Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. Deposition of material within the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity occurs within an area of no more than two hectares</li> <li>2. The activity is not located within:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 3; or</li> <li>b. any wāhi tapu area identified in Schedule 5 or 6, or through an iwi management plan or similar document</li> <li>c. a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A; or</li> <li>d. a mooring area shown in the maps to this plan</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The activity is limited to a maximum duration of 5 years</li> <li>4. The activity will not impede safe navigation within harbour channels or be located within commercial shipping routes</li> <li>5. The activity will use species that are indigenous to New Zealand or farmed within the Waikato region</li> <li>6. The species to be used in the activity are not listed as a pest in the Regional Pest Management Plan or as an unwanted organism under the Biosecurity Act 1993</li> <li>7. The owner of the structure will provide a legally enforceable bond in favour of and to the satisfaction of Waikato Regional Council in respect of the likely costs of the removal of the structure in the event of default by the owner.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

	<p><b>Control is reserved over:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of the activity, including cumulative effects, on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. biogenic habitats, reefs and threatened marine species</li> <li>b. other indigenous biodiversity values including marine mammals, wading birds, shorebirds and seabirds</li> <li>c. water quality from any contaminant discharges</li> <li>d. coastal processes and hydrodynamics</li> <li>e. areas of very high and high natural character</li> <li>f. tangata whenua cultural values</li> <li>g. recreational use and enjoyment</li> <li>h. historic heritage values</li> <li>i. natural features and landscapes (seascapes) identified in Schedule 3</li> <li>j. regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B.</li> <li>k. adjacent land owners or occupiers</li> <li>l. other aquaculture activities</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Size and location of the coastal marine area occupied by the activity</li> <li>3. Cumulative effects with other research trials</li> <li>4. Location and size of the area for which resource consent is applied</li> <li>5. Use of underwater lighting</li> <li>6. Antifoulant management on structures – for example the use of antifoulants, cleaning methods and associated discharges</li> <li>7. Navigation and safety requirements</li> <li>8. Duration of the activity</li> <li>9. Requirements to remove all structures, organisms and other items from the research area upon expiry of consent</li> <li>10. Use of feed or hormone additives in the coastal marine area</li> <li>11. Monitoring and reporting requirements</li> <li>12. Waste management</li> <li>13. Management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>14. The nature, terms and quantum of the bond.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**Restricted discretionary activities**

**AQA-R2    Spat catching and retention (spat farming)**

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b>  The erection, placement, use of, and occupation of space by structures, ropes, buoys and lines for spat catching and retention purposes, including the maintenance, repair, replacement and removal of any structure, and any associated discharge of contaminants or deposition of material to the coastal marine area, and any disturbance of the foreshore or seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity is not located within either: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or</li> <li>b. a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

	<p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Management of any adverse effects including cumulative effects on natural character, landscape, significant surf breaks and historic values</li> <li>2. Consideration of effects on cultural values, including wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga.</li> <li>3. Management of any effects of the activity on the indigenous biodiversity values of the site, including reefs, biogenic habitat and regionally significant benthic species within the area of interest</li> <li>4. Management practices to minimise adverse interactions between marine mammals or seabirds and the marine farm, including effects of entanglements on marine mammal and seabird habitat</li> <li>5. Duration and timing of spat catching</li> <li>6. Duration of resource consent, including commencement and completion dates</li> <li>7. The layout, positioning, density, lighting and marking of structures, ropes, buoys and lines for the purpose of ensuring: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. continued reasonable public access (including recreational access) in the vicinity of the marine farm</li> <li>b. navigational safety</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>9. Waste management</li> <li>10. Monitoring and information requirements and associated plans</li> <li>11. Review of consent conditions.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>AQA-R2 covers the on-growing and holding of spat as part of the retention of spat under the definition of spat and spat catching in the plan up to the size limit of the spat species, and includes the transfer and retention of spat from outside the region.</i></li> </ol>	
--	---	--

**AQA-R3 Aquaculture activities within Colville and Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Areas or within an aquaculture settlement area**

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b></p> <p>Any aquaculture activity, including the development of any commercial aquaculture activity, within the Colville and Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Areas A and B or any aquaculture settlement area gazetted under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The applicant is the holder of an authorisation for the occupation of space in accordance with section 165J(2) of the RMA.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Management of any adverse effects including cumulative effects on natural character, landscape, significant surf breaks and historic values</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b></p>
--	---	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Consideration of effects on cultural values, including wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga</li> <li>3. Management of any effects of the activity on the indigenous biodiversity values of the site, including reefs, biogenic habitat, and regionally significant benthic species within the area of interest</li> <li>4. Management practices to minimise adverse interactions between marine mammals or seabirds and the marine farm, including effects of entanglement on marine mammal and seabird habitat</li> <li>5. Location and size of the area for which resource consent is applied</li> <li>6. Duration of resource consent, including commencement and completion dates</li> <li>7. The layout, positioning, density, lighting, and marking of marine farm structures within a marine farm for the purpose of ensuring: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. continued reasonable public access (including recreational access) in the vicinity of the marine farm</li> <li>b. navigational safety, including the provision of navigation warning devices and signs</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>9. Waste management</li> <li>10. Monitoring and information requirements and associated plans</li> <li>11. Review of consent conditions.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**AQA-R4 Changes in species or farming methods**

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> Any new aquaculture activity within an area for which a current resource consent is held for an existing commercial aquaculture activity or concurrently applied for.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity does not involve fed aquaculture</li> <li>2. The activity is for the purpose of farming new or additional species, or is for a change in farming method.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Any adverse effects from the new species to be farmed or change in farming method, including on indigenous biodiversity values, outstanding natural features and landscapes (seascapes) and natural character</li> <li>2. The management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>3. Waste management</li> <li>4. Monitoring and information requirements and associated plans</li> <li>5. Review of consent conditions.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Reconsenting of existing farms in inappropriate areas identified in AQA-P2 is considered through AQA-R8.</i></li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

**AQA-R5 Marae-based aquaculture**

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> Marae-based aquaculture in the coastal marine area.</p> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Management of any adverse effects including cumulative effects on natural character, landscape, significant surf breaks and historic values</li> <li>2. Consideration of effects on cultural values, including wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga</li> <li>3. Management of any effects of the activity on the indigenous biodiversity values of the site, including reefs, biogenic habitat and regionally significant benthic species within the area of interest</li> <li>4. Management practices to minimise adverse interactions between marine mammals or seabirds and the marine farm, including effects of entanglement on marine mammal and seabird habitat</li> <li>5. Location and size of the area for which resource consent is applied for</li> <li>6. Duration of resource consent, including commencement and completion dates</li> <li>7. The layout, positioning, density, lighting, and marking of marine farm structures within a marine farm for the purpose of ensuring: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. continued reasonable public access (including recreational access) in the vicinity of the marine farm</li> <li>b. navigational safety, including the provision of navigation warning devices and signs</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>9. Waste management</li> <li>10. Monitoring and information requirements and associated plans</li> <li>11. Review of consent conditions.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

**Discretionary activities****AQA-R6 Oyster farm structures and associated use**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any oyster farming structure in the coastal marine area, excluding the SIBA-A of the Firth of Thames RAMSAR site, for the purpose of oyster farming, including the maintenance, repair, replacement and removal of any structure, and any associated discharge of contaminants or deposition of material to the coastal marine area, and any disturbance of the foreshore or seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The area is not a significant area described in AQA-P2</li> <li>2. All structures are at least 200m from any jetties, boat ramps and other points of regular public use, including ski-lanes</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. An accessway of at least 10m is maintained between each 2 hectare block of an oyster farm, if the farmed area exceeds this size</li> <li>4. No artificial foods or antibiotics are added to the water</li> <li>5. The structures are not located in any wāhi tapu area identified in Schedule 5 or 6, or through an iwi management plan or similar document.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

**AQA-R7 Commercial aquaculture activities**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Commercial aquaculture activities not covered by another rule in this plan, which involve any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration or extension of a structure that is fixed in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>2. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed associated with the structure</li> <li>3. Occupation of space in the common marine and coastal area</li> <li>4. Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. Deposition of material within the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity does not involve fed aquaculture</li> <li>2. The area is not a significant area described in AQA-P2</li> <li>3. All structures are at least 200m from any jetties, boat ramps and other points of regular public use, including ski-lanes</li> <li>4. The structures are not located in any area identified by tangata whenua as wāhi tapu.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory notes:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>This rule allows for applications to be made for resource consent for commercial aquaculture in the west coast, western Coromandel and Hauraki Gulf, provided the activity is not prohibited under AQA-R11 or AQA-R12.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Commercial aquaculture in the Eastern Coromandel is a non-complying activity under AQA-R9, unless the application is within an aquaculture management area or possible aquaculture area.</i></li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>  (refer rule AQA-R9)</p>
--	--	--

**AQA-R8 Reconsenting of existing marine farms in inappropriate areas**

	<p><b>Activity Status: DIS</b> The re-consenting of an existing marine farm that is located within an inappropriate area for existing aquaculture activities as identified in AQA-P2.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

## Non-complying activities

### AQA-R9 New commercial aquaculture on the Eastern Coromandel (outside of aquaculture management areas or Seachange sites)

	<p><b>Activity Status: NC</b> New commercial aquaculture activities on the Eastern Coromandel (east of Port Jackson) that involve any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration or extension of a structure that is fixed in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>2. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed associated with the structure</li> <li>3. Occupation of space in the common marine and coastal area</li> <li>4. Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. Deposition of material within the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The area is not an aquaculture management area or possible aquaculture area identified in the maps to this plan.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory notes:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Consideration of commercial aquaculture activities in possible aquaculture is through AQA-R7.</i></li> <li>2. <i>For the avoidance of doubt, any commercial aquaculture activity within a significant area identified in AQA-P2 is a non-complying activity under AQA-R10.</i></li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b>
--	---	--

### AQA-R10 New commercial aquaculture in significant areas where aquaculture is inappropriate

	<p><b>Activity Status: NC</b> New commercial aquaculture activities within any significant area listed in AQA-P2 that involve any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, or extension of a structure that is fixed in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>2. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed associated with the structure</li> <li>3. Occupation of space in the common marine and coastal area</li> <li>4. Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. Deposition of material within the coastal marine area.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b>
--	--	--

## Prohibited activities

### AQA-R11 Prohibited discharges of feed, medicines and therapeutic compounds associated with aquaculture activities

	<p><b>Activity Status: PR</b> The discharge of any feed, medicine or therapeutic compound into the CMA associated with aquaculture activities that is not provided for by AQA-R15 and AQA-R16.</p>
--	--



**AQA-R12 Aquaculture activities in marine reserves, navigable river mouths and mooring areas**

	<p><b>Activity Status: PR</b> Any aquaculture activity within:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A gazetted marine reserve</li> <li>2. Navigable river mouth</li> <li>3. Any mooring area shown on the maps to this plan.</li> </ol>
--	--

**B. Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Areas**

**Controlled activities**

**AQA-R13 Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Areas A and B**

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> Any aquaculture activity in Wilson Bay Areas A and B involving the erection, placement, use of or occupation of space by structures and associated discharges to water and air, and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity does not involve fed aquaculture</li> <li>2. Any contiguous farming area is a maximum size of 8 hectares.</li> <li>3. An accessway of 75m width is provided for between each adjacent marine farm</li> <li>4. No artificial foods or antibiotics are added to the water</li> <li>5. The owner of the structure provides a legally enforceable bond in favour of, and to the satisfaction of, Waikato Regional Council in respect of the likely costs of the removal of the structure in the event of default by the owner</li> <li>6. The farmed hectares of the proposal in combination with all existing consented aquaculture will not exceed:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. 470 ha in area A; or</li> <li>b. 520 ha in Area B</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. No marine farm structure is located in the accessway between Area A and B of the Wilson Bay Area.</li> </ol> <p><b>Control is reserved over:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Monitoring and reporting requirements</li> <li>2. Duration of the activity, including commencement and completion dates</li> <li>3. Landing, loading and unloading locations</li> <li>4. Benthic effects</li> <li>5. The location and layout of farm blocks including longline density</li> <li>6. Navigation and safety requirements</li> <li>7. Management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>8. Management of effects on indigenous biodiversity values, including on marine mammals and seabirds</li> <li>9. Waste management</li> <li>10. Structural integrity</li> <li>11. Consent condition review</li> <li>12. Best practice management</li> <li>13. Noise</li> <li>14. Removal of unused structures</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

	<p>15. Bond or assurance.</p> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <p>1. AQA-R13 covers the re-consenting of existing aquaculture activities in Wilson Bay, not otherwise provided for through NES-MA.</p>	
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### AQA-R14 Other aquaculture activities in Wilson Bay Areas A and B

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The erection, placement, use of or occupation of space by any structure (excluding conventional longlines) and associated discharges to water and air, and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed, in Wilson Bay Areas A or B, for aquaculture activities, provided no fed aquaculture is to occur, and no medicinal compounds are added to the water.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

### AQA-R15 Aquaculture activities in Wilson Bay Zone Area C

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The erection, placement, use of or occupation of space by any structure and associated discharges to water and air (excluding the discharge of feed and medicinal or therapeutic compounds), and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed, in Area C of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, for the purpose of aquaculture activities.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <p>1. The applicant is the holder of an authorisation for the occupation of space in accordance with section 165J(2) of the RMA, allocated by Waikato Regional Council.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b></p>
--	---	---

### AQA-R16 Discharge of feed, medicines and therapeutic compounds associated with aquaculture in Wilson Bay Area C

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The discharge of any feed, medicine or therapeutic compound into the CMA associated with aquaculture activities in Wilson Bay Area C.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The total net discharge of nitrogen authorised by all consents (including any current application if granted) does not exceed 300 tonnes per year</li> <li>2. The applicant is the holder of an authorisation for the occupation of space within Wilson Bay Area C in accordance with section 165J(2) of the RMA, allocated by Waikato Regional Council</li> <li>3. Fed aquaculture will only be located at sites where there is a minimum water depth of 20m (relative to chart datum) at all parts of the site</li> <li>4. A baseline survey and proposed environmental monitoring plan is submitted at the time of application for resource consent that addresses the matters set out in AQA-P19.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

## C. Aquaculture activities within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area

### Restricted discretionary activities

#### AQA-R17 Discharge of feed, medicines and therapeutic compounds associated with aquaculture within Coromandel Marine Farming Area

	<p><b>Activity Status: RDA</b></p> <p>The discharge of any feed, medicine or therapeutic compound into the coastal marine area associated with aquaculture activities located within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area, and any associated deposition of fish waste.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resource consent is held (or applied for) enabling aquaculture activities for the same marine farming site</li> <li>2. The amount of net nitrogen and feed proposed to be discharged under the consent does not exceed the amount that is equivalent to the proportion of the total allowable area that the proposed farm will occupy</li> <li>3. The cumulative total net nitrogen discharge within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area will not exceed 800 tonnes per year and the cumulative total feed discharge will not exceed 13,600 tonnes per year.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The staging of development</li> <li>2. The type, volume, rate and frequency of discharges of feed, medicinal or therapeutic compounds</li> <li>3. The extent to which the discharge is likely to cause the production of conspicuous oil, grease films, scums, foams or floatable suspended materials</li> <li>4. The ecological toxicity, persistence and bio-accumulation potential of any discharged compound or contaminants derived from them (individually and in combination) to any species potentially exposed</li> <li>5. The effect of the discharge, and any contaminants derived from it, and any associated fish wastes (either by itself or in combination with other discharges) on aquatic life, kaimoana or on other marine farms</li> <li>6. The effect of the discharge, and any contaminants derived from it, and any associated fish wastes on sediment quality and water quality, including colour, clarity and odour</li> <li>7. The solubility of any discharged compound and contaminants derived from it.</li> <li>8. The extent to which adverse effects on water and sediment quality will impact on other activities, in particular aquaculture activities</li> <li>9. Demonstration that the volume and level of discharge has been minimised to the greatest extent possible</li> <li>10. Mechanisms for modifying or changing the medicines or therapeutics to be used within the farm</li> <li>11. The adequacy of the proposed disease management plan</li> <li>12. The proposed adaptive management regime</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	--	---

	<p>13. The proposed environmental monitoring programme in relation to its ability to address the conditions of this rule</p> <p>14. The consistency of the proposed activity with the objectives and policies of this plan</p> <p>15. The imposition of a condition relating to the review of any or all conditions.</p>	
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### AQA-R18 Marine farm structures within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any structure within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area and associated discharges to water and air (excluding the discharge of feed and medicinal or therapeutic compounds), and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed for the purpose of aquaculture.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The applicant is the holder of an authorisation for the occupation of space in accordance with section 165J(2) of the RMA, allocated by Waikato Regional Council, or a current authorisation granted as a settlement asset to apply for a coastal permit to occupy space within the area</li> <li>2. The application is consistent with the applicant’s tender as accepted by the Waikato Regional Council or any agreement negotiated under section 165X of the RMA, or a current authorisation granted as a settlement asset and approved by the Waikato Regional Council</li> <li>3. The application is not for the farming of non-fed shellfish except as part of a multi-trophic farming system including fed aquaculture as the primary use of the space</li> <li>4. Any secondary use of the space for non-fed shellfish is in accordance with AQA-P12, for which the primary use is applied for</li> <li>5. All components of the structure and the vessels and equipment used for placement are free of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms at the time of placement</li> <li>6. For any staged development being proposed or as part of an adaptive management approach, the following occurs: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The first stage of each resource consent is not exercised until a baseline survey is completed</li> <li>b. Development to the next stage is approved by the Waikato Regional Council following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. monitoring of a minimum of two production cycles at full development of that stage is complete</li> <li>ii. analysis of monitoring data against predetermined thresholds</li> <li>iii. confirmation there are no significant adverse effects occurring, including cumulative effects</li> <li>iv. assessment of compliance against resource consent conditions held for the aquaculture activity.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b></p>
--	---	---

**AQA-R19 Aquaculture structures associated with the Coromandel Marine Farming Area located outside the Coromandel Marine Farming Area**

	<p><b>Activity Status: DIS</b></p> <p>The erection, placement, use of, and occupation by subsurface anchor lines and seabed anchor structures, and any associated seabed disturbance, that are located outside of the Coromandel Marine Farming Zone but are for the purposes of securing a surface structure located wholly within the Coromandel Marine Farming Zone for aquaculture activities.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The applicant will undertake an ecological investigation of the proposed disturbance locations by a suitably qualified marine ecologist and will lodge the information with the Waikato Regional Council at the time of application for resource consent.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	--	---

## 9 BIO – Biosecurity | Ārai taiao

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Marine based activities have the potential to introduce and exacerbate the spread of marine pests, including harmful aquatic organisms. This can have irreversible effects on the coastal marine area, including biodiversity and economic losses, and the alteration of ecosystem function. Movement of vessels and equipment and aquaculture activities can facilitate the introduction of invasive species to new areas and accelerate rates of spread. The risk from these activities can be managed, or partly managed, through the plan.

Policy 12 of the NZCPS requires regional councils to provide for the control of activities that could have adverse effects on the coastal environment by causing harmful aquatic organisms to be released or otherwise spread. Resource consent conditions can also help to prevent or mitigate these risks from activities.

Activities that may present a biosecurity risk to the CMA include:

1. The introduction of structures contaminated with marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
2. Discharge or disposal of organic material from dredging, or from vessels and structures, whether during maintenance, cleaning or otherwise and whether in the coastal marine area or on land
3. Provision and ongoing maintenance of moorings, marina berths, jetties, and wharves
4. Establishment and relocation of equipment and stock required for, or associated with, aquaculture.
5. The discharge of water e.g. ballast, bilge, and well-boat water, as well as wastewater/effluent from aquaculture processing facilities.
6. The deposition of substances that may have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed and introducing or planting exotic or introduced plants.

Sections 12, 15 and 15B of the RMA are also relevant to the activities set out in this chapter, and cover restrictions on the use of the coastal marine area (e.g. deposition of substances resulting from in-water cleaning of biofouling on the foreshore and seabed) and discharges of contaminants and harmful substances to the marine environment for the control of marine pests/harmful aquatic organisms. These sections of the RMA prohibit certain activities unless specifically stated in a national environmental standard, regulation, a rule in this plan or a resource consent.

The control of marine pests (including the use of substances and any associated discharge technique or method) must also be undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Biosecurity Act 1993, and the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### **BIO-01 Marine ecosystems and biosecurity**

The connectivity, health, and ecological integrity of marine ecosystems are protected from marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms.

### **BIO-P1 Introduction and spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms**

Minimise the risk of introduction and spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms to the coastal marine area from activities, including (but not limited to):

1. Maintenance (including hull cleaning) of vessels and structures
2. Navigation, mooring or anchoring of a vessel with a marine pest on the vessel hull or niche areas
3. Introduction or placement of a structure or installation
4. Movement of contaminated equipment or machinery, including that associated with aquaculture
5. Movement of material potentially contaminated with marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms
6. Relocation of stock in the case of aquaculture.

### **BIO-P2 Removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms**

Provide for the removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from structures, vessels and from the coastal marine area, where:

1. After undertaking an assessment of alternative options, the removal or control method presents the best option to eliminate, control or manage the target organism, and
2. Adverse effects resulting from the activity are adequately managed.

### **BIO-P3 Biosecurity Risk Management Plan**

Ensure applications to undertake in-water cleaning of vessels or moveable structures, or to remove or control marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from fixed structures or from the coastal marine area, provide a biosecurity risk management plan that includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. If removing or controlling marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms in the coastal marine area, the location and size of the area(s) where the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) are to be removed or controlled; or
2. If removing or controlling marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms from a fixed structure, the location of the structure and size of the area on the structure where the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) are to be removed or controlled
3. Consideration of the lifecycle of the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) to be removed or controlled, including how and when the organism(s) reproduces
4. The proposed timing and frequency of the treatment(s) to remove or control organism(s) identified in clause 3 to minimise the risk of reproduction.
5. Consideration of the risk of marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) spreading as a result of:
  - a. in-water cleaning and disposal of macrofouling
  - b. treatment methods to remove or control marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms;
  - c. methods to dispose of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms
6. Procedures to be put in place to minimise the risk outlined in clause 5 above
7. If removing biofouling from anti-fouled vessels or moveable structures, and the integrity of the anti-foul coating could be compromised by the in-water cleaning method, proposed measures to minimise contamination risk to the coastal marine area resulting from discharge of antifouling particles during cleaning.

### **BIO-P4 Biocontrol agents to manage marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms**

Avoid the introduction of biocontrol agents into the coastal marine area unless:

1. Release of the biocontrol agent(s) is for the purposes of managing marine pests and/or harmful aquatic organisms

2. The biocontrol agent(s) to be released are either:
  - a. approved by the Environmental Protection Authority for use against the target organism in the coastal marine area; or
  - b. indigenous to New Zealand.
3. Adverse non-target effects resulting from the release of the biocontrol agent(s), including the risk of pathogen and disease transfer, are remedied as far as practicable, and residual effects are adequately mitigated.

**BIO-P5 Scientific trials for marine biosecurity purposes**

Allow experimental scientific trials in the coastal marine area for biosecurity purposes only where significant adverse effects on non-target organisms and the environment can be avoided, and residual adverse effects remedied or mitigated.

**Rules | Ngā ture**

Advisory notes:

1. The rules for this chapter are set out in the following sections:
  - a. In-water cleaning of vessels and moveable structures
  - b. Biosecurity Operations – local authorities and agencies
  - c. Removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from fixed structures and the coastal marine area
  - d. Scientific trials and biocontrol for biosecurity purposes
  - e. Prohibited introduction of marine pests
2. See definitions section of the plan for an explanation of Level of Fouling (LOF).
3. The rules in the BIO - Biosecurity chapter do not apply to moorings. See the MO - Moorings chapter for biosecurity requirements relating to mooring placement and maintenance.
4. The rules in the BIO - Biosecurity chapter also apply to:
  - a. aquaculture activities
  - b. removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from moveable and fixed structures
  - c. cleaning of moveable and fixed structures.

**A. In-water cleaning of vessels and moveable structures**

**Permitted activities**

**BIO-R1 Discharge of contaminants from in-water cleaning of vessels and moveable structures with minimal fouling**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b></p> <p>The discharge of contaminants, goose barnacles, and biofouling less than or equal to level 2 on the Level of Fouling (LOF) Scale resulting from cleaning the part of a vessel hull (including niche areas), or moveable structure that is normally below the water surface into water in the coastal marine area and any associated deposition on the foreshore or seabed</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In-water cleaning of vessels is to be undertaken, this is within a mooring area as identified in Schedule 2, and the vessel is secured to a mooring structure</li> <li>2. If the vessel hull or moveable structure has an anti-foul coating, the coating has not exceeded its planned service life as specified</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved:</p> <p><b>DIS</b> – If BIO R1(1)-(3) cannot be met (see BIO R2)</p>
--	---	---



	<p>by the manufacturer, and the cleaning method is non-abrasive and undertaken in accordance with recommendations obtained from the coating manufacturer</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. All macrofouling dislodged during cleaning (other than goose barnacles) is captured and disposed of at a location authorised to take such material, unless otherwise directed as part of a declared response to an unwanted organism</li> <li>4. If any marine pest is found, then: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. all cleaning must cease, and</li> <li>b. the Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries must be notified immediately, and</li> <li>c. cleaning must not resume until notification to do so is obtained from the Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to BIO-R4 where in-water cleaning is to be undertaken by or on behalf of a local authority, Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation or Land Information New Zealand as part of a biosecurity operation.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. In-water cleaning of vessel hull and niche areas or moveable structures in the coastal marine area (section 12(3))</li> <li>3. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to the activity (section 15(1))</li> <li>4. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### **BIO-R2 In-water cleaning of biofouling from vessels and moveable structures where rule BIO-R1 cannot be met**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The discharge of contaminants and biofouling from the cleaning of the part of a vessel hull (including niche areas), or moveable structure that is normally below the water surface into water in the coastal marine area and any associated deposition on the foreshore or seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Unless carried out by a local authority or agency listed in BIO-R4(1), The activity is not undertaken: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. within an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4; or</li> <li>b. within 100m of an area of a SIBA-A as identified in Schedule 7A</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. In-water cleaning of vessels is undertaken outside of a mooring area identified in Schedule 2; and/or</li> <li>3. The anti-foul coating on the vessel hull or moveable structure</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved:</p> <p><b>NC</b> - If BIO-R2(1)(a) or (b) cannot be met (see BIO-R3)</p>
--	--	--

	<p>has exceeded its planned service life; and/or</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. The in-water cleaning method to be employed on a vessel hull or moveable structure with an anti-foul coating does not meet the definition of non-abrasive cleaning method; and/or</li> <li>5. Macrofouling dislodged during cleaning (other than goose barnacles) cannot be captured and disposed of at a location authorised to take such material; and/or</li> <li>6. Biofouling coverage is greater than Level 2 on the Level of Fouling (LOF) Scale and cleaning has not been authorised under the Biosecurity Act 1993</li> <li>7. If any marine pest is found, then: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. all cleaning must cease</li> <li>b. the Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries must be notified immediately</li> <li>c. cleaning must not resume until notification to do so is obtained from the Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed or introduction of any marine pest or harmful aquatic organism in, or under the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. In-water cleaning of vessel hull and niche areas, and moveable structures in the coastal marine area (section 12(3))</li> <li>3. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to the activity (section 15(1))</li> <li>4. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

## Non-complying activities

### **BIO-R3 In-water cleaning of biofouling from vessels and moveable structures in areas of Outstanding Natural Character and Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas-A**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b></p> <p>The discharge of contaminants and biofouling from the cleaning of the part of a vessel hull (including niche areas) or moveable structure that is normally below the water surface into water in the coastal marine area and any associated deposition on the foreshore or seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity occurs within: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4; or</li> <li>b. within 100m of a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. If any marine pest is found, then: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. all cleaning must cease, and</li> <li>b. the Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries must be notified immediately, and</li> <li>c. cleaning must not resume until notification to do so is</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	--	--

	<p>obtained from the Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries.</p> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed or introduction of any marine pest or harmful aquatic organism in, or under the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. In-water cleaning of vessel hull and niche areas, and moveable structures in the coastal marine area (section 12(3))</li> <li>3. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to the activity (section 15(1))</li> <li>4. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

## B. Biosecurity operations – Local authorities and agencies

### Permitted activities

#### BIO-R4 Biosecurity operations - permitted removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from structures, vessels, and from the coastal marine area

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b></p> <p>The discharge of contaminants and the use of physical treatments for the removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from moveable and fixed structures, vessel hulls (including niche areas), and from the coastal marine area as part of biosecurity operations.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removal or control is undertaken by or on behalf of a local authority, Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation or Land Information New Zealand: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the removal or control method does not exacerbate the spread of the target marine pest or harmful aquatic organism or any other marine pest or harmful aquatic organism;</li> <li>b. the removal or control method does not require the release of a biocontrol agent;</li> <li>c. any hazardous substances required to be used have been approved for use in marine environments, or are exempt under an RMA Regulation;</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Where any disturbance of the foreshore or seabed is required to remove a marine pest or harmful aquatic organism, the following standards are met: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. if the works are on the foreshore, works will be carried out during low tide or other times when the activity site is not covered by water.</li> <li>b. no works will be carried out in tidal reaches of rivers and streams between 1 March and 31 May.</li> <li>c. the activity will not prevent the feeding, spawning and migratory patterns of indigenous fauna, including bird roosting, nesting and feeding, and native fish migrations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved:</p> <p><b>PR</b> – If BIO-R4(1)(a) cannot be met (see BIO R11)</p> <p><b>NC</b> – If BIO-R4(1)(b) cannot be met (see BIO R10)</p> <p><b>PR</b> – If BIO-R4(1)(c) cannot be met (see BIO R8)</p> <p><b>RD</b> – If BIO-R4(2) cannot be met (see BIO R5)</p>
--	--	--

	<p>d. the activity will not alter the natural or existing course of a river or stream.</p> <p>e. no refuelling activities or fuel storage are carried out within the coastal marine area, on the foreshore or within 20m landward of MHWS. Methods are to be employed to avoid or minimise any fuel spillage, including the provision of appropriate security and containment measures, where necessary.</p> <p><i>Advisory notes:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>For the avoidance of doubt this rule applies to in-water cleaning of biofouling from vessels and moveable structures, when undertaken by a local authority, Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation or Land Information New Zealand. For all other in-water cleaning, BIO-R1 – R3 apply.</i></li> <li>2. <i>For the avoidance of doubt, this rule also covers removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms in Outstanding Natural Character and Significant Indigenous Biodiversity areas when undertaken by those authorised in BIO-R4-(1).</i></li> <li>3. <i>Hazardous substances must be:</i> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>approved for the intended use under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; or</i></li> <li>b. <i>otherwise authorised by the Environmental Protection Authority for use in the coastal marine area; or</i></li> <li>c. <i>be exempt under an RMA regulation; and</i></li> <li>d. <i>all other conditions set for its use must be complied with.</i></li> </ol> </li> <li>4. <i>Notification of the activity is to be received by Waikato Regional Council prior to the activity commencing.</i></li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. Disturbance of foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>3. Deposition of substances on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>4. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to the activity (section 15(1))</li> <li>5. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

## C. Removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from fixed structures and the coastal marine area

### Restricted discretionary activities

- BIO-R5** Use of physical treatments or the discharge of contaminants for removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from fixed structures, or from the coastal marine area

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> The use of physical treatments, or the discharge of contaminants, for the removal or control of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms from fixed structures or from the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity is undertaken by person(s) other than those listed in BIO-R4(1); or</li> <li>2. The activity does not comply with BIO-R4(2); and</li> <li>3. The area where the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) to be removed or controlled is not an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4 or SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A; and</li> <li>4. The activity does not require refuelling or fuel storage to be carried out in the coastal marine area, on the foreshore or within 20m landward of MHWS.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Consideration of the Biosecurity Risk Management Plan prepared in accordance with BIO-P3 and how these matters are to be addressed</li> <li>2. Effects of treatment method(s) on the viability of the target marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) and the potential for the treatment method to trigger spawning, regeneration, or re-establishment</li> <li>3. Effects of the treatment method(s) and any associated activities on the environment (including non-target effects), and on the maintenance of connectivity, health, and ecological integrity of ecosystems</li> <li>4. Effects on the feeding, spawning and migratory patterns of indigenous fauna, including bird roosting, nesting and feeding, and native fish migrations</li> <li>5. Consideration of any benefits associated with the removal or control of the marine pest or harmful aquatic organism from the target area.</li> <li>6. Effects on tangata whenua and their taonga and any sites of areas of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6</li> <li>7. Effects on historic heritage sites, structures, shipwrecks or their values identified in Schedule 5</li> <li>8. Proposed monitoring requirements</li> <li>9. Any remediation work that may be required following treatment to remove or control marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Hazardous substances must be:</i> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. approved for the intended use under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; or</li> <li>b. otherwise authorised by the Environmental Protection Authority for use in the coastal marine area; or</li> <li>c. be exempt under an RMA regulation; and</li> <li>d. all other conditions set for its use must be complied with.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved:</p> <p><b>DIS</b> – If BIO-R5(3) cannot be met (see BIO-R6).</p> <p><b>PR</b> – If the marine pest or harmful aquatic organism spreads via fragmentation and mechanical removal is proposed (see BIO-R7).</p>
--	---	---

	<p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. Disturbance of foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>3. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to the activity (section 15(1))</li> <li>4. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

## Discretionary activities

### **BIO-R6 Removal or control of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms from Outstanding Natural Character or Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas-A**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The removal or control of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms from an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4 or SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal or control does not comply with BIO-R5(3)</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Hazardous substances must be:</i> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>approved for the intended use under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; or</i></li> <li>b. <i>otherwise authorised by the Environmental Protection Authority for use in the coastal marine area; or</i></li> <li>c. <i>be exempt under an RMA regulation; and</i></li> <li>d. <i>all other conditions set for its use must be complied with.</i></li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. Disturbance of foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity (section 12(1))</li> <li>3. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to the activity (section 15(1))</li> <li>4. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	--	--

## Prohibited activities

### **BIO-R7 Mechanical removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms spread via fragmentation**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b></p> <p>The disturbance of the coastal marine area resulting from mechanical removal methods to eradicate or control marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms that spread via fragmentation.</p>
--	---

**BIO-R8 Hazardous substances not approved for use in marine environments.**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b></p> <p>The discharge of contaminants (hazardous substances) to the coastal marine area that have not been approved for the intended use under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, or otherwise authorised for use in the coastal marine area by the Environmental Protection Authority, or exempted from section 15 of the RMA under an RMA Regulation.</p>
--	--

**D. Scientific trials and biocontrol for biosecurity purposes****Discretionary activities****BIO-R9 Scientific trials for biosecurity purposes**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>Scientific trials for biosecurity purposes in the coastal marine area to eradicate or control marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms.</p> <p><i>Advisory note:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Hazardous substances must be:</i> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>approved for the intended use under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; or</i></li> <li>b. <i>otherwise authorised by the Environmental Protection Authority for use in the coastal marine area; or</i></li> <li>c. <i>be exempt under an RMA regulation; and</i></li> <li>d. <i>all other conditions set for its use must be complied with.</i></li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the scientific trial (section 12(1))</li> <li>2. Disturbance of foreshore or seabed incidental to the scientific trial (section 12(1))</li> <li>3. Deposition of substances on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the scientific trial (section 12(1))</li> <li>4. Activities in, on, under or over the coastal marine area associated with the establishment and operation of the scientific trial (section 12(3)(a))</li> <li>5. Activities in relation to any natural or physical resources (plants and animals, whether native to New Zealand or introduced) contained within the coastal marine area associated with the scientific trial (section 12(3)(b))</li> <li>6. Discharge of contaminants into water incidental to activities required as part of the scientific trial (section 15(1))</li> <li>7. Discharge of a harmful substance from a ship or offshore installation into water incidental to the activity (section 15B(1)).</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

**Non-complying activities****BIO-R10 Release of biocontrol agents for the management of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> The introduction and release of biocontrol agents into the coastal marine area for the eradication or control of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms.</p> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Activities in, on, under or over the coastal marine area associated with the introduction and release of biocontrol agents (section 12(3)(a))</li> <li>2. Activities in relation to any natural or physical resources (plants and animals, whether native to New Zealand or introduced) contained within the coastal marine area associated with the release of biocontrol agents (section 12(3)(b)).</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

## E. Prohibited Introduction of marine pests

### Prohibited activities

#### BIO-R11 Introduction and/or discharge of marine pests, spartina, and saltwater paspalum into the coastal marine area

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The introduction and/or discharge, including spreading, of:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A marine pest</li> <li>2. Spartina</li> <li>3. Saltwater paspalum</li> </ol> <p>into the coastal marine area not covered by any other rule in this chapter.</p> <p><u>Unless:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The discharge of a marine pest is from a vessel hull (including niche areas) and the vessel is travelling directly to a cleaning facility; or</li> <li>2. The vessel has an exemption issued under section 52 of the Biosecurity Act 1993.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---



# 10 DD – Disturbances and deposition | Whakararutanga me ngā waipara

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Disturbances in the coastal marine area can include activities such as dredging, the extraction of minerals, the use of vehicles, stock access, reclamation of the foreshore and seabed, and the deposition of natural material.

Under section 12 RMA, no person may destroy, damage or disturb the foreshore or seabed in a manner that is likely to have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed, or on plants and animals or their habitats, unless expressly allowed by a rule in the plan or a resource consent. The RMA places a similar restriction on reclamation and drainage of the foreshore and seabed, and the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material.

Activities that disturb the foreshore or seabed will normally require resource consent under the rules in this chapter, unless permitted as part of restoration or enhancement work or for certain emergency access and recreational uses. Activities that enhance amenity values, provide for public safety or well-being, and improve public access, may also disturb the foreshore and seabed.

The rules in this chapter address:

- A. General disturbance activities
- B. Disturbance and removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material
- C. Flood protection and maintenance dredging activities
- D. Deposition or disposal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material
- E. Reclamation and removal of existing reclamations.

This chapter also addresses marina activities in relation to construction and dredging of navigation channels and marina areas and the removal of dredged material.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### **DD-01 Protect coastal processes and ecosystems from disturbance, dredging or removal of natural material**

Natural coastal processes and the functioning of coastal ecosystems are protected from the adverse effects of inappropriate disturbances, dredging or the removal of sand, shell and other natural material.

### **DD-02 Manage adverse effects from deposition or disposal of material**

Adverse effects on natural coastal processes, water quality and ecology, resulting from deposition of material in the coastal marine area, are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

### **DD-03 Avoid inappropriate reclamation and associated drainage**

Inappropriate reclamation and associated drainage of the foreshore or seabed is avoided.

### **DD-P1 Recognition of dredging, disturbance and deposition activities**

Recognise that dredging, disturbance and deposition activities may be necessary or beneficial:

1. For the continued operation of existing infrastructure; or
2. For the establishment, operation, maintenance, upgrade or development of regionally significant infrastructure; or
3. To maintain or improve access and navigational safety within the coastal marine area; or
4. For beach re-nourishment or replenishment activities; or
5. To protect, restore or rehabilitate ecological or recreational values; or
6. For the restoration or enhancement of natural systems and features that contribute towards reducing the impacts of coastal hazards.

### **DD-P2 Recognising the appropriateness of minor disturbance activities**

Recognise that minor disturbance activities, including the use of vehicles, that have minor or temporary effects, and have a functional need to occur in the coastal marine area, can be appropriate.

### **DD-P3 Restricting the use of vehicles on the foreshore and seabed**

Restrict the use of vehicles on the foreshore and seabed to those that are necessary for appropriate purposes and have a functional need to use such areas.

### **DD-P4 Temporary disturbance and deposition by New Zealand Defence Force activities**

Allow for disturbance and deposition in the coastal marine area associated with temporary activities undertaken by the New Zealand Defence Force, except in any:

1. Outstanding natural character area identified in Schedule 4
2. Site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
3. SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A
4. Nationally significant surf break identified in Schedule 8A.

### **DD-P5 Activities disturbing the foreshore and seabed**

Ensure that activities that involve disturbance or deposition in the coastal marine area:

1. Avoid significant adverse effects, and remedy or mitigate other adverse effects, on:
  - a. the feeding, spawning and migratory patterns of indigenous fauna, including bird roosting, nesting and feeding, and native fish migrations
  - b. indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are particularly vulnerable to modification, including: estuaries, lagoons, coastal wetlands, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, seagrass and saltmarsh
  - c. habitats of indigenous species that are important for recreational, commercial, cultural or traditional purposes, including mahinga kai
2. Avoid significant adverse effects from any disturbance that results in the release or mobilisation of contaminants
3. Avoid causing long-term coastal erosion or damage to any authorised structure within the coastal marine area or on adjacent land
4. Reinstate the foreshore or seabed in keeping with the natural character and visual amenity of the area where appropriate.

**DD-P6 Providing for maintenance of drainage schemes, navigation channels, or river and flood protection works**

Allow for the maintenance of drainage schemes, navigation channels, or river and flood protection works in the coastal marine area, provided any adverse effects from the disturbance or removal of sediment and other natural material are sufficiently avoided, remedied or mitigated.

**DD-P7 Enable soft protection measures to address coastal hazard risk**

Enable soft protection measures where appropriate, to protect areas from coastal hazard risk or to maintain amenity and community values.

**DD-P8 Appropriate circumstances for reclamation**

Consider allowing reclamation where all of the following criteria are met:

1. There are no practicable alternative ways of providing for the activity, including locating it on land outside the coastal marine area
2. There is a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area
3. The reclamation will provide significant regional or national benefit.

**DD-P9 Reclamation form and design**

In circumstances where reclamation is considered appropriate, ensure reclamation form and design has particular regard to:

1. The potential effects on the site of climate change, including sea level rise, over no less than 100 years
2. The shape and extent to which the reclamation is visually and aesthetically compatible with the adjoining coast
3. Materials used in the reclamation or retaining walls (bunds) and any contaminants in those materials that will, or have potential to, adversely affect water quality, aquatic ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity
4. The provision for public access to and along the coastal marine area, unless a restriction is required consistent with PA-P3
5. How adverse effects are proposed to be remedied or mitigated
6. Whether the reclamation will affect cultural landscapes and sites of significance to tangata whenua
7. The ability to avoid consequential erosion and accretion, and other natural hazards
8. The extent to which the reclamation provides for the efficient operation of infrastructure.

**DD-P10 Removal of redundant reclaimed land**

Removal of redundant reclaimed land is encouraged where it will restore natural character and resources of the coastal marine area and provide improved public access or greater open water space.

**DD-P11 Prospecting, exploration or mining in the coastal marine area**

Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed for prospecting, exploration or mining is inappropriate. Resource consent will not be granted to remove sand, shell, shingle or any other natural material within any outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4 or SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.

### Advisory notes:

1. *The rules for this chapter are set out in the following sections:*
  - a. *general disturbance activities*
  - b. *disturbance and removal*
  - c. *flood protection and maintenance dredging*
  - d. *deposition or disposal of material*
  - e. *reclamation and removal of existing reclamations*
2. *In accordance with section 4(2)(a) of the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998 the dumping of dredge material in the coastal marine area from any ship, aircraft or offshore installation is deemed to be a discretionary activity.*
3. *Fishing activities are specifically excluded from the requirements under section 12(1)(c) of the RMA, which states that “No person may, in the coastal marine area disturb any foreshore or seabed (including by excavating, drilling, or tunnelling) in a manner that has or is likely to have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed (other than for the purpose of lawfully harvesting any plant or animal).”*

### **General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter**

The following standards and terms apply to **DD-R1, DD-R2, DD-R3, DD-R4, DD-14, DD-R15, DD-R16, DD-R17, DD-R20** and **DD-R21** for which compliance is required for these permitted or controlled activities:

1. There is no disturbance of, or damage to:
  - a. any historic heritage site identified in Schedule 5, except where Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga approval has been obtained
  - b. any site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
  - c. any habitat within a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened species
2. The activity does not take place in, or involve disturbance, damage or destruction in areas of shellfish beds, areas vegetated by mangroves, seagrass or saltmarsh, or bird foraging areas during nesting season
3. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use, and an emergency spill plan is in place to address any unforeseen release of contaminants from equipment being used for the activity
4. The extent of any disturbance is limited to the minimum required to undertake the activity
5. Public access to and along the coastal marine area is maintained and not restricted except where necessary to protect health and safety
6. There is no damage to public infrastructure or public facilities, such as roads, reserves, recreational facilities, stopbanks, and flood gates
7. Sand, shell, shingle or natural material is not removed or moved to any alternative location unless stated otherwise in the relevant rule
8. The activity does not damage any river protection works or any existing structure except where the activity is to remove or demolish a structure
9. Any material to be deposited does not contain any contaminants, marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms
10. The activity complies with all relevant provisions of the NOISE – Noise and vibration chapter of this plan
11. All equipment, material or rubbish is removed at the completion of the activity
12. Any disturbance is remedied within 48 hours after completion of the activity
13. Any change in water quality is not detectable within 24 hours after completion of the activity.

## A. General disturbance activities

### Permitted activities

#### DD-R1 Recreational use or temporary events on the foreshore

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Recreational use or Temporary events held in the coastal marine area that may disturb the foreshore or seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

#### DD-R2 Use of a motor vehicle on the foreshore or seabed

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The use of a motor vehicle on the foreshore or seabed for any of the following purposes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Launching and retrieving a vessel at a boat launching site</li> <li>Surf life saving (including the use of an all-terrain vehicle)</li> <li>Department of Conservation activities in accordance with statutory functions</li> <li>Law enforcement activities undertaken by the Ministry for Primary Industries</li> <li>Dune management activities</li> <li>Servicing of public facilities or infrastructure undertaken by local authorities where there is no damage or disturbance of coastal vegetation and the activity is outside of areas identified as SIBA-A in Schedule 7A</li> <li>Access to private property if there is no other practicable means of access</li> <li>Access for people with disabilities</li> <li>Defence purposes undertaken in accordance with the Defence Act 1990</li> <li>New Zealand Police, Fire and Emergency New Zealand, Coastguard and Ambulance Services.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>The vehicle is not a hovercraft or amphibious vehicle</li> <li>Vehicles operate and take routes to minimise disturbance to the foreshore and seabed.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

#### DD-R3 Temporary military training activities

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Temporary military training activities in the coastal marine area for defence purposes.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD - Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>At least 10 working days advance written notice is given to Waikato Regional Council and the relevant iwi authority,</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

	<p>describing the activity and the area within which the activity is to occur</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. The activity does not exclude public use or access except where it is necessary to protect public health and safety or where public access would be in conflict with the Defence Act 1990</li> <li>4. Any restrictions on public access are publicly notified in advance and by notice placed at the boundary of the site in a publicly accessible location for the duration of the activity</li> <li>5. The activity occurs for less than 30 days in any calendar year.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Nothing in this rule permits the discharge of contaminants into the environment.</i></li> </ol>	
--	---	--

**DD-R4 Livestock and horse riding access in the coastal marine area**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b></p> <p>The access of livestock and horses within and along the foreshore and seabed</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>2. There is no access to estuarine areas or areas of saltmarsh or mangroves, or within 500m of a marine farm</li> <li>3. No grazing of intertidal vegetation is allowed to occur</li> <li>4. There is no alternative land-based access route outside the CMA available for livestock movement</li> <li>5. Livestock are moved along at all times and not left unattended</li> <li>6. Horses are kept under control at all times</li> <li>7. Horses are not ridden or taken into bird breeding areas.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b></p>
--	--	---

**Discretionary activities**

**DD-R5 Disturbances and other activities within surf breaks**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>Any disturbance to, or deposition on the foreshore or seabed, or any new structure or occupation of space (excluding any navigation safety structures, or structures or occupation associated with temporary recreational events), or any discharge of contaminants to the CMA within a significant surf break identified in Schedule 8.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	--	--

**DD-R6 Disturbance activities not provided for by other rules**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>Disturbance activities in the coastal marine area not otherwise provided for.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

**Prohibited activities**

**DD-R8 Military training activity involving explosions, detonations and other incendiary devices within significant areas**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> Military training activity involving explosions, detonations and other incendiary devices.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity is within any: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7</li> <li>b. Saltmarsh, seagrass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds</li> <li>c. Gazetted marine mammal sanctuary</li> <li>d. Historic heritage site identified in Schedule 5</li> <li>e. Site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>
--	--

**DD-R9 Livestock in the coastal marine area**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The presence of livestock and horses in the coastal marine area unless permitted under DD-R4.</p>
--	---

**B. Disturbance and removal**

**Discretionary activities**

**DD-R10 Removal of sand, shell, shingle or other material not within outstanding natural character or significant indigenous biodiversity areas**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed involving the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other material from the coastal marine area that is not within an outstanding natural character area identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and not covered by another rule in this plan, involving:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>2. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed, including disposal of spoil</li> <li>3. Removal of sand, shell, shingle and minerals from the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>4. Dredging of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>5. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of indigenous vegetation that is growing in the foreshore or seabed.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt, this rule includes, but is not limited to, the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disturbance to the foreshore or seabed (including by excavating, drilling, or tunnelling) section 12(1)(c)</li> <li>2. Removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material section 12(2)(b)</li> <li>3. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed incidental to the activity section 12(1).</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

**Non-complying activities**

**DD-R11 Removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material in any area of significant indigenous biodiversity or outstanding natural character not otherwise provided for**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed involving the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material in any area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A, that is not otherwise provided for.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

## Prohibited activities

### **DD-R12    Prospecting, exploration or mining in areas of outstanding natural character or significant indigenous biodiversity**

	Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed in any area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A associated with prospecting, exploration or mining of sand, shell, shingle, petroleum products or other natural material.
--	--

### **DD-R13    Fracking in the coastal marine area**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> Fracking (hydraulic fracturing) activities in the coastal marine area, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Erection or placement of a structure in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>2. Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed</li> <li>3. Deposition of any substance in, on or under the foreshore and seabed</li> <li>4. Discharge of contaminants in the coastal marine area.</li> </ol>
--	--

## **C. Flood protection and maintenance dredging**

### Permitted activities

#### **DD-R14    Removal of sediment from the mouth of waterways**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material from the mouth of waterways which empty into the CMA, or to unblock the mouth of waterways and associated vehicle use outside a SIBA-A.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>2. The activity is necessary to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. address an identified health and safety issue, or</li> <li>b. improve water quality; or</li> <li>c. provide for ecological restoration</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The activity will not: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. divert any part of the river or stream to a new course, or</li> <li>b. result in the infilling of the existing bed; or</li> <li>c. lead to erosion or instability of the banks of the river or stream; or</li> <li>d. increase the channel width or depth dimensions that existed prior to the blockage</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Land-based sediments and silt deposited by the waterway is removed from the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. Sand, shingle, shell or other natural material originating from the coastal marine area is used to replenish dunes within 500m of the waterway mouth where the material extracted matches the type and grain size of the destination dune</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b> (DD-R18)
--	--	--



	6. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use.	
--	--	--

**DD-R15 Local authority stream mouth clearance for flood protection or ecological restoration**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material, and associated vehicle use, by a local authority to unblock the mouth of waterways. .</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>2. The activity is necessary to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. prevent or minimise flood hazard risk</li> <li>b. assist or undertake emergency works</li> <li>c. address an identified health and safety issue</li> <li>d. improve water quality; or</li> <li>e. provide for ecological restoration</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The activity will not: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. divert any part of the river or stream to a new course</li> <li>b. result in the infilling of the existing bed</li> <li>c. lead to erosion or instability of the banks of the river or stream</li> <li>d. increase the channel width or depth dimensions that existed prior to the blockage</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Land-based sediments and silt deposited by the waterway is removed from the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. Sand, shingle, shell or other natural material originating from the coastal marine area is used to replenish dunes within 500m of the waterway mouth where the material extracted matches the type and grain size of the destination dune</li> <li>6. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b> (DD-R18)
--	---	--

**DD-R16 Disturbance and removal to maintain existing drainage channel outlets, flood gate outlets and stopbanks**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Disturbance and removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material within the coastal marine area by a local authority to maintain existing drainage channel outlets, flood gate outlets and stopbanks to service designated drainage districts, drainage schemes, river or flood protection schemes administered by local authorities, including channel clearance.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>2. The disturbance only takes place in an existing drainage channel outlet, flood gate outlet or borrowpit and is limited to a 20 metre wide strip on one side of the drainage canal outlet, flood gate outlet or borrowpit</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b> (DD-R17)
--	---	--

	<p>3. No sand, shell, shingle or other natural material is removed from the coastal marine area, other than material taken from borrowpits to maintain stopbanks.</p> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <p>1. Rule DD-R16 provides for the removal of Pacific oyster reefs by dredging at the mouths of the Piako and Waihou rivers.</p>	
--	---	--

## Controlled activities

### DD-R17 Maintenance dredging

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> Maintenance dredging, and associated vehicle use, involving the removal of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material from the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <p>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD – Disturbances and deposition chapter</p> <p><b>Control is reserved over:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Frequency, timing and location</li> <li>2. Method of dredging</li> <li>3. The volume of dredged material</li> <li>4. Location and method of disposal of dredged material.</li> <li>5. The location, extent and timing of vehicle use</li> <li>6. Cumulative effects</li> <li>7. Information and monitoring</li> <li>8. Noise.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### DD-R18 Removal of sediment from the mouth of waterways

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Removal of sediment from the mouth of waterways that empty into the coastal marine area that does not comply with DD-14 or DD-15.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal is necessary to reduce or minimise flood hazard risk, or to allow for fish migration</li> <li>2. The activity does not remove any sand, shingle, shell or other natural marine material except where it is used to replenish dunes within 500m of the waterway mouth and the material extracted matches the type and grain size of the destination dune</li> <li>3. The activity does not disturb shellfish beds, vegetated areas, bird foraging areas during nesting season, fish spawning grounds or any site of significance to tangata whenua.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

## Non-complying activities

### DD-R19 Disturbance activity not otherwise provided for

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> Disturbance or removal of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material that is not otherwise provided for in DD-R15 to DD-R18.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

## D. Deposition or disposal of material

### Permitted activities

#### DD-R20 Deposition of small quantities of natural material

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Disturbances and deposition of sand, shell, shingle or natural material in, on or under the foreshore or seabed, in quantities of less than 100m<sup>3</sup> in any 12-month period.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD - Disturbances and deposition chapter.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b> (DD-R22)
--	---	--

### Controlled activities

#### DD-R21 Beach renourishment

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> Deposition of any sand or shell onto the foreshore or seabed and associated vehicle use for beach nourishment greater than 100m<sup>3</sup>.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the DD - Disturbances and deposition chapter</li> <li>The beach renourishment activity is part of a coast or shoreline management plan adopted and approved by a local authority</li> <li>The material to be deposited does not contain any contaminants, marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms, unless these are to be treated, bound or otherwise neutralised</li> <li>There is only one deposition in any 12-month period</li> <li>The deposition is no more than 10,000 m<sup>3</sup>.</li> </ol> <p><b>Control is reserved over:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The information and monitoring requirements</li> <li>The location, extent and frequency of material to be deposited</li> <li>The method and timing of the deposit</li> <li>The frequency of any deposit</li> <li>The particle size and composition of the deposition</li> <li>The location, extent and timing of vehicle use</li> <li>Any actual, potential or cumulative effects</li> <li>Noise.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b> (DD-R22)
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### DD-R22 Deposition of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Deposition of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material onto the foreshore and seabed, in any 12-month period not otherwise permitted.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It does not disturb saltmarsh, seagrass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, fish passage, or shellfish beds</li> <li>2. It is not on or within a SIBAA identified in Schedule 7A and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at-risk species</li> <li>3. The material to be deposited does not contain any contaminants, marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms, unless these are to be treated, bound or otherwise neutralised.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b> (DD-R23)
--	--	---

## Non-complying activities

### DD-R23 Deposition of natural material

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> Deposition of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material onto the foreshore and seabed that is not otherwise provided for.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

## Prohibited activities

### DD-R24 Deposition or dumping of material containing hazardous substances

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> Deposition or dumping of any material into the coastal marine area that contains hazardous substances not provided for in clause 4(2) of the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998.</p>	
--	---	--

## E. Reclamation and removal of existing reclamations

### Restricted discretionary activities

#### DD-R25 Removal of reclamations for specified purposes

	<p><b>Activity status RDA</b> The removal of reclamations in the coastal marine area, where the removal is to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore the natural character, cultural resources, or ecological function of the coastal marine area; or</li> <li>2. Provide for public open space; or</li> <li>3. Provide for enhanced public walking access to and along the coastal marine area.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

	<p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Measures to restore the natural character or resources of the coastal marine area and to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage or cultural values</li> <li>2. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate the discharge of sediment to water</li> <li>3. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate erosion, instability or scour to land, foreshore or seabed as a result of the activity</li> <li>4. The disposal site and management of the material removed from the reclamation</li> <li>5. Timing and duration of works associated with the activity</li> <li>6. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems in the coastal environment, including wetlands</li> <li>7. Noise levels and management resulting from the activity</li> <li>8. Measures to minimise the disturbance of the foreshore and seabed</li> <li>9. Measures to avoid the discharge of contaminants (other than sediment) resulting from or associated with the activity</li> <li>10. Monitoring and information requirements.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

## Discretionary activities

### DD-R26 Reclamation in development areas

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Reclamation within the Te Ariki Tahī (Sugarloaf Wharf) or Kōpū Marine Precinct development areas.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

### DD-R27 Minor reclamation

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Minor reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The reclamation is for the purpose of one of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. restoration or enhancement activity, including for the protection of cultural values associated with a site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6</li> <li>b. the erection, placement or construction of regionally significant infrastructure</li> <li>c. deposition of material associated with the construction of a seawall within private property</li> <li>d. creation of walkways for public access</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The activity is not within an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b>
--	---	--

### DD-R28 Removal of reclamations resulting in inundation

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Removal of any existing reclamation that will result in inundation by seawater beyond the declaimed area, or does not comply with DD-R25.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

## Non-complying activities

**DD-R29 Reclamation associated with regionally significant infrastructure in areas of significant indigenous biodiversity or outstanding natural character**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b>                  Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in the coastal marine area in an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity is associated with:                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the operation, maintenance and protection of existing and new regionally significant infrastructure</li> <li>b. existing marinas and other marine-related service facilities; or</li> <li>c. existing and new electricity generation facilities</li> <li>d. the protection, restoration or rehabilitation of the biodiversity or natural character values associated with such areas</li> <li>e. the provision of safe public walking access to, within or adjacent to the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b>
--	--	--

**DD-R30 Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed not otherwise provided for**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b>                  Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed not prohibited by either DD-R31 or DD-R32 of this plan or otherwise provided for.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

## Prohibited activities

**DD-R31 Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed for specified purposes**

	<p>Reclamation, deposition or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in the coastal marine area, where the activity is for <u>any</u> of the following purposes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disposal of dredged material as the primary purpose of the reclamation</li> <li>2. Extension to or creation of farmland, playing fields, urban, and industrial areas, except for marine-related servicing facilities and storage</li> <li>3. Carparking as the primary purpose of the reclamation</li> <li>4. Rubbish disposal, including industrial, horticultural, farm and household</li> <li>5. Deposition of any material other than cleanfill, in either:                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. a reclamation; or</li> <li>b. in a retaining wall associated with a declamation that will become a structure in the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>The creation of walkways for public access to and along the coastal marine area is excluded from this rule.</p>
--	--

**DD-R32 Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in areas of significant indigenous biodiversity or outstanding natural character**

	Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in the coastal marine area in an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A, unless provided for by DD-R29.
--	---

# 11 ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity | Te mauri o te taiao me te rerenga rauropi

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Indigenous biodiversity includes all plants and animals that occur naturally in New Zealand; either they have evolved here or arrived and established without any assistance from humans. An ecosystem is a biological community of interacting organisms and their physical environment. Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity in the coastal marine area of the Waikato region are impacted by human activities. Some coastal marine habitats and ecosystems are severely degraded and all are under increasing pressure from climate change impacts. Māui dolphin on the west coast of the region are threatened with extinction.

As biodiversity declines, so do ecosystem processes, functions and integrity. Biodiversity loss is also associated with habitat loss and fragmentation, disrupting connectivity between habitats and ecosystems. This especially affects species that depend on a range of habitats, such as migratory shorebirds and seabirds.

Protection of significant indigenous biodiversity from the adverse effects of activities and inappropriate development, and maintaining, restoring and enhancing other indigenous biodiversity areas is required by the NZCPS and RPS, which provide specific direction reflected in the policies of this chapter. In doing so the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems is safeguarded in accordance with the purpose of the RMA.

Schedule 7 identifies areas with significant indigenous biodiversity values that require protection as a matter of national importance under section 6(c) of the RMA. These areas have been identified using the criteria in the RPS, giving effect to policy 11 of the NZCPS, as:

- Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas A (SIBA-A) in Schedule 7A
- Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas B (SIBA-B) in Schedule 7B

A precautionary approach is required to manage effects in the coastal environment on ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity values.

Activities that may adversely affect ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity are required to consider the scale and type of effect when applying for resource consent.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### **ECO-01** Protect and restore ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity

Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity in the coastal marine area are maintained, and enhanced and restored where appropriate, and areas of significant indigenous biodiversity are protected.



## **ECO-O2 Prevent loss of ecosystem processes and habitat quality**

The degradation and loss of ecosystem processes, including decline in habitat quality and extent, in the coastal marine area is prevented.

## **Policies | Ngā kaupapahere**

### **ECO-P1 Avoid adverse effects on significant indigenous biodiversity**

Avoid adverse effects of activities on:

1. The values of SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A
2. Indigenous taxa that are listed as threatened or at risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists
3. Taxa that are listed by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources as threatened
4. Indigenous ecosystems and vegetation types that are threatened or are naturally rare
5. Habitats of indigenous species where the species are at the limit of their natural range, or are naturally rare
6. Areas containing nationally significant examples of indigenous community types
7. Areas set aside for full or partial protection of indigenous biological diversity under other legislation.

### **ECO-P2 Avoid significant adverse effects on significant indigenous biodiversity**

Avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects of activities on:

1. The values of SIBA-B identified in Schedule 7B
2. Areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation not identified in Schedule 7, including sub-tidal indigenous vegetation
3. Habitats that are important during the vulnerable life stages of indigenous species
4. Indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are particularly vulnerable to modification, including but not limited to estuaries, lagoons, coastal wetlands, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, seagrass and saltmarsh habitats, including areas and routes important to migratory species
5. Habitats of indigenous species that are important for recreational, commercial or cultural purposes
6. Ecological corridors and areas important for linking or maintaining biological values identified under this policy and ECO-P1.

### **ECO-P3 Assessment of adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity**

When assessing the extent and consequence of any adverse effects of activities on indigenous biodiversity, consider as a minimum the following matters:

1. That a minor or transitory effect may be an acceptable adverse effect
2. Existing activities and their effects and the potential for cumulative effects that are more than minor
3. That habitats may change over time, be wide ranging and may be seasonal in nature
4. How climate change will change the nature and distribution of habitats and species
5. Any proposed restoration, enhancement or offsetting of indigenous biodiversity values
6. The effects on the tangata whenua cultural and spiritual values of indigenous biodiversity, in accordance with tikanga Māori.

#### **ECO-P4 Provide for use and development that may impact indigenous biodiversity**

Consider providing for use and development that will adversely affect the indigenous biodiversity values associated with the areas listed in ECO-P1 and ECO-P2, where the proposal:

1. Relates to the operation, maintenance or protection of existing regionally significant infrastructure or upgrading regionally significant infrastructure provided that the scale and intensity of adverse effects from the proposal are the same or similar as those arising from the existing infrastructure; or
2. Relates to the implementation of statutory functions or powers for the purpose of maintaining or enhancing biodiversity and intertidal habitats, or for biosecurity activities; or
3. Relates to a currently authorised use that was lawfully established, provided there has been no increase to the scale and significance of effects associated with an activity; or
4. Relates to use and development within development areas; or
5. Provides for maintenance of existing public walking or boating access to and along the coastal marine area
6. Provides for access to cultural heritage sites or sites of significance for traditional use.

Any consideration may only occur where:

1. There is a functional and operational need for the activity to be undertaken in areas listed in ECO-P1 and ECO-P2; and
2. There are no practical alternative locations; and
3. The avoidance of effects required by ECO-P1 and ECO-2 is not possible.

#### **ECO-P5 Requirements when assessing a proposal under ECO-P4**

Ensure the following when considering use and development under ECO-P4:

1. Adverse effects are avoided to the extent practicable, having regard to the activity's technical and operational requirement
2. Adverse effects that cannot be avoided are remedied or mitigated to the extent practicable
3. More than minor residual adverse effects on the values of SIBA identified in Schedule 7 that cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated are offset
4. Significant residual adverse effects on values of any SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7 that cannot be offset are:
  - a. avoided; or
  - b. only experienced over a short-term; or
  - c. acceptable given the positive effects of the proposal on indigenous biodiversity values; or
  - d. in exceptional circumstances, financial contributions may be considered
5. Clauses (2) and (3) do not apply to the National Grid.

#### **ECO-P6 Promote enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity values**

Promote enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity values, including by:

1. Enhancing water quality, for example by reducing the amount of sediments, nutrients or other contaminants entering the coastal marine area
2. Removing derelict and redundant structures, where structures are having adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity values
3. Restoring or enhancing natural elements including dunes, saline wetlands, inter-tidal saltmarsh, riparian margins and other natural coastal features or processes
4. Restoring or enhancing indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems (using local genetic stock where practicable) including restoring habitats of species that are important for cultural purposes (such as mahinga kai, kaimoana or raranga areas) identified in collaboration with tangata whenua

5. Supporting the natural regeneration of indigenous species, including effective weed and animal pest management
6. Identifying ecological and culturally appropriate sites for enhancement and restoration
7. Declaiming land where it will restore the natural character of the coastal marine area.
8. Recognising the importance of some indigenous species that provide a buffer for coastal processes causing erosion including inundation and enable carbon sequestration
9. Taking a collaborative approach to enhancing and restoring indigenous biodiversity through engagement with territorial authorities, tangata whenua and local communities
10. Minimising sediment deposition from direct and indirect sources.

#### **ECO-P7 Mangrove removal**

Enable mangrove removal only where it is necessary to do one or more of the following:

1. Maintain, restore or enhance indigenous biodiversity values of an area, including wading bird habitat and roosting areas for shorebirds
2. Improve connections between water bodies or other natural coastal processes in the area
3. Maintain, restore and enhance access to mahinga kai or areas of traditional cultural use
4. Maintain historic heritage places
5. Operate, maintain or upgrade regionally significant infrastructure or the national grid or publicly owned infrastructure such as roads, walkways and drainage systems
6. Maintain existing public walking or boating access to and along the coastal marine area.

#### **ECO-P8 Mangrove seedling removal**

Provide for mangrove seedling removal outside SIBA-A, and allow removal within SIBA-A where:

1. The seedlings to be removed are immediately adjacent to, or within the footprint of, a lawfully established structure, regionally significant infrastructure, or existing drainage channel; or
2. It is necessary to provide for access to marae, urupā and reserve access ways; or
3. The removal of seedlings is part of ongoing maintenance within areas where clearance of seedlings or mature mangroves has previously been authorised by a resource consent, or where mangroves have never been present.

#### **ECO-P9 Mangrove removal – adverse effects**

When considering resource consents for mangrove removal, have regard to a range of potential adverse effects, in particular:

1. The effects on ecological values including:
  - a. Disturbance, displacement or loss of fauna and habitat
  - b. Disturbance or displacement of birds classified as Threatened or At Risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists
  - c. Disturbance to ecological corridors and ecological sequences
  - d. Removal of a buffer to sensitive ecological areas
  - e. Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed, including compaction, sediment redistribution, and mangrove biomass deposition
2. Increased risk of coastal erosion or inundation where mangroves provide a buffer against coastal processes causing erosion, including inundation
3. Effects on tangata whenua cultural values
4. Amenity impacts from removal and disposal including noise, smoke, odour and visual impacts
5. Short and long-term effects on local sediment characteristics and hydrodynamics.

### ECO-P10 Indigenous biodiversity offsetting

Enable offsetting for proposals listed in ECO-P4 only when the effects, including residual effects after mitigation, cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated. Offsetting must be applied in a manner that is consistent with principles in Schedule 7C.

### ECO-P11 Introduction of exotic plant species

Avoid the introduction of exotic plant species to the coastal marine area where:

1. Potential exists for the exotic plant species to become a harmful aquatic organism; or
2. Where the introduction could result in significant adverse effects on:
  - a. Indigenous biodiversity values, including the habitats of rare and threatened species
  - b. Seascape values
  - c. Natural character
  - d. The functioning of natural ecosystems; or
  - e. The functioning of geophysical processes that form and maintain estuaries, coastal foredunes and open coast areas.

All adverse effects other than significant adverse effects are to be remedied or mitigated by way of resource consent conditions.

### ECO-P12 Avoiding disturbance and other activities in vulnerable ecologically significant areas

Within identified vulnerable ecologically significant marine areas, activities that disturb the foreshore and seabed or adversely affect the indigenous biodiversity values must be avoided.

## Rules | Ngā ture

#### Advisory note:

1. The rules for this chapter are set out in the following sections:
  - A. Indigenous vegetation
  - B. Restoration and Enhancement
  - C. Mangrove Seedings
  - D. Mature Mangroves
  - E. Exotic plant species

## A. Indigenous Vegetation

### Permitted activities

#### ECO-R1 Permitted indigenous vegetation removal

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b></p> <p>The removal of indigenous vegetation for the following purposes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Customary use by tangata whenua</li><li>2. Operation, maintenance or minor upgrades to regionally significant infrastructure or the national grid</li><li>3. Maintenance of existing public walking or boating access to and along the coastal marine area</li><li>4. Maintenance or restoration of shorebird roosting sites, carried out by the Department of Conservation or its agents</li></ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved outside SIBA-A: <b>RDA</b></p> <p>Activity status where compliance not</p>
--	---	---

	<p>5. Maintenance, enhancement or restoration of historic heritage places.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removal does not require use of a motor vehicle in the CMA</li> <li>2. The maximum area of vegetation to be removed in any one year is 10m<sup>2</sup></li> <li>3. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during removal is to be minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during removal</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>The removal of non-indigenous vegetation and marine pests is covered by BIO-R5, BIO-R6 and BIO-R7.</i></li> </ol>	<p>achieved in SIBA-A: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	--------------------------------------

## Restricted discretionary activities

### ECO-R2 Removal of indigenous vegetation outside of SIBA-A that does not comply with ECO-R1

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b></p> <p>The removal of indigenous vegetation from <b>outside</b> of SIBA-A for the following purposes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Customary use by tangata whenua</li> <li>2. Operation, maintenance or minor upgrades to regionally significant infrastructure or the national grid</li> <li>3. Maintenance of existing public walking or boating access to and along the coastal marine area</li> <li>4. Maintenance or restoration of shorebird roosting sites, carried out by the Department of Conservation or its agents</li> <li>5. Maintenance, enhancement or restoration of historic heritage places.</li> </ol> <p>and the activity cannot meet the listed permitted activity standards in ECO-R1.</p> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Method, timing and extent of activities</li> <li>2. Methods proposed to minimise the discharge of sediment and/or other contaminants to the coastal marine area during removal</li> <li>3. Effects on aquatic ecosystem health and indigenous biodiversity</li> <li>4. Effects on tangata whenua cultural values.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	--	---

## Non-complying activities

### ECO-R3 Removal of indigenous vegetation within SIBA-A

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b></p>	<p>Activity status where</p>
--	-----------------------------------	------------------------------

	The removal of indigenous vegetation in a SIBA-A not allowed under any other rule in this chapter.	compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	-------------------------------------

## B. Restoration and Enhancement

### Permitted activities

#### ECO-R4 Introduction of indigenous plant species

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b></p> <p>The introduction of any indigenous plant species in the coastal marine area in areas where these species exist currently or existed historically, in order to restore or enhance indigenous biodiversity values.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Introduction is undertaken by hand or using non-motorised handheld tools</li> <li>6. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during planting is minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during introduction</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

### Restricted discretionary activities

#### ECO-R5 Restoration of indigenous species or habitats

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b></p> <p>The deposition and disturbance of any natural material for the purpose of restoring and/or enhancing indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The natural material is not placed on any habitat identified as a significant indigenous biodiversity area in Schedule 7</li> <li>2. The natural material must be sourced locally</li> <li>3. The natural material does not contain any marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms at the time of placement</li> <li>4. The disturbance is not within a site of significance to tangata whenua or wāhi tapu</li> <li>5. No contaminants are discharged from any vehicles.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The location and scale of the activity</li> <li>2. The species or habitat to be re-introduced and its source</li> <li>3. The natural material to be deposited and its source</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. The methods used to remove any harmful aquatic organisms from the natural material and from the species to be re-introduced</li> <li>5. The time of the year when the placement is to occur</li> <li>6. Any beneficial or adverse effects on other species or ecosystems at the site of placement or in the vicinity of the placement area.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**ECO-R6 Removal of indigenous vegetation for restoration and enhancement**

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> The removal of indigenous vegetation for the purpose of restoring and/or enhancing indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal is not within a SIBA-A</li> <li>2. Agrichemicals are not used</li> <li>3. The activity avoids disturbance or damage to areas of saltmarsh or seagrass</li> <li>4. In areas that have been identified as bird roosting or nesting sites in Schedule 7, removal is not undertaken between 1 September and 28 February (inclusive) to avoid bird roosting and nesting seasons</li> <li>5. No motor vehicles are to be used within the CMA</li> <li>6. All material is removed from the CMA within the same tidal cycle in which it was removed from the ground, and appropriately disposed of</li> <li>7. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during removal is to be minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during removal.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The location and scale of the activity</li> <li>2. The species or habitat to be re-introduced and its source</li> <li>3. Method, timing and extent of activities</li> <li>4. Effects on aquatic ecosystem health and indigenous biodiversity</li> <li>5. Effects on the characteristics, qualities and values of SIBA-A and SIBA-B</li> <li>6. Effects on tāngata whenua cultural values.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangrove seedlings growing in the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>d. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from vegetation removal.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

**C. Mangrove Seedlings**

**Permitted activities**

**ECO-R7 Removal of mangrove seedlings outside of SIBA-A**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The removal of mangrove seedlings and any associated disturbance to the foreshore and seabed in areas not identified as SIBA-A.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removal is undertaken by hand or using electrically powered hand-held tools</li> <li>2. Agrichemicals are not used</li> <li>3. The activity will not disturb or damage areas of saltmarsh or seagrass</li> <li>4. In areas that have been identified as bird roosting or nesting sites in Schedule 7, removal is not undertaken between 1 September and 28 February (inclusive)</li> <li>5. No motor vehicles are to be used within the CMA</li> <li>6. All material is removed from the CMA within the same tidal cycle in which it was removed from the ground, and appropriately disposed of</li> <li>7. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during removal is minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during removal.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangrove seedlings growing in the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>d. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove seedling removal.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

**ECO-R8 Removal of mangrove seedlings within SIBA-A**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The removal of mangrove seedlings within a SIBA-A and any associated disturbance to the foreshore and seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal meets the standards in ECO-R7; and</li> <li>2. The seedlings are located immediately adjacent to or within the footprint of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. a lawfully established and currently authorised structure by resource consent; or</li> <li>b. regionally significant infrastructure; or</li> <li>c. an existing drainage channel; or</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The removal of seedlings is to provide for access to marae, urupā and reserve access ways, and where the removal is restricted to a 5m wide access channel between the marae, urupā or reserve and the nearest permanently navigable waters; or</li> <li>4. The removal is within areas where clearance of seedlings or mature mangroves has previously been authorised by a resource consent, or where mangroves have never been present.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---



	<p>c. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangrove seedlings growing in the foreshore or seabed</p> <p>d. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove seedling removal.</p>	
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### ECO-R9 Removal of mangrove seedlings

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The removal of mangrove seedlings that is not permitted under ECO-R7 and ECO-R8.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

## D. Mangroves

### Permitted activities

#### ECO-R10 Removal of mangroves where consented clearance has occurred

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The removal of mangroves that is carried out as a part of ongoing maintenance within areas where clearance of seedlings or mature mangroves has previously been authorised by a resource consent.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tracked or wheeled machinery is not used in the coastal marine area</li> <li>2. Removal of any mangroves is undertaken by hand or using electrically powered hand-held tools</li> <li>3. Agrichemicals are not used</li> <li>4. The activity will not disturb or damage areas of saltmarsh or seagrass</li> <li>5. Access to removal areas is by existing open areas or paths</li> <li>6. In areas that have been identified as bird roosting or nesting sites in Schedule 7, removal is not undertaken between 1 September and 28 February (inclusive)</li> <li>7. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during removal is minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during removal</li> <li>8. All material is removed from the CMA within the same tidal cycle in which it was removed from the ground, and appropriately disposed of.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangroves growing in the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	--	--

#### ECO-R11 Minor removal of mature mangroves to enable existing infrastructure

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The removal of mature mangroves in the coastal marine area (including in a SIBA-A or SIBA-B) to enable the operation,</p>	Activity status where
--	--	-----------------------

	<p>maintenance, and use of existing lawful structures or infrastructure to a maximum of:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 200m<sup>2</sup> outside of any SIBA-A</li> <li>2. 30m<sup>2</sup> in any SIBA-A.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal is directly adjacent to, or within the footprint of, the structure or infrastructure</li> <li>2. Agrichemicals are not used</li> <li>3. The activity will not disturb or damage areas of saltmarsh or seagrass</li> <li>4. Access to removal areas is by existing open areas or paths</li> <li>5. In areas that have been identified as bird roosting or nesting sites in Schedule 7, removal is not undertaken between 1 September and 28 February (inclusive)</li> <li>6. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during removal is minimised, with no other contaminants discharged during removal</li> <li>7. All material is removed from the CMA within the same tidal cycle in which it was removed from the ground, and appropriately disposed of.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangroves growing in the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.</li> </ol>	<p>compliance not achieved: RDA</p>
--	---	-------------------------------------

## Restricted discretionary activities

### ECO-R12 Removal of mangroves by statutory or incorporated bodies for conservation purposes

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b></p> <p>The removal of mature mangroves in the coastal marine area (including in a SIBA-A or SIBA-B) by a statutory or incorporated body in the performance of its statutory functions or powers for the purpose of maintaining or enhancing biodiversity and intertidal habitats, and any associated damage or disturbance to the foreshore, seabed or bed of a river that is not a permitted activity under ECO-R7, ECO-R8 or ECO-R10.</p> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Method, timing and extent of activities</li> <li>2. Effects on aquatic ecosystem health and indigenous biodiversity</li> <li>3. Navigation and safety</li> <li>4. Effects on the characteristics, qualities and values of SIBA-A and SIBA-B</li> <li>5. Effects on tangata whenua cultural values.</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangroves growing in the foreshore or seabed</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	--	--

	c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.	
--	--	--

#### ECO-R13 Removal of mangroves to enable existing infrastructure

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> The removal of mature mangroves in the coastal marine area (including in a SIBA-A or SIBA-B) to enable the operation, maintenance, and use of existing lawful structures or infrastructure that does not comply with ECO-R11.</p> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Method, timing and extent of activities</li> <li>2. Effects on aquatic ecosystem health and indigenous biodiversity</li> <li>3. Navigation and safety</li> <li>4. Effects on the characteristics, qualities and values of SIBA-A and SIBA-B</li> <li>5. Effects on tangata whenua cultural values</li> </ol> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangroves growing in the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

### Discretionary activities

#### ECO-R14 Removal of areas of mature mangroves not in a SIBA-A

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The removal of mature mangroves in the coastal marine area not in a SIBA-A that is not allowed under any other rule in this chapter.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

### Non-complying activities

#### ECO-R15 Removal of areas of mature mangroves in SIBA-A

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> The removal of mature mangroves in the coastal marine area in a SIBA-A not allowed under any other rule in this chapter.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

## E. Exotic plant species

### Permitted activities

#### ECO-R16 Removal of exotic plant species

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The removal of exotic plant species.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal is not undertaken in a SIBA-A</li> <li>2. Agrichemicals are not used</li> <li>3. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during removal is to be minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during removal</li> </ol> <p>This rule includes the following activities resulting from the removal of exotic vegetation:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>b. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>c. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>The removal of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms is covered by BIO-R5, BIO-R6 and BIO-R7.</i></li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

### Discretionary activities

#### ECO-R17 Introduction of exotic plant species

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The introduction of exotic plant species into the coastal marine area that is not covered by non-complying activity ECO-R19</p> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Introduction or planting of any exotic or introduced plant in, on or under the foreshore or seabed (section 12(1)).</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory notes:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>ECO-R17 is not intended to capture introduction of exotic plant species to the coastal marine area where such introduction is directed under other legislation in the event of a declared response to an Unwanted Organism.</i></li> <li>2. <i>The introduction and/or discharge of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms is covered by BIO-R11.</i></li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

#### ECO-R18 Removal of exotic plant species

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The removal of exotic vegetation not allowed under any other rules in this chapter.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

## Non-complying activities

### ECO-R19 Introduction of exotic plant species into Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> The introduction of exotic plant species into SIBA-A and SIBA-B identified in Schedule 7.</p> <p><b>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the following RMA activities:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Introduction or planting of any exotic or introduced plant in, on or under the foreshore or seabed (section 12(1)).</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>The introduction and/or discharge of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms is covered by BIO-R11.</i></li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	--	--

## Methods

### ECO-M1 Identifying vulnerable ecological areas

Waikato Regional Council will identify ecologically significant marine areas vulnerable to disturbance activities where there is sufficient information to support the protection of these areas.

# 12 EI – Energy and infrastructure | Pūngao me ngā hanganga matua

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

This chapter provides direction for the management of existing and new infrastructure, including renewable energy generation, in the coastal marine area. It is also supported by more detailed objectives and policies threaded through other chapters of this plan.

The operative RPS defines regionally significant infrastructure. In addition to these, this plan identifies Te Ariki Tahī (Sugarloaf Wharf) and Kōpū Marine Precinct as development areas within which development, such as new wharves, commercial vessel access, and dredging for navigation channels will be enabled.

The National Policy Statement for Renewable Energy Generation 2011 (NPS-REG) requires the inclusion of objectives, policies and methods to provide for the development, operation, maintenance and upgrading of new and existing renewable electricity generation activities using solar, biomass, tidal, wave, ocean current energy and wind resources to the extent applicable in the region.

The National Policy Statement for Electricity Transmission 2008 (NPS-ET) requires the plan to facilitate long-term planning for investment in transmission infrastructure and its integration with land uses.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### EI-O1 Benefits of Energy and Infrastructure

The social, economic, cultural and environmental benefits of regionally significant infrastructure, development zones and renewable electricity generation activities are recognised.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### EI-P1 Development and operation of regionally significant infrastructure

Enable the development, operation, maintenance and upgrade of regionally significant infrastructure, in appropriate circumstances, to meet current and future community needs.

### EI-P2 Reverse sensitivity

Ensure that the use, operation, maintenance and upgrade of regionally significant infrastructure and renewable electricity generation activities in the coastal marine area are protected from incompatible use and development occurring in proximity to the infrastructure.

### EI-P3 Renewable electricity generation

Have regard to the practical constraints for renewable electricity generation activities in the coastal marine area, including:

1. The availability of renewable energy resources
2. The need for generation of renewable electricity to locate where the resource exists
3. The need to connect to the electricity supply network or national grid.

## EI-P4 Development areas

Enable development and activities required for the use and operation of development areas.

### Rules | Ngā ture

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for EI - Energy and infrastructure are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

# 13 HH – Historic heritage | Taonga onamata

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Historic heritage sites in the coastal marine area include historic places, shipwrecks, archaeological sites and areas of cultural importance to tangata whenua.

Historic heritage values can be directly threatened through modification, damage or destruction associated with use and development in the coastal marine area and on adjoining land. Damage can also occur from natural hazards and sea level rise.

Under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 it is unlawful to destroy, damage or modify an archaeological site without first obtaining an archaeological authority from Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga. An archaeological authority is required in addition to any resource consent required under the RMA. An archaeological site is defined in the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.

International best practice for management and protection of underwater historic heritage is contained in the UNESCO Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage—Annex: Rules Concerning Activities Directed at Underwater Cultural Heritage. Historic heritage may also include sites and areas of significance to Māori, which is addressed in the SASM - Sites and areas of significance to Māori chapter.

Currently many of the heritage sites have not been accurately recorded or surveyed and locational data is not always accurate. Consequently, in many cases the values of the historic heritage sites have not been assessed. A number of sites, due to their cultural or spiritual sensitivity, are not appropriate to be specifically located on maps. This presents a challenge for protection. A discovery protocol policy and the identification of areas of significance to tangata whenua are used to address this uncertainty.

Policy 17 of the NZCPS requires the protection of historic heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development.

Historic heritage sites that have been identified have been divided into three different categories depending on the visibility of features and ease of visual location.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### HH-O1 Historic heritage values

Historic heritage sites are protected from inappropriate use and development.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### HH-P1 Protection of historic heritage

Avoid significant adverse effects on the characteristics and qualities that contribute to historic heritage values, by:

1. Recognising that significant adverse effects on historic heritage values may be caused by:
  - a. the destruction of the physical elements of historic heritage; or



- b. relocation of the physical elements of historic heritage; or
  - c. alterations and additions to the form and appearance of the physical elements of historic heritage; or
  - d. loss of context to the surroundings of historic heritage, taking into account the scale of any proposal
2. Recognising that despite (1), there are not likely to be significant adverse effects if:
    - a. the historic heritage has already been irreparably damaged as assessed by a suitably qualified and experienced heritage professional; or
    - b. alterations, additions, repair, restoration or maintenance will not result in the loss, or significant degradation of any values contributing to it being historic heritage, or, for archaeological sites, these are being undertaken under authority from Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga
  3. Having regard to the following to determine the appropriateness of activities affecting historic heritage:
    - a. The scale and extent of effects on historic heritage, archaeological, architectural, cultural, historic, scientific and technological values of the site
    - b. Whether the relationships between elements within a site and relationships between sites or areas of historic and cultural heritage to other sites or areas of historic and cultural heritage will be maintained
    - c. The benefits of appropriate conservation, maintenance and management activities in retaining the value or integrity of historic heritage sites
    - d. Effects of activities on the surroundings associated with historic heritage sites in a manner that does not adversely affect the values of the site
    - e. The activity is to remove marine pest species, is being undertaken by or on behalf of Waikato Regional Council, local authorities, Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation, or Land Information New Zealand, and will not adversely affect the historic heritage values of the site.

#### **HH-P2 Effects of use or development on historic heritage sites and values**

Consider the following matters when making decisions on any use or development that may have an adverse effect on historic heritage sites in the coastal marine area:

1. The effects of the use or development on the significance and values of the historic heritage site as assessed by a suitably qualified archaeologist or heritage professional
2. Integrated management of heritage values in collaboration with relevant councils, heritage agencies, iwi authorities and kaitiaki.

#### **HH-P3 Conservation of historic heritage sites in the CMA**

Encourage the conservation of historic heritage sites, by allowing the non-invasive investigation, maintenance or repair of identified historic heritage sites.

#### **HH-P4 Restoration, additions, or alteration to historic heritage items**

Ensure that restoration of, or additions or alterations to historic heritage sites protect the values and setting of the item by requiring an assessment of effects by a suitably qualified archaeologist or heritage professional.

#### **HH-P5 Protection of historic heritage resources**

Protect the identity and integrity of historic heritage by ensuring that:

1. Where activities potentially adversely affect historic heritage structures identified in Schedule 5A, significant adverse effects are avoided, and other adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated, on the historic heritage values of those sites
2. Where activities potentially adversely affect historic sites identified in Schedule 5B, or shipwrecks identified in Schedule 5C, adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated by requiring that appropriate heritage and cultural assessments are undertaken that demonstrate how protection of heritage values will be achieved
3. Mana whenua tikanga practices can occur on culturally significant sites.

#### HH-P6 Discovery protocol

Recognise that data on heritage sites may be incomplete and unknown sites requiring protection may be discovered during use and development, and provide initial level of protection by requiring adherence to the accidental discovery protocol in Schedule 12 in the event that any activity discovers or disturbs any:

1. Human remains and kōiwi
2. Archaeological site including historic shipwrecks
3. Māori cultural artefact/taonga tuturu
4. Protected New Zealand object as defined in the Protected Objects Act 1975 (including any fossil or sub-fossil).

## Rules | Ngā ture

### Permitted activities

#### HH-R1 Investigation, repair and maintenance of historic heritage sites

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Non-invasive investigation, repair or maintenance of historic heritage sites.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An authority has been obtained under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 for any pre-1900 archaeological site; or</li> <li>2. The removal of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from an historic heritage site is authorised under BIO-R4, R5, R6 or R7</li> <li>3. The activity is undertaken under the supervision of a suitably qualified archaeologist or heritage professional.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

#### HH-R2 Modification or destruction of a pre-1900 archaeological site

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Modification or destruction of a pre-1900 archaeological or shipwreck site.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An authority has been obtained under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

**HH-R3 Mana whenua tikanga practices on historic heritage sites**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Mana whenua tikanga practices on or associated with wāhi tapu, urupā or within a cultural heritage site.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The activity is being undertaken on a wāhi tapu, urupā or cultural heritage site by tangata whenua holding mana whenua status for that site.</li></ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	--	--

**Discretionary activities****HH-R4 Modification, disturbance or destruction of an historic heritage site**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Any modification, disturbance or destruction of an historic heritage site not otherwise permitted by HH-R1, HH-R2 or HH-R3.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

**Non-complying activities****HH-R4 Modification or destruction of a scheduled historic heritage site**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> The modification or destruction of a pre-1900 archaeological or shipwreck site where approval has not been obtained under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

# 14 MO – Moorings | Ngā pou herenga waka

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

There is an increasing demand for permanent moorings in the region, and in some of the existing areas, demand exceeds the space available. There has also been incremental sprawl of moorings in various places around the region. These pressures can impact on other public uses and values of the coastal marine area, such as, natural character, landscape, biodiversity, public access and amenity values.

At present moorings are either pole moorings (vessels moored in lines attached to poles) or swing moorings (a central anchored point that allows the vessel to swing with the tide). New technologies may also be used in the future to enable more efficient use of space and less impacts on the benthos.

In many of the region’s harbours there are defined mooring areas, which provide a convenient and efficient way to manage space for vessel moorings along with taking into account other community and natural values.

Moorings within mooring areas are currently managed through resource consents. This plan transitions them to being managed by a mooring licence system under the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw. All other moorings outside of mooring areas will require a resource consent.

Under section 12 of the RMA, no person may reclaim or drain the foreshore or seabed, erect structures, disturb the foreshore or seabed, undertake depositions, unless expressly allowed by a national environmental standard, a rule in the plan or a resource consent. Moorings, as structures, are therefore addressed in this chapter.

### Advisory notes:

1. *This chapter applies only to vessel moorings and does not apply to other moorings, such as those required for navigation safety buoys, or research and monitoring gauges. These are covered in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter.*
2. *Anchorage is separate to mooring and is enabled, provided any vessel complies with the requirements for anchoring of vessels, including MO-P6.*

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### **MO-O1 Provide for mooring areas**

Moorings areas are provided for in appropriate locations to ensure navigational safety and efficient use of public space, and to protect natural and public values.

### **MO-O2 Restrict moorings outside mooring areas**

Moorings located outside mooring areas are discouraged.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### **MO-P1 Enable moorings in mooring areas**

Enable moorings within the mooring areas identified in Schedule 2, to ensure that:

1. The space available within the mooring area is used efficiently
2. Activities that are not directly related to mooring activities are discouraged
3. The maximum number of moorings within each mooring area will be based on the suitability of the space to accommodate moorings, the size of vessels, the most efficient mooring layout, and the type of mooring system.

#### **MO-P2 Management of moorings within a mooring area**

Manage moorings within the mooring areas identified in Schedule 2, to ensure that:

1. The mooring structure and any associated occupation of space of the vessel when tied to the mooring, is located within the boundaries of the mooring area at all times
2. The mooring structure is designed, maintained and managed to a standard that: ensures navigational safety, manages biosecurity risk to minimise the introduction or spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms, maintains structural integrity at all times, and is suitably designed for the size of the vessel
3. The owner of the mooring holds a current mooring license or a current resource consent.

#### **MO-P3 Prohibited mooring areas**

Avoid moorings in areas that are identified as prohibited moorings areas identified in Schedule 2.

#### **MO-P4 Location of moorings outside the mooring areas and outside the prohibited mooring areas.**

New moorings outside the mooring areas identified in Schedule 2, and outside the prohibited mooring areas identified in Schedule 2, are inappropriate unless:

1. There is a compelling reason why the mooring is necessary in that location, and the alternatives have been considered including the reason why land-based vessel storage is not practicable, feasible or otherwise available
2. The proposed location will:
  - a. avoid any navigational hazard to other vessels
  - b. avoid adverse effects on other existing lawfully established activities in the area, including but not limited to other moorings, marinas, submarine cables, overhead power lines, aquaculture farms, access to wharves, jetties, boat ramps or navigation channels, ferry access routes, and any specified activity zones identified in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw
  - c. avoid locating in or near locally known and used anchorage areas
3. The following matters and effects have been addressed:
  - a. the proximity to shore, and the potential impact on public use and access to beaches
  - b. the exposure of the area and the potential risk to the mooring and vessel from rough weather and sea conditions
4. A cumulative effects assessment has addressed the number of existing moorings, the geographical setting and proportion of the area already used for moorings, the proximity to other mooring areas, other activities and uses in the area, ad hoc sprawl and the potential for spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
5. The proposed location and type of mooring will avoid adverse effects on the values and attributes of:
  - a. outstanding natural features or outstanding natural landscapes identified in Schedule 3
  - b. outstanding natural character areas identified in Schedule 4
  - c. historic heritage sites identified in Schedule 5
  - d. sites and areas of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
  - e. significant indigenous biodiversity areas identified in Schedule 7

- f. nationally and regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8
- g. areas used for recreation activities or public access, or commercial vessel routes.

**MO-P5 Management of moorings outside mooring areas and outside the prohibited mooring areas**

Manage moorings outside the mooring areas and outside the prohibited mooring areas identified in Schedule 2, by ensuring that:

1. The mooring structure is designed, maintained and managed to a standard that ensures navigational safety, manages biosecurity risk to minimise the introduction or spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms, maintains structural integrity at all times, and is suitably designed for the size of the vessel
2. The proposed type of mooring system is appropriate for the location, including avoiding adverse effects on seagrass areas identified in Schedule 7
3. A biosecurity management plan and a maintenance plan is provided.

**MO-P6 Anchoring of vessels**

Enable the anchoring of a vessel provided:

1. The vessel is not located in an area identified in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw as being a restricted or prohibited anchorage area
2. The vessel is not located within a SIBA where seagrass is identified in Schedule 7
3. The vessel is not anchored in a mooring area identified in Schedule 2
4. The vessel and anchor are removed after seven days.

**MO-P7 Unauthorised moorings**

Any mooring that does not hold a current resource consent or a mooring licence in accordance with the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw, is an unauthorised mooring, and must be removed from the coastal marine area.

**Rules | Ngā ture**

**Permitted activities**

**MO-R1 Moorings within mooring areas**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b>          The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, removal, use of and occupation of space by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), which is used for the purpose of mooring a vessel within a mooring area, and any associated disturbance to the seabed, but excluding moorings in the Taharoa Harbour mooring area covered by MO-R5.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The authorised mooring owner holds a current mooring licence</li> <li>2. The mooring owner is responsible for ensuring the mooring structure is inspected every three years, for structural integrity</li> <li>3. At the time of the three-yearly inspection specified in 2. above, all biofouling must be removed from the mooring rope, chain and floats and where practical from the mooring block, contained, collected and disposed of at a land-based waste disposal facility</li> </ol>	<p>Activity Status where compliance not achieved:          Condition 1: <b>PR</b> (MO-R9)          Conditions 2 to 5: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Any marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms observed or remaining on the mooring block must be notified to the Waikato Regional Council and Biosecurity NZ</li> <li>5. If the mooring and any associated structure is removed from the mooring area, it must not be relocated into any area outside the existing mooring area, unless it has been cleaned of all biofouling and dried on land for a period of three months.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

**MO-R2 Relocation of a mooring within a Mooring Area**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The relocation of an authorised mooring within the existing mooring area and any associated disturbance to the seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The relocation is undertaken by the authorised mooring owner, the Harbourmaster or their respective agents</li> <li>2. The authorised mooring owner has written approval from the Waikato Regional Council’s Harbourmaster, prior to the relocation taking place.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity Status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

**MO-R3 Removal of a mooring**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The removal of a mooring, and any associated disturbance to the seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The removal is undertaken by the authorised mooring owner or their agent and the authorised mooring owner has provided written notice to the Harbourmaster at least 5 working days before the removal; or</li> <li>2. The removal is undertaken by the Harbourmaster or their agent because either: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the mooring is unauthorised; or</li> <li>b. the mooring is to be relocated and the mooring owner has given written approval to the Harbourmaster for the relocation; and</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. All components of the mooring structure are removed from the coastal marine area excluding any screw anchor, or any mooring structure weight that is buried or partially buried in the seafloor</li> <li>4. If the mooring and any associated structure is removed from the mooring area, it must not be relocated into any area outside the existing mooring area, unless it has been cleaned of all biofouling and dried on land for a period of three months.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity Status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--

**MO-R4 Anchoring**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The erection, placement, use of and occupation of space by any structure for the purpose of temporarily anchoring a vessel, and any associated disturbance to the foreshore or seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p>	<p>Activity Status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The vessel is not anchored in an area identified in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw as being a restricted or prohibited anchorage area</li> <li>2. The vessel is not anchored in a SIBA where seagrass is identified in Schedule 7</li> <li>3. The vessel is not anchored in a mooring area identified in Schedule 2</li> <li>4. The vessel and anchor are removed after seven days.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

## Controlled activities

### MO-R5 Moorings in the Taharoa Harbour mooring area

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, use of and occupation of space by a mooring (including the vessel when tied to the mooring), within the Taharoa Harbour mooring area identified in Schedule 2, and any associated disturbance to the seabed.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. One permanent mooring is located within the Taharoa Harbour mooring area.</li> </ol> <p><b>Control is Reserved Over:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The design, construction and maintenance of the structure</li> <li>2. Management of biosecurity risks and removal of biofouling.</li> </ol>	Activity Status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

## Discretionary activities

### MO-R6 Moorings outside specified areas

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, use of and occupation of space by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), and any associated disturbance to the seabed, located:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Outside a mooring area</li> <li>2. Outside the prohibited mooring area identified in Schedule 2</li> <li>3. Outside any outstanding natural character area identified in Schedule 4, site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6, or any significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7.</li> </ol>	Activity Status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

## Non-complying activities

### MO-R7 Moorings inside specified areas

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b> The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, use of and occupation of space and any associated disturbance to the seabed, by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), located:</p>	Activity Status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---



	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Inside an outstanding natural character area identified in Schedule 4, site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6, or any significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7</li> <li>2. Outside a mooring area</li> <li>3. Outside a prohibited mooring area identified in Schedule 2.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

## Prohibited activities

### **MO-R8 Moorings within a prohibited mooring area**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The erection, placement, use of and occupation of space by any mooring within a prohibited mooring area identified in Schedule 2.</p>
--	---

### **MO-R9 Replacement of mooring consent inside a mooring area**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The replacement of an existing mooring resource consent to use and occupy space, and associated structures within a mooring area, after the 18 August 2023 (the date of notification of this plan..</p>
--	---

#### Advisory notes:

1. *Waikato Regional Council holds non-statutory information on locally known and used anchorage areas.*
2. *Waikato Regional Council has non-statutory guidance on anchorage locations.*
3. *A mooring will be deemed to be unauthorised and will be removed from the coastal marine area unless the mooring owner holds a current resource consent, or a mooring licence in accordance with the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw.*
4. *Any abandoned structure will be managed in accordance with section 19 Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 and/or the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw.*
5. *The rules in the BIO - Biosecurity chapter do not apply to vessel moorings, with the exception of the following rules, which apply to vessels:*
  - a. *BIO-R1 Discharge of contaminants from in-water cleaning of vessels and moveable structures (Permitted Activity)*
  - b. *BIOR-2 In-water cleaning of biofouling from vessels and moveable structures where: service life of antifouling is exceeded; and/or discharge of macrofouling cannot be captured; and/or level of fouling exceeds LOF2 (Discretionary activity)*
  - c. *BIOR3 In-water cleaning of biofouling from vessels and moveable structures in areas of Outstanding Natural Character and Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas (Non-complying activity)*
  - d. *BIOR-4 Discharge of marine pests from vessels to the coastal marine area (Prohibited activity).*
  - e. *BIO-R5 Biosecurity operations - permitted removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from structures, vessels, and from the coastal marine area (Permitted activity).*
6. *The Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan may also contain rules relating to marine biosecurity in accordance with the Biosecurity Act 1993.*
7. *The rules in the WD - Discharges to water chapter do not apply to vessel moorings.*

## 15 NATC – Natural character | Āhua tūturu

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Natural character describes the degree of naturalness in an area, based on the natural elements, patterns and processes, and the experiential attributes of the coastal marine area. These combine to create an overall natural character that is highest where there is least human induced modification.

The most exceptional areas of natural character have been identified as outstanding, and these require protection as a matter of national importance. However, even in areas with low overall natural character, components of high natural character may remain, and the protection of this from inappropriate development is also required.

Policy 13 of the NZCPS requires plans to identify areas where natural character is required to be preserved, and include provisions to achieve this. Outstanding natural character areas and their values are identified in Schedule 4, and included in the planning maps.

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### **NATC-O1 Preserve natural character**

The natural character of the coastal marine area is preserved by protecting it from inappropriate use and development.

#### **NATC-O2 Restore natural character**

Restore or rehabilitate the natural character of the coastal environment where appropriate.

### Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

#### **NATC-P1 Outstanding natural character**

Avoid adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics identified in Schedule 4 that contribute to the natural values of areas of outstanding natural character.

#### **NATC-P2 Other natural character**

Avoid significant adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics that contribute to natural character, and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on natural character, in all areas of the CMA that are not areas of outstanding natural character.

#### **NATC-P3 Transient or minor adverse effects on natural character**

Recognise that transient or minor adverse effects on the values and characteristics that contribute to outstanding natural character may be acceptable.

#### **NATC-P4 Restoration of natural character**

Promote the restoration or rehabilitation of natural character values and characteristics of the coastal environment, particularly in relation to estuaries, coastal indigenous vegetation and habitats, ecological corridors, improving coastal water quality and reducing the adverse effects of sediment on sensitive coastal receiving environments.

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for NATC - Natural character are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

# 16 NFL – Natural features and landscapes (Seascapes) | Ngā tirohanga whenua

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Landscape is the cumulative expression of natural and cultural features, patterns and processes in a geographical area, including human perceptions and associations. It includes natural science, heritage, cultural, aesthetic and associative values. Tangata whenua values are a key component of the associative values.

Landscapes are large areas that are perceived as a whole, and can include a number of features within them. Natural features are discrete elements within a landscape, which are generally experienced from outside the features' boundaries. Features display integrity as a whole element and can often be clearly distinguished from the surrounding landscape, which forms the context around them. Small landscapes can nest within larger landscapes. Both landscape and feature are scale dependent.

This section addresses landscape values seaward of MHWS, including estuaries and harbours, river mouths and coastal waters. The values recognised in this topic are described as seascapes to differentiate them from landward landscape values.

Policy 15 of the NZCPS requires plans to map or otherwise identify areas where natural features and natural landscapes required protection, and include provisions to achieve this. Outstanding natural features and landscapes (seascapes) are identified in Schedule 3, and included in the planning maps.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### NFL-O1 Protect Natural Features and Landscapes

The natural features and landscapes, including seascapes, of the coastal marine area are protected from inappropriate use and development.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### NFL-P1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes

Avoid adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics identified in Schedule 3 that contribute to outstanding natural features and landscapes in the coastal marine area

### NFL-P2 Other natural features and landscapes

Avoid the significant adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics that contribute to natural features and landscapes, and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on natural features and landscapes, in all areas of the CMA that are not outstanding natural features and landscapes.

### NFL-P3 Transient or minor adverse effects on natural features and landscapes

Recognise that transient or minor adverse effects on the values and characteristics that contribute to outstanding natural features and landscapes may be acceptable.

### NFL-P4 Significant geopreservation sites

Protect the significant geopreservation sites identified in Schedule 3A by:

1. Avoiding significant adverse effects of use and development on significant geological features
2. Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects of activities on significant geological features.

#### **NFL-P5 Public Amenity values**

Maintain or enhance qualities and characteristics of areas and features valued for their contribution to public amenity, with particular regard given to:

1. Avoiding a sense of encroachment or domination of built form along the coastal edge
2. Avoiding forms and location of development that effectively privatise the coastal edge
3. Recognising the contribution that open space makes to amenity values
4. Recognising that some areas derive their particular character and amenity value from existing structures, modifications or activities
5. Managing land use to address potential adverse effects of climate change induced weather variability and sea level rise on amenity
6. Encouraging design of new structures and development to enhance existing amenity values.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for NFL - Natural features and landscapes (Seascapes) are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

# 17 NH – Natural hazards | Ngā mōrearea ao tūroa

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Activities in the CMA can interact with coastal processes in a way that increases coastal hazard risk, and can also create or worsen coastal hazard risks to adjoining land, property or infrastructure. In the region there are areas of low lying land, communities and infrastructure that are currently at risk of coastal erosion or inundation, including through storm surge effects.

Policies 24 to 27 of the NZCPS set out requirements for the management of areas of coastal hazard risk. The NZCPS and RPS require the avoidance of increased coastal hazard risk or the creation of new areas of risk over at least a 100 year timeframe, and discourage hard protection structures. They also recognise that hard protection structures may be appropriate as an interim step in areas of significant existing development, or to protect regionally significant infrastructure, while transition to a long term more sustainable option is pursued.

The Ministry for the Environment’s National Adaptation Plan 2022 emphasizes the need for adaptive management planning, consistent risk management, consideration of managed retreat, prioritisation of nature-based solutions, and implementation of the NZCPS. Government guidance for local authorities places emphasis on hazard and risk assessments and community involvement in developing adaptive planning strategies. These plans are risk based and identify trigger points where the planning approach needs to be reassessed. Long term community adaptive management plans are required under the RPS for at-risk areas to identify trigger levels where management choices need to be adjusted as part of the transition to more sustainable approaches, including consideration of managed retreat. The focus of policy is on risk management (reducing risk to acceptable) and encouraging adaptation.

The coastal plan only controls activities seaward of MHWS and cannot address matters such as land use or community relocation.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### **NH-O1      Avoid increasing natural hazard risk**

Activities and development avoid increasing the risk of adverse effects from coastal hazards.

### **NH-O2      Adaptation and resilience**

Communities are resilient and can adapt to changing risks from coastal natural hazards, including those caused by climate change.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### **NH-P1      Activities subject to coastal hazards**

Use and development, including hard protection structures, is to be avoided except where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The activity avoids increasing the risk of social (including cultural), environmental and economic harm from coastal hazards
2. The hazard risk to the development and residual hazard risk after hazard mitigation measures, assessed using a risk-based approach, is low
3. The development does not cause or exacerbate risks in other areas
4. Significant adverse effects on natural coastal processes are avoided, remedied, or mitigated
5. Natural cycles of inundation, erosion and accretion and the potential for natural features to fluctuate in position over time, including movements due to climate change and sea level rise over at least the next 100 years, are taken into account in accordance with the latest guidance endorsed by the government.

#### **NH-P2 Discourage hard protection structures**

Discourage the use of new or extended hard protection structures and give priority to the use of soft protection measures to manage natural hazard risks except where:

1. The hard protection structures are existing regionally significant infrastructure or are the only practicable means to protect existing regionally significant infrastructure and alternative responses to the hazard, such as non-structural measures, restoration or enhancement of natural defences, or abandonment or relocation are not practicable
2. The hard protection structures are associated with areas of existing urban development or physical access to property and form part of a long-term adaptive management strategy developed in partnership with local government, communities and iwi and that represents the best practicable option for the future including consideration of:
  - a. an assessment of the risks to activities due to natural hazards including the projected effects of climate change over at least 100-year time frame
  - b. an assessment of options and trigger points where a change in response may be appropriate to reduce long term risk
  - c. the form and location of any hard structure to ensure it is designed to minimise adverse effects on coastal processes
  - d. the public and environmental costs and benefits of any structure protecting private property
  - e. whether the structure will result in the creation or exacerbation of hazard risk to adjoining activities
3. Consideration of and provision is made for the ability of coastal ecosystems to adapt such as by the inland migration of habitats
4. Provision is made for social and cultural values including public access and recreation
5. No adverse effects on SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A, or significant adverse effects on SIBA-B identified in Schedule 7B, regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B or areas of significant natural character arise as a consequence of the hard protection structure.

#### **NH-P3 Design of hard protection structures**

Require any hard protection structures considered appropriate under NH-P2 to be:

1. Not located on public land where the primary purpose is to protect private assets unless there is significant public or environmental benefit in doing so
2. Designed and constructed by a suitably qualified and experienced professional
3. Designed to avoid as far as practicable any adverse effects on cultural values and sites, biodiversity, beach amenity and natural character
4. Designed to ensure public access to and along the coastal marine area is not restricted, and enhanced where practicable
5. Designed to incorporate the use of 'soft' protection options, such as beach re-nourishment and planting, where practical and to retain as much natural beach buffer as possible

6. Designed to withstand coastal processes, including the potential effects of sea level rise over the projected lifetime of the structure
7. Designed to avoid any significant adverse effects from erosion or subsidence under, in front of, behind or around the ends or down-drift of the structure
8. Constructed of materials that do not contain toxic or hazardous substances
9. Subject to management plan(s) that, as a minimum, outlines long-term responsibilities for the structure, including anticipated maintenance methods, timing and funding over the design life of the structure, and the thresholds for any adaptation actions that may be required over at least 100 years.

#### **NH-P4      Adaptation to risks of coastal hazards via relocation**

Provide for the relocation of structures such as wharves, jetties and boat ramps in the coastal marine area adversely affected by natural hazards where:

1. The risk to the relocated structure from coastal hazards is low or reduced to an acceptable level
2. The structure is not used for residential purposes
3. The ability of the natural environment to adapt, such as via the landward migration of habitats, is not precluded
4. The risk to other structures, natural processes or the life supporting capacity of the environment is not increased.

#### **NH-P5      Rebuilding of structures adversely affected by natural hazards**

Existing lawfully established structures in the coastal marine area materially damaged or destroyed by a natural hazard event may only be re-built if they meet the requirements of NH-P2 and NH-P3.

#### **NH-P6      Operation of flood protection and river drainage schemes in hazard risk areas**

Provide for the use, maintenance and ongoing operation of existing (as of proposed plan notification date) lawfully established River and Flood Protection schemes that manage the natural hazard risk to people, property, infrastructure, and communities in accordance with an adaptive management strategy that includes:

1. An assessment of the risks to the scheme due to natural hazards including the effects of climate change over at least 100-year time frame
2. An assessment of options and trigger points where a change in management activity may be appropriate to reduce long term risk to the scheme
3. Consideration of the public and environmental costs and benefits of any structure protecting private property compared to the private benefit.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for NH - Natural hazards are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan. See in particular STR - Structures and occupation of space and DD - Disturbances and deposition chapters.*



# 18 NOISE – Noise and vibration | Harurutanga

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Activities that cause noise and vibration in the CMA or on adjoining land can affect the health of people, amenity values and wildlife, including marine mammals. This chapter contains objectives, policies and rules to manage the effects of noise emissions from activities within the CMA.

Waikato Regional Council is responsible for controlling noise emissions within the CMA and managing residual effects. The control of noise generated from land above MHWs is the responsibility of territorial authorities and cannot be controlled by this plan.

Noise generated in the coastal marine area can come from the operation of vessels (both commercial and recreational), marinas, temporary military training, aquaculture, and recreational activities, including vehicles on the foreshore. The threshold of reasonable noise levels in different areas of the coast will depend on the sensitivity of those areas. In addition to the noise controls in this chapter, section 16 of the RMA requires every person carrying out an activity in, on, or under the CMA to adopt the best practicable option to ensure noise emissions do not exceed a reasonable level.

Underwater noise can have an adverse effect on a range of marine animals that rely on sound to communicate, navigate, hunt and mate. Noise generated by certain underwater activities, such as blasting, marine seismic surveys and impact and vibratory piling, are required to be managed to minimise effects of noise on marine fauna, including marine mammals.

There are several New Zealand standards that apply to the measurement of noise and vibration. The Department of Conservation has a Code of Conduct for minimising acoustic disturbance to marine mammals from seismic survey operations.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### **NOISE-O1 Manage noise and vibration**

Noise and vibration from activities undertaken in the coastal marine area, including underwater noise, does not adversely affect natural character, amenity values, or compromise the health and well-being of marine fauna or people.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### **NOISE-P1 Apply best practicable option**

Apply the best practicable option to minimise the adverse effects from noise and vibration on human health, amenity values and marine fauna.

### **NOISE-P2 Recreational vessel noise**

Recreational vessels such as jet boats, personal watercraft, water-ski boats and hovercraft that exceed the noise standards in this plan, are to only operate within the personal watercraft and towing zones identified in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw, or beyond 200m off the coast.

### **NOISE-P3 Underwater noise**

Provide for the generation of underwater noise, subject to the management of any adverse effects, where that noise is associated with the following activities:

1. The operational requirements of vessels
2. Construction or operation of marine and port activities, marine and port facilities, marina activities, marine and port accessory structures and services, maritime passenger facilities and dredging
3. Sonar not including marine seismic surveys.

### **NOISE-P4 Adverse effects of noise on marine fauna**

Assess the following matters for activities that involve underwater blasting, impact and vibratory pile driving steel and concrete piles, and marine seismic surveys:

1. The health and well-being of marine fauna (including threatened and at-risk species) and people from the noise associated with the proposal
2. The management of underwater noise
3. The practicability of being able to control the underwater noise effects
4. The social and economic benefits to the community of the proposal
5. The extent to which the adverse effects of the noise will be mitigated, including on seabirds and marine mammals, and especially any adverse effects on their continued occupation of their habitat, including feeding and roosting areas and their ability to breed successfully.

Advisory note:

1. *The 2013 Code of Conduct for Minimising Acoustic Disturbance to Marine Mammals from Seismic Survey Operations is an example of best management practice.*

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### **General Standards and Terms for all activities in the NOISE – Noise and vibration chapter:**

1. Noise and vibration from activities in the coastal marine area is to be measured, assessed and managed using the relevant standards listed below:
  - a. New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound
  - b. New Zealand Standard 6802:2008 Acoustics – Environmental noise
  - c. New Zealand Standard 6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction noise
  - d. New Zealand Standard 6808:2010 Acoustics – Wind farm noise
  - e. ISO 2922:2020 – Measurement of airborne sound emitted by vessels on inland waterways and harbours.

## Permitted activities

### NOISE-R1 Permitted noise from specified activities in the coastal marine area

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Noise generated by or in association with:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Navigational aids, safety signals, warning devices, or emergency pressure relief valves</li> <li>2. Emergency work undertaken to protect human life, or to prevent loss or serious damage to property, or to minimise or prevent environmental damage</li> <li>3. The temporary deployment and operation of scientific instruments or apparatus</li> <li>4. Discharge of firearms by licensed hunters</li> <li>5. Use of vessels within the water-ski access lanes and areas or personal watercraft areas identified in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaw, or beyond 200m off the coast</li> <li>6. Pile driving involving timber piles only</li> <li>7. Authorised temporary events.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The person(s) carrying out the activity uses the best practicable option to ensure the emission of noise does not exceed a reasonable level.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--

### NOISE-R2 Recreational vessel noise

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Noise generated from recreational vessels in the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Outside of designated towing areas in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaws, the noise level at 25m from a jet boat or personal water craft pass, when measured in accordance with ISO 2922:2020, complies with:</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="margin: 10px auto; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">0700 to 1900 hours</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">85 dB SEL</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">1900 to 0700 hours</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">75 dB SEL</td> </tr> </table> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Vessel noise limits for jet boats and personal watercraft only apply outside designated towing areas in the operative Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaws.</i></li> </ol>	0700 to 1900 hours	85 dB SEL	1900 to 0700 hours	75 dB SEL	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
0700 to 1900 hours	85 dB SEL					
1900 to 0700 hours	75 dB SEL					

### NOISE-R3 Noise from military training activities

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Noise generated from military training activities for defence purposes, undertaken in accordance with the Defence Act 1990.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. For weapons firing (excluding blasting):             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. There is a minimum distance from the activity to all notional boundaries of:                 <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0700 to 1900 hours</td> <td>500m</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1900 to 0700 hours</td> <td>1,250m</td> </tr> </table> </li> <li>b. Where minimum separation distances cannot be met, peak sound when measured at the notional boundary, does not exceed:                 <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0700 to 1900 hours</td> <td>95 dB L<sub>peak</sub></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1900 to 0700 hours</td> <td>85 dB L<sub>peak</sub></td> </tr> </table> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Fixed stationary noise when measured at the notional boundary, does not exceed the following limits:                 <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>dB L<sub>Aeq</sub></th> <th>dB L<sub>Amax</sub></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0700 to 1900 hours</td> <td>55</td> <td rowspan="2" style="text-align: center;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1900 to 2200 hours</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2200 to 0700 hours</td> <td>45</td> <td>75</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </li> </ol>	0700 to 1900 hours	500m	1900 to 0700 hours	1,250m	0700 to 1900 hours	95 dB L <sub>peak</sub>	1900 to 0700 hours	85 dB L <sub>peak</sub>		dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	dB L <sub>Amax</sub>	0700 to 1900 hours	55	-	1900 to 2200 hours	50	2200 to 0700 hours	45	75	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
0700 to 1900 hours	500m																				
1900 to 0700 hours	1,250m																				
0700 to 1900 hours	95 dB L <sub>peak</sub>																				
1900 to 0700 hours	85 dB L <sub>peak</sub>																				
	dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	dB L <sub>Amax</sub>																			
0700 to 1900 hours	55	-																			
1900 to 2200 hours	50																				
2200 to 0700 hours	45	75																			

### Restricted discretionary activities

#### NOISE-R4 Underwater noise generation

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> Noise from impact and vibratory pile driving (excluding timber piles), and marine seismic survey.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity is not located within:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. any habitat identified in Schedule 7, or containing at-risk species</li> <li>b. an historic heritage site, identified in Schedule 5</li> <li>c. a marine reserve, taiāpure or mātaītai reserve, or a marine mammal protected area under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The activity is undertaken in accordance with the Department of Conservation Code of Conduct for minimising acoustic disturbance to marine mammals from seismic survey operations 2013, or any subsequent update.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

	<p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The health and wellbeing of marine fauna (including threatened and at-risk species) from noise generated from the proposal</li> <li>2. Effects of noise in people</li> <li>3. The management of underwater noise</li> <li>4. The practicability of controlling the underwater noise effects</li> <li>5. Location, extent, timing, duration and construction methods</li> <li>6. The extent to which non-transitory or more than minor adverse effects on threatened or at-risk species (including Maui dolphin and Bryde's whale) are avoided</li> <li>7. Consent duration and monitoring.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### NOISE-R5 Noise generated from blasting and detonation of munitions

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Noise generated from blasting and detonation of munitions within the coastal marine area, not otherwise permitted under NOISE-R3.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity is not located within: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. any habitat identified as a significant value, in Schedule 7, or listed as a threatened or at-risk species</li> <li>b. an historic heritage site, identified in Schedule 5</li> <li>c. a marine reserve, taiāpure or mātaītai reserve, or a marine mammal protected area under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The activity is undertaken during daylight hours and the peak sound pressure when measured 1m from the façade of any occupied building does not exceed 120 dB <math>L_{zpeak}</math>.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	--	---

# 19 PA – Public access and recreation | Ara tumatanui me ngā mahi a rēhia

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

The maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the CMA is a matter of national importance under the RMA and an objective of the NZCPS. There is a public expectation of having free, safe walking access to and along the coast and the ability to undertake recreational activities in the coastal marine area.

Access within the CMA relies on access to the coast. The provision of access to the coast, and on the landward side of the coastline and on some foreshore areas is primarily the responsibility of territorial authorities. There is a need for integrated management between these agencies and communities when determining appropriate routes or levels of public access.

Waikato Regional Council is responsible for managing public access on some foreshore areas and in the coastal marine area. Any use and development must consider the importance of free, safe and practical public access and the ability to use and appreciate areas of public open space.

Subdivision, use and development of land in the coastal environment can result in the reduction or loss of opportunities for public walking access to, along and through the CMA. Public access can also be threatened by coastal erosion and sea level rise.

A restriction on public walking access should only be considered in exceptional circumstances when it is necessary to protect specific values or address conflicts, and alternative linking access should be provided in these situations.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### PA-O1 Maintain and enhance public access

Public access to, along and through the coastal marine area is maintained and enhanced, except where a restriction on public access is considered necessary.

### PA-O2 Provide for public use and cultural practices

Recognise the need for public open space in the coastal marine area to provide for public use, recreation and enjoyment and traditional cultural practices.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### PA-P1 Protecting public access

Maintain public access by avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on public access.

### PA-P2 Maintaining and enhancing public use and recreation

Promote maintenance and enhancement opportunities for public use and recreation of public open space in the coastal marine area and for cultural purposes, including by:

1. Retaining and enhancing the connection of areas of public open space
2. Providing access to kaimoana and mahinga kai
3. Providing access to sites of historical and/or cultural importance
4. Improving outdoor recreation opportunities
5. Improving access to surf breaks
6. Providing access for people with disabilities.

While taking account of future needs for public space and the likely impacts of climate change and coastal processes.

#### **PA-P3      Restriction of walking access**

Only allow restriction of public walking access to, along and adjacent to the coastal marine area where the restriction is necessary for:

1. The protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna
2. The protection of sites and activities of cultural value to Māori
3. The protection of historic heritage values
4. The protection of public health or safety
5. The avoidance or reduction of conflicts between public uses
6. Defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990
7. Temporary activities or special events
8. Ensuring a level of security consistent with the purpose of a resource consent; or
9. In other exceptional circumstances sufficient to justify the restriction.

And where practicable, provide alternative routes or methods of public access at all times, prior to the imposition of restrictions.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for PA - Public access and recreation are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan. See in particular STR – Structures and occupation of space and DD – Disturbances and deposition.*

## 20 SASM – Ngā whenua tapu a te Māori | Sites and areas of significance to Māori

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

The RMA contains specific provisions relating to tangata whenua that recognise the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga, the practice of kaitiakitanga, and the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi). (sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8). All persons exercising functions and powers under the RMA must recognise and provide for these matters.

Sites and areas of significance to Māori include sites, places and features of historical, cultural and spiritual significance to tangata whenua. In the coastal marine area, they may include seascape features, reefs and toka (rocks), wāhi tapu, urupā, tauranga waka (canoe landing sites), wetlands (ngā repo), mahinga kai (food gathering areas), marae and taonga. It is important that these sites and areas of significance to Māori are protected, and that the effects of activities within or in proximity to such sites and areas are assessed and appropriately managed.

Taonga, or treasure, is a term that carries deep spiritual meaning and can include things that cannot be seen or touched, such as the mauri or wairua of a particular place or area. In other instances, taonga may be kaimoana species prized by a particular iwi or hapū associated with that place.

Sites and areas of significance to Māori carry deep levels of meaning and associations for tangata whenua. To Māori the physical landscape is inseparable from the associated cultural narratives about tūpuna, events, occupations and cultural practices. These provide a tangible connection to their whenua (land), moana (sea), significant historical events and ancestry. Even where such sites no longer exist physically, memory of them remains an important part of the cultural landscape. It is expected that recognition will be given to the particular significance and the historical and ongoing associations that tangata whenua have with their taonga (including areas, places, practices, landscapes and resources.)

Sites identified in Schedule 6 have been identified by Waikato Regional Council from existing sources, including treaty settlement and iwi planning documents, but are not necessarily all sites of significance to Māori in the coastal marine area. Some important sites have a "silent file" status and are not identified in Schedule 6. Only Māori can identify their taonga (and other cultural and traditional values). The plan provides for this identification following consultation and the participation of tangata whenua in their identification.

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### **SASM-01 Sites and areas of significance to Māori**

Sites and areas of significance to Māori are recognised, protected and maintained.

#### **SASM-02 Relationship of tangata whenua with sites and areas of significance**

The relationship of tangata whenua with their taonga, and sites and areas of significance in the coastal marine area, including the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki, are recognised and provided for.



### **SASM-O3 Restore and enhance areas of cultural significance**

The restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of areas of cultural significance to Māori.

## **Policies | Ngā kaupapahere**

### **SASM-P1 Managing activities in scheduled sites and areas of significance to Māori**

Ensure activities that occur on or adjacent to sites and areas of significance to Māori, including those sites and areas identified in Schedule 6, do not compromise the cultural, spiritual or heritage values, interests or associations of importance to tangata whenua.

### **SASM-P2 Access for customary activities**

Maintain and enhance tangata whenua access to sites of cultural significance in order to undertake customary activities, including mahinga kai.

### **SASM-P3 Restricting use and access for customary activities**

Avoid use and development that would restrict the access of tangata whenua to sites used for cultural practices, mahinga kai and areas of cultural significance in the common marine and coastal area, unless:

1. The restriction is consistent with one of the matters listed in PA-P3 and
2. Alternative access can specifically be provided for; or
3. The effects of the loss of access can be adequately remedied or mitigated.

### **SASM-P4 Identifying sites and areas of significance to Māori**

Recognise the sensitivity associated with identifying sites, areas and taonga of significance to Māori where information may be retained and managed by tangata whenua.

### **SASM-P5 Restoration and enhancement of areas of cultural significance to Māori**

Provide for the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of sites and areas of cultural significance, including significant cultural seascapes and culturally sensitive areas.

### **SASM-P6 Assessment of sites and areas of significance to Māori**

Tangata whenua may identify other sites and areas of significance to Māori using the following assessment criteria:

<b><i>Mauri</i></b>	<p>Ko te mauri me te mana o te wāhi, te taonga rānei, e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori.</p> <p>The mauri (for example life force) and mana (for example prestige) of the place or resource holds special significance to Māori.</p>
<b><i>Wāhi tapu</i></b>	<p>Ko tērā wāhi, taonga rānei he wāhi tapu, arā, he tino whakahirahira ki ngā tikanga, ki ngā puri mahara, ki te taha wairua hoki o te Māori.</p> <p>The place or resource is a wāhi tapu of special, cultural, historic and or spiritual importance to Māori.</p>
<b><i>Kōrero-o-mua historical</i></b>	<p>Ko tērā wāhi e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori ki roto i ōna kōrero-o-mua me ōna tikanga.</p>

	The place has special historical and cultural significance to Māori.
<b><i>Rawa tūturu customary resources</i></b>	He wāhi tērā e kawea ai ngā rawa tūturu a te Māori. The place provides important customary resources for Māori
<b><i>Hiahiatanga tūturu customary needs</i></b>	He wāhi tērā e pupuru nei i ngā tikanga ahurea, wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a venue or repository for Māori cultural practices and spiritual values.
<b><i>Whakaaronui o te wā contemporary esteem</i></b>	He wāhi rongonui tērā ki ngā Māori, arā, he wāhi whakaahuru, he wāhi whakawaihanga, he wāhi tuku mātauranga rānei. The place has special amenity, architectural or educational significance to Māori.

#### Explanation of terms:

**Hiahiatanga tūturu** means those parts of the landscape that are important for the exercise of tikanga – the principles and practices to maintain the mauri of parts of the natural world. This might be a place where a particular ritual is performed or a particular feature that is noted for its ability to identify the boundaries of ancestral tribal lands acknowledged in iwi or hapū oratory.

**Kōrero-o-mua** refer to places that are important due to particular historical and traditional associations (in pre-European history).

**Rawa tūturu** means the cultural value of places that provide, or once provided, important customary resources to tangata whenua. Customary resources might include food and materials necessary to sustain life in pre-European and post-European times.

**Whakaaronui o te wā** refers to the contemporary relationships tangata whenua have with Māori heritage places. Appreciation of features for their beauty, pleasantness, and aesthetic values is important to tangata whenua. Recreational values attributed to features are also important to tangata whenua as they illustrate the relationship that individuals and groups can have with the environment.

## Rules | Ngā ture

#### Advisory notes:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for SASM - Ngā whenua tapu o ngā iwi - Sites and areas of significance to Māori - are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*
2. *The IM – Integrated management chapter, in particular IM-P7 and IM-P8 has specific relevance for this chapter.*

# 21 SB – Surf breaks | Ngā ngaru moana

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Surfing is a significant recreational activity and contributes to the local economy of the region, in areas such as Raglan and Whangamatā, supporting a variety of commercial and tourism activities.

Surf breaks are finite natural features that depend on particular combinations of coastal processes to produce surfable waves.

Policy 16 of the NZCPS requires that the surf breaks of national significance are protected by ensuring activities do not adversely affect them.

Four of the 17 nationally significant surf breaks listed in Schedule 1 of the NZCPS are located in the region, being the Whangamatā Bar, and Manu Bay, Whale Bay and Indicators at Raglan. Surf breaks of both national and regional significance have been identified in Schedule 8 and shown on planning maps.

Activities that may adversely affect surf breaks and swell corridors are required to consider the scale and type of effect in applications for resource consent.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### SB-O1 Protect significant surf breaks

Significant surf breaks are protected from inappropriate use and development.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### SB-P1 Significant surf breaks

Protect significant surf breaks, and their use and enjoyment by:

1. Avoiding adverse effects on nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A.
2. Avoiding significant adverse effects, and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects on regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B.

### SB-P2 Considering effects on surf breaks from activities

Have regard to the following effects on the significant surf breaks identified in Schedules 8A or 8B when considering applications for resource consent that may affect a surf break or swell corridor:

1. Adverse effects on the quality or consistency of the surf break, by considering:
  - a. changes to swell within the swell corridor, including reflection, refraction or diffraction of wave energy
  - b. changes to natural coastal sediment processes and dynamics
  - c. changes to the morphology of the foreshore or seabed
2. Effects on other qualities that contribute to the use and enjoyment of the surf break including water quality, amenity and cultural heritage and access to the surf break.

## Rules | Ngā ture

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for SB - Surf breaks are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

## 22 STR - Structures and occupation of space | Ngā hanganga i te takutai

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Structures in the coastal marine area can be important in enabling people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing, and some may have historical significance. The growth of the Waikato region and increase in number of people living next to the coast means there is an ongoing demand for new structures in the coastal marine area.

The most common structures in the Waikato coastal marine area include pipes, navigation aids, bridges, culverts, seawalls, maimai, whitebait stands, marinas, wharves, jetties, boat ramps and research and monitoring equipment.

The effects of establishing, using and maintaining structures in the coastal marine area vary from siting temporary structures with minor effects through to significant infrastructure with potentially significant adverse effects, and may require compatible land use and access. Structures must be designed to take into account coastal processes and natural hazards, including future likely effects from climate change and sea level rise.

Under section 12 of the RMA no person may erect, reconstruct, place, alter, extend, remove or demolish any structure, unless expressly allowed by a national environmental standard, a rule in the plan or a resource consent.

Waikato Regional Council can impose charges for occupation of the coastal marine area, provided the charging regime is included in the plan. Council has decided not to include a charging regime in the plan at this time.

#### Advisory note:

1. *Structures for aquaculture activities are addressed in the AQA - Aquaculture chapter of the plan. The rules in the STR – Structures and occupation of space chapter do not apply to aquaculture activities, with the exception of STR-R8 Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure and STR-R9 Removal or demolition of any structure (not involving the use of explosives).*

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### **STR-O1 Recognise and provide for structures in appropriate locations**

Structures that depend upon the use of natural and physical resources in the coastal marine area, or have a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area, are recognised and provided for in appropriate locations.

#### **STR-O2 Location and design of structures**

Structures are appropriately located and designed to ensure safe and efficient use of space, and to minimise adverse effects, including on indigenous biodiversity, natural character, natural features and landscapes, historic heritage and tangata whenua values, and avoid any significant existing or future coastal hazard risk.

### **STR-O3 Construction, maintenance and removal of structures**

Construction, maintenance and removal of structures is carried out in a manner that protects coastal processes, natural character and other values, does not constitute a hazard to navigation and is compatible with other uses of the coastal marine area and adjacent land.

### **STR-O4 Exclusive occupation of the coastal marine area**

Users of the coastal marine area are not lawfully excluded from using any structure or the area it occupies, unless exclusive occupation is necessary.

### **STR-O5 Beneficial structures**

Structures are provided for in appropriate locations to enable public access and navigation, Māori cultural activities and customary use in accordance with tikanga Māori, public health and safety, and scientific research and monitoring.

## **Policies | Ngā kaupapahere**

### **STR-P1 Structures associated with activities that are generally appropriate**

Recognise structures that have a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area and are associated with the following activities are generally appropriate, provided they avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects on:

1. New and existing regionally significant infrastructure
2. Te Ariki Tahi (Sugarloaf Wharf) and Kōpū Marine Precinct development areas
3. Marinas in appropriate locations that are integrated with appropriate land use and access.
4. Facilities that provide public recreational use and access that is dependent on a coastal location, including boat maintenance facilities
5. Existing River and Flood Protection Schemes
6. Customary activities such as whare waka, tauranga waka or whare wānanga
7. Scientific research and monitoring.

### **STR-P2 Location of structures to avoid adverse effects**

Require structures to be located to avoid adverse effects on the values of areas identified as:

1. Areas of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4
2. Outstanding natural features and landscapes (seascapes), identified in Schedule 3
3. Sites and areas of significance to Māori, identified in Schedule 6
4. SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A
5. Any gazetted marine mammal sanctuary or marine reserve
6. Nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A

and to avoid significant adverse effects, and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on:

1. Historic heritage sites identified in Schedule 5
2. Regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B
3. Navigable river mouths
4. Any mooring area shown in the maps to this plan.

### **STR-P3 Design of structures**

Ensure that structures in the coastal marine area:

1. Integrate with land use and access where required
2. Are designed, maintained and managed to ensure structural integrity, taking into account climate change and avoiding as far as practicable adverse effects on coastal processes
3. Do not create a navigational safety hazard
4. Manage any biosecurity risk to minimise the risk of introduction or spread of harmful aquatic organisms and marine pests in accordance with the BIO - Biosecurity provisions of this plan.

### **STR-P4 Structures for public benefit**

Enable structures for public benefit in appropriate locations, subject to the appropriate management of adverse effects and consideration of natural hazard policy requirements, where the structure is to provide for:

1. Public access and use of the coastal marine area, including for Māori cultural use or recreational activities
2. Public health and safety, including navigational aids
3. Scientific research or monitoring
4. The efficient operation of regionally significant infrastructure
5. Restoration of natural character, biodiversity, and ecosystem processes
6. The protection of historic heritage sites.

### **STR-P5 Occupation of space in the coastal marine area**

Structures and related activities occupying space within the common marine and coastal area should be established and operated in a manner that does not unreasonably restrict or prevent other users from accessing or using the coastal marine area.

### **STR-P6 Removal of abandoned or derelict structures**

Provide for the removal of abandoned, unused or derelict structures (including removal of consented structures) from the coastal marine area, including where such structures are:

1. Having an adverse effect on cultural or natural heritage values
2. Causing a navigation safety risk
3. Endangering public health and safety; or
4. Restricting public access to and along the coastal marine area.

### **STR-P7 Maintenance and repair of existing structures**

Enable existing lawful structures to be maintained and repaired to ensure structural integrity, improve efficiency, and address health and safety and navigational safety issues provided the intensity and scale of any adverse effects of the structure or activity are not increased.

### **STR-P8 Minor extension and alteration of existing structures**

Provide for the minor extension or alteration of existing lawful structures where it will result in more efficient use of the structure or reduce the need for a new structure and any adverse effects are appropriately avoided, remedied or mitigated.

### **STR-P9 Recognise when hard protection structures may be appropriate**

Recognise that hard protection structures may be the only practicable means to protect regionally significant infrastructure, marae, significant cultural areas, or public assets from coastal hazard risk during the lifetime of this plan.

#### **STR-P10 Hard protection structures to protect private property generally not allowed**

Hard protection structures to protect private property from natural hazard risk will generally not be allowed.

#### **STR-P11 Public access associated with erosion protection structures**

Ensure existing and new erosion protection structures do not prevent public access to and along the coastal marine area, unless a restriction on public access is necessary due to location and public safety.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### Advisory notes:

1. *The rules in this chapter do not apply to aquaculture and moorings.*
2. *In accordance with section 30(1)(d)(ii) of the RMA, coastal permits relating to the occupation of space apply only to land that is common marine and coastal area.*
3. *Structures in the CMA may be “buildings” for the purposes of the Building Act 2004. As such they may require building consent (regardless of their status under the RMA, including any rules in this plan) and must comply with the Building Code (regardless of the need or not for a building consent).*
4. *Any discharge to the CMA associated with a structure may also require resource consent - refer to the WD - Discharges to Water rules of this plan.*
5. *It is an offence under the Marine Reserves Act 1971 to erect any structure in a marine reserve.*

### **General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter**

The following standards and terms apply to **STR-R1, STR-R2, STR-R3, STR-R4, STR-R5, STR-R6, STR-R7, STR-R8, STR-R9, STR-R10, and STR-R11** for which compliance is required for these permitted or controlled activities:

- A. To erect, use, place, construct, alter, extend, maintain, upgrade, remove or demolish a new or existing structure:
  1. The structure is not placed on and/or there is no disturbance to or damage of:
    - a. any historic heritage site identified in Schedule 5, except where Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga approval has been obtained
    - b. any site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
    - c. any habitat identified as a SIBA-A in Schedule 7
  2. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use, and an emergency spill plan is in place to address any unforeseen release of contaminants from equipment being used for the activity
  3. Any materials used to erect the structure are free of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
  4. The extent of any disturbance is limited to the minimum required to undertake the activity
  5. Public access to and along the coastal marine area is maintained and not restricted except where necessary to protect health and safety in relation to any construction, demolition or removal activities
  6. There is no damage to public facilities or infrastructure, such as roads, reserves, recreational facilities, stopbanks, and flood gates
  7. Sand, shell, shingle or natural material is not removed or moved to any alternative location unless stated otherwise in the relevant rule



8. The structure is maintained in a safe condition at all times
  9. The activity does not damage any river protection works or any existing structure except where the activity is to remove or demolish a structure
  10. The activity complies with the standards and terms for all noise rules in the NOISE - Noise and vibration chapter of this plan
  11. All equipment, materials or rubbish is removed at the completion of the activity
  12. Any disturbance is remedied within 48 hours after the completion of the activity
  13. Any change in water quality is not detectable within 24 hours after completion of the activity.
- B. For existing structures and, following completion of the construction of structures where these standards and terms apply to erect, construct, modify, alter, extend or reconstruct a structure:
1. Any erosion as a result of the structure is remedied as soon as practicable
  2. The structure is maintained in a safe and structurally sound condition at all times and kept clear of debris
  3. The structure is maintained free of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
  4. Public access to and along the coastal marine area is maintained and not restricted except where necessary to protect health and safety in relation to use and occupation of the structure.

## Permitted activities

### STR-R1 Occupation and use of the coastal marine area by existing lawful structures

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The occupation and use of the common marine and coastal area by lawfully established structures that existed as at the date of notification of this plan, or were previously authorised.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The structure complies with all relevant rules in this chapter</li> <li>2. The structure owner provides, if requested by the Waikato Regional Council:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. clear written or photographic evidence the structure existed at the date of notification of this plan; or</li> <li>b. a copy of the necessary current authorisation(s) for the structure.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the occupation of the common marine and coastal area with a structure under section 12(2) of the RMA.</i></li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

### STR-R2 Temporary structures

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Erect, place, use or occupy space by any temporary structure (excluding structures for the purpose of aquaculture or mooring).</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The structure is located at least 20m from any flood gate, culvert, bridge or sand or gravel mining operation (unless the structure is associated with those activities/structures).</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b>
--	--	---

### STR-R3 Maimai structures

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Erect, reconstruct, use, place, alter or extend a maimai structure in the coastal marine area, including the occupation of space.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR – Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. No clearance of, or damage to, indigenous vegetation is undertaken, other than immediately underneath the maimai, and the minimum clearance necessary to maintain single file foot access to the maimai</li> <li>3. The footprint of the maimai is no more than 10 square metres</li> <li>4. The height of the structure does not exceed 3m</li> <li>5. The structure is maintained in a structurally safe condition at all times</li> <li>6. The maimai does not impede the use of navigable harbour or estuary channels.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

**STR-R4 Whitebait stands**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Erect, reconstruct, use, place, alter or extend a whitebait stand structure in the coastal marine area, including the occupation of space.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. The structure is open piled, does not obstruct coastal processes, restrict public access or impede the flow of water or use of navigation channels and is kept free of debris</li> <li>3. The structure does not extend out into the river from the river bank for more than 10 per cent of the river width, or 5m, whichever is the lesser</li> <li>4. The deck does not exceed four square metres</li> <li>5. The structure is maintained in a structurally sound condition at all times</li> <li>6. Public access to the coastal marine area is maintained</li> <li>7. The structure does not damage any river protection works or any existing structure</li> <li>8. The structure is not used for living accommodation</li> <li>9. The owner of the structure notifies Waikato Regional Council in writing of the location of the structure at least 20 working days prior to commencing construction</li> <li>10. Where the river width in which the structure is to be located is less than 10m</li> <li>11. Any erosion as a result of the structure is remedied as soon as practicable.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	--	--

**STR-R5 Monitoring or sampling structures**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Erect, place, alter, use, or occupy the coastal marine area by any equipment, measuring apparatus or similar device for the purpose of</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b>
--	---	---

	<p>carrying out scientific research or monitoring, including inspections, surveys, investigations, tests, measurements or taking samples.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. There is a functional need for the structure to be located in the coastal marine area</li> <li>3. The structure does not modify coastal processes</li> <li>4. The structure is in place for no longer than three months per deployment (excluding equipment used for civil defence or emergency that is inspected annually or after storm events) and removed after use</li> <li>5. The structure does not occupy an area greater than 3m<sup>2</sup> in any location</li> <li>6. The structure is clear of debris and maintained in a structurally sound condition, restrained and secure at all times</li> <li>7. The structure does not cause a hazard to navigation safety and is not located in any marked channel</li> <li>8. The structure is not used for commercial aquaculture activities or erosion control</li> <li>9. The structure is not located in or accessed through any SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**STR-R6 Navigational aids**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Erect, construct, occupy, alter, extend, remove, or use navigational aids in the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. It is installed by Waikato Regional Council, Maritime New Zealand or their agents</li> <li>3. The structure is clear of debris and maintained in a safe condition at all times</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Navigational aids require approval from the Maritime New Zealand, in accordance with the Maritime Transport Act, 1994.</i></li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

**STR-R7 Waikato Regional Council structures for erosion control**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Erect, construct, occupy, alter, use, or extend a structure and associated disturbance, for the purpose of erosion control to stabilise the bank of a river or stream.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. The activity is undertaken by, or on behalf of, Waikato Regional Council for River and Flood Protection Schemes</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. The structure is clear of debris and maintained in a safe condition at all times</li> <li>4. Safe fish passage is provided both upstream and downstream of the structure</li> <li>5. The design, construction and maintenance of the structure is sufficient to keep the structure in place and takes into account sea level rise projected over no less than 100 years</li> <li>6. Placement is against the eroding river or stream bank, is physically attached to the bank and does not exceed 50 metres in length</li> <li>7. The structure does not decrease the cross-sectional area of the river or stream and does not extend seaward past the river or stream mouth.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**STR-R8 Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure in the coastal marine area (excluding seawalls).</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b>
--	--	---

**STR-R9 Removal or demolition of any structure**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Removal or demolition of any abandoned, redundant or unused structure in the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. The structure is determined to be abandoned or redundant</li> <li>3. The removal or demolition activity does not involve the use of explosives</li> <li>4. All redundant material is completely removed from the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. There will be no adverse effects on coastal processes from the removal or demolition of the structure, and it does not lead to increased erosion or scour.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

**STR-R10 Maintenance of existing regionally significant infrastructure**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Maintenance and operation of existing regionally significant infrastructure.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. Adequate clearances are maintained for the safe passage of vessels under overhead cables where located above the surface of navigable water measured at MHWS</li> <li>3. The location and/or clearances of overhead or underwater cables is adequately indicated on signs erected on both sides of</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b>
--	--	---

	<p>the waterway</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Any stormwater discharge does not cause erosion or scouring at the point of discharge or in the inter-tidal area</li> <li>5. Any stormwater structure is either buried or extends no more than one metre into the coastal marine area</li> <li>6. Any inundation or erosion occurring as a result of and beyond the structure is remedied as soon as practicable.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

## Controlled activities

### STR-R11 Minor upgrading or alterations to existing lawful structures

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b>  Minor upgrading or alterations of an existing lawful structure, and associated vehicle use, in the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The activity complies with the General Standards and Terms for activities in the STR - Structures and occupation of space chapter</li> <li>2. Any extension or alteration does not increase the existing footprint in terms of its length, area or height by more than 5% of the original authorisation</li> <li>3. The activity does not cause erosion or scour of the foreshore or seabed</li> <li>4. There is no substantial change in appearance of the structure (for the avoidance of doubt repainting does not substantially alter appearance).</li> </ol> <p><b>Control reserved over</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Location, duration, method, timing and notification of works</li> <li>2. Design, construction, maintenance and decommissioning of structure</li> <li>3. Monitoring and information requirements</li> <li>4. Modification of coastal or ecosystem processes</li> <li>5. The extent and nature of effects on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. other authorised structures or activities</li> <li>b. disturbance to the foreshore and seabed</li> <li>c. sediment movement and erosion</li> <li>d. water quality</li> <li>e. tangata whenua cultural values</li> <li>f. natural character and amenity values</li> <li>g. features and landscape</li> <li>h. shellfish beds or other habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7</li> <li>i. public access</li> <li>j. surf breaks</li> <li>k. timing and use of vehicles</li> <li>l. navigation</li> <li>m. noise.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

## Restricted discretionary activities

### STR-R12 Structures to protect regionally significant infrastructure

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> Erect, construct, occupy or use a hard protection structure in the coastal marine area to protect nationally or regional significant infrastructure.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The proposed location and design of the structure is the only practical means to protect the infrastructure that is of national or regional significance</li> <li>2. The structure is not located within any:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Outstanding natural feature or landscape identified in Schedule 3</li> <li>b. Outstanding natural character area identified in Schedule 4</li> <li>c. Historic heritage site or item identified in Schedule 5</li> <li>d. Significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7</li> <li>e. Significant surf break identified in Schedule 8</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The structure is part of an adaptive management strategy.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Necessity of the protection works</li> <li>2. Location, method, timing and notification of works</li> <li>3. Design, construction, maintenance and decommissioning of structure</li> <li>4. Duration of consent</li> <li>5. Alternative locations</li> <li>6. Modification of coastal and ecosystem processes</li> <li>7. Cumulative effects</li> <li>8. Management of biosecurity risks</li> <li>9. Management of natural hazard risk</li> <li>10. Noise</li> <li>11. The extent and nature of effects on:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. other authorised structures or activities</li> <li>b. water quality</li> <li>c. sediment movement and erosion</li> <li>d. natural character, features and landscape</li> <li>e. shellfish beds or other marine biodiversity habitat</li> <li>f. amenity values, public access and surf breaks</li> <li>g. navigation.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>D</b></p>
--	---	--

## Discretionary activities

### STR-R13 New structures in the coastal marine area

	<p><b>Activity status DIS</b> Erect, construct, occupy or use of any structure that is not otherwise provided for by a specific rule in this plan.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b></p>
--	---	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It is not located in any area identified as historic heritage identified in Schedule 5</li> <li>2. It is not located on, or in, a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**STR-R14 Extension or reconstruction of existing lawful structures**

	<p><b>Activity status DIS</b>          Extension or reconstruction of any existing lawful structure.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It is not located in any area identified as historic heritage identified in Schedule 5, or as a site or area of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6</li> <li>2. It is not located on, or in, any significant indigenous biodiversity areas identified in Schedule 7.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	--	--

**STR-R15 Reconstruction or alteration of a structure after substantial and material damage**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b>          Reconstruction or alteration of a structure in the coastal marine area that involves the rebuilding of the structure after substantial and material damage as a result of natural hazard events.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

**STR-R16 New regionally significant infrastructure**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b>          Erect, construct, occupy or use of new regionally significant infrastructure, and associated vehicle use.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

**STR-R17 New marina area or extension to an existing marina area**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b>          Erect, construct, alter, place or extend any structure and occupy space for a marina and/or marina area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The structure is not within an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, or a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	--	--

**Non-complying activities**

**STR-R18 New hard protection structures**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b>          Erect, reconstruct, alter, extend a hard protection structure in the coastal marine area for the primary purpose of protecting private property.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

**STR-R19 Structures in significant areas, including significant indigenous biodiversity areas**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b>          Erect, construct, occupy or use any structure, not otherwise subject to another rule in this plan, in any:</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Outstanding natural character area identified in Schedule 4</li><li>2. Significant historic heritage site or item identified in Schedule 5</li><li>3. SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A.</li></ol>	
--	--	--

## Prohibited activities

### STR-R20 Any structure used for living accommodation

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> Use or occupation of any structure in the coastal marine area used primarily as living accommodation.</p>
--	---



## 23 WAQ – Water quality | Kounga wai

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

High water quality underpins the well-being of tangata whenua and communities and their ability to use the resources of the coastal marine area.

Water quality within the coastal marine area is affected by discharges from land and freshwater from the diverse catchments in the region. Land use change, including increasing land use intensity and urban development, is placing pressure on some coastal receiving environments. One of the key issues affecting the Hauraki Gulf (Tīkapa Moana) is water quality degradation and ecosystem decline. The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 requires the protection and enhancement of water quality.

Contaminants from land-based activities and discharges to freshwater are managed under the Waikato Regional Plan. The coastal marine area, particularly estuaries and harbours, is the receiving environment for discharges from land and freshwater bodies arising from land use activities. The NPS-FM is anticipated to achieve improvements in freshwater quality, which will in turn improve coastal water quality through a reduction in contaminant loads to freshwater, and thus benefit the marine receiving environment.

The plan identifies three water classification types – open coast, estuarine and degraded estuarine. Water quality is required to be maintained, or enhanced where degraded, to support the natural functioning of ecosystems, the mauri of water, and the cultural, economic and social values of coastal water.

Policy 21 of the NZCPS requires areas where coastal water quality has deteriorated to be identified and provisions included in plans to address improving the water quality to support relevant activities, ecosystems and natural habitats.

The Firth of Thames and Whiritoa Lagoon are identified as degraded water bodies. Activities within these areas need to demonstrate they are not contributing to further water quality degradation.

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### **WAQ-O1 Maintain high water quality**

Water quality is maintained where it is high and improved in areas where water quality is degraded.

#### **WAQ-O2 Protect the mauri and life supporting capacity of coastal water**

The mauri, life-supporting capacity, and the community and recreational values of coastal water are protected and, where appropriate, enhanced.

### Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

#### **WAQ-P1 Water quality**

Avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of activities to maintain:

1. The life-supporting capacity of coastal water
2. The mauri and wairua of coastal water

3. The integrity and functioning of natural coastal processes
4. The ability of coastal water to provide for public use and enjoyment.

#### **WAQ-P2 Water quality standards and trigger levels**

Apply water quality standards and trigger levels to the water quality units contained in Schedule 9 so that:

1. Where existing water quality is higher than the standards and/or trigger levels, no degradation of existing water quality occurs
2. In areas where water quality does not meet a standard or trigger levels, water quality is enhanced, including by reducing cumulative contaminant loads.

#### **WAQ-P3 Reduction in contaminant loading**

Require discharges to adopt the best practicable option to reduce contaminant loadings prior to discharge.

#### **WAQ-P4 Degraded areas of water**

Require activities in areas identified in Schedule 9C as having degraded water quality to not contribute to any further degradation of water quality, including addressing any cumulative effects.

#### **WAQ-P5 Activities improving water quality or biodiversity**

Encourage activities that will contribute to improvements in coastal water quality and biodiversity, particularly in areas identified in Schedule 9C as having degraded water quality.

#### **WAQ-P6 Review of consent conditions**

In areas where monitoring indicates that water quality standards are being breached and/or trigger values for toxicants are potentially being met or exceeded, the Waikato Regional Council may review the conditions of relevant consents in accordance with section 128(1)(b) of the RMA.

## **Rules | Ngā ture**

### Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for WAQ - Water quality are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

## 24 WD – Discharges to water | Rūkenga ki te wai

### Overview | Tirohanga whānui

Discharges can be a source of contaminants that affects coastal water quality. Discharges into the coastal marine area can occur from both point and non-point sources such as from municipal facilities, process water discharges, construction activities, vessel and structure maintenance, vessel discharges and stormwater. Sediment in discharges can smother subtidal ecosystems, and contaminants can accumulate in deposited sediments affecting aquatic ecosystems and water quality.

Stormwater has the potential to transport contaminants from land into coastal waters via diffuse surface run-off or point source discharges. The scale of potential effects is dependent on contaminant source, site management practices and treatment prior to discharge, and the sensitivity of the receiving environment.

This chapter includes provisions to manage the potential effects of discharges on coastal water. The adverse effects of activities and discharges are managed through rules on discharges, which include the requirement to treat at source prior to discharge. The focus of this chapter is specifically on discharges to or within the coastal marine area, to maintain high quality coastal water and to improve water quality in degraded areas.

The CMA is the ultimate receiving environment for many of the contaminants generated on and discharged from land to freshwater. Discharges to waterways and land are regulated under the Waikato Regional Plan.

### Objectives | Ngā whāinga

#### WD-O1 Discharges to coastal water

Discharges to the coastal marine area ensure the health of people and communities is safeguarded, and the life-supporting capacity and mauri of the receiving environment is maintained.

### Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

#### WD-P1 Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area

Discharges of contaminants to the coastal marine area are managed to:

1. Avoid adverse effects on the values of SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A, the values of outstanding natural character areas identified in Schedule 4, and nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A
2. Avoid significant adverse effects, including cumulative effects, on the values of SIBA-B identified in Schedule 7B, kaimoana sources (including shellfish gathering), ecosystems, regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B, contact recreation and amenity values
3. Avoid significant adverse effects on the values of sites and areas of significance to Māori identified in Schedule 6
4. Occur in a manner that recognises and provides for the cultural values of tangata whenua
5. Minimise adverse effects on the life-supporting capacity of water within the mixing zone, including the ability to support indigenous flora and fauna and kaimoana beds

6. Avoid the discharge of persistent contaminants into the environment, including those that accumulate in sediment
7. Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects due to localised erosion and scour resulting from the discharge
8. Avoid exceedance (either individually or cumulatively with other discharges) of limits and trigger values identified in Schedule 9
9. Have particular regard to:
  - a. The sensitivity of the receiving environment
  - b. The capacity of the receiving environment to assimilate contaminants
  - c. The nature of the contaminants to be discharged, the existing water quality in the receiving environment as compared with the limits and trigger levels identified in Schedule 9, and the risks if that concentration of contaminants is exceeded.

#### **WD-P2      Extent of reasonable mixing for discharges**

Minimise the extent of reasonable mixing for discharges to reduce the effects on the life-supporting capacity and cultural, economic and recreational values of water within the mixing zone.

For permitted activities the extent of reasonable mixing is 20m from the outfall point. The extent of reasonable mixing for other activities will be determined on a case by case basis including consideration of:

1. The location, water quality type, values and uses of the receiving water in the vicinity of the discharge
2. The nature of the discharge, including its frequency, flow rate, composition and contaminant concentrations
3. Māori cultural values, including mahinga kai
4. The design of the outfall and rate of discharge (e.g. single or multi-point diffuser)
5. The depth of water over the outfall
6. The density difference between the discharge (usually freshwater) and the receiving water (often saline), which determines its buoyancy
7. Speed and orientation of currents across the outfall, including consideration of tidal cycle effects
8. Degree of stratification in the water column, which may limit vertical mixing
9. Existing contaminant concentrations in the receiving water, the assimilative capacity of the water body and the limits and trigger values for contaminants identified in Schedule 9.

#### **WD-P3      Disposal of human ashes**

Avoid the discharge and disposal of human ashes into the coastal marine area.

#### **WD-P4      Untreated human sewage**

Avoid the discharge of untreated human sewage directly into the coastal marine area from land-based activities.

#### **WD-P5      Discharge of treated human sewage**

Avoid the discharge of treated human sewage directly to coastal water from sources other than ships, vessels and offshore installations that comply with the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998 unless:

1. The treatment method includes the passing of sewage through land, soil or a wetland or uses an alternative technology and disposal methodology that addresses cultural values
2. The discharge avoids kaimoana gathering areas, marine farming areas and recreational beaches or SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A

3. The discharge is consistent with policy 23(2)(b) of the NZCPS
4. There is a functional need, or it is the best practicable option, to discharge in that location.

#### **WD-P6 Discharge of sewage from vessels**

Avoid the discharge of human sewage from vessels into the coastal marine area in vessel sewage restriction areas identified on the planning maps.

#### **WD-P7 Facilities at marinas and wharves**

Require marinas and public wharves to have facilities available for:

1. The appropriate shore-based disposal of contaminants associated with the operation and maintenance of vessels including for refuelling of vessels and human waste disposal
2. Ensuring residues from vessel maintenance activities are safely contained and disposed of.

#### **WD-P8 Discharges from vessel maintenance activities**

Avoid the discharge of toxic substances or hazardous substances from marine facilities, including vessel maintenance activities, directly to the foreshore or coastal marine area.

#### **WD-P9 Discharges of hazardous substances**

Avoid discharges of hazardous substances to the coastal marine area except where:

1. The application is for controlling marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
2. The hazardous substance is approved for use over water by the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996
3. The hazardous substance is applied in accordance with best practice and complies with the requirements of the BIO - Biosecurity chapter of this plan.

#### **WD-P10 Discharges of water containing contaminants**

Avoid in the first instance or otherwise minimise or mitigate the direct discharge of water containing contaminants (including sediment) to the CMA from land use activities by:

1. Requiring adoption of best practice methods to reduce contamination at source
2. Requiring adoption of best practice methods of treatment to remove contaminants (including sediment) prior to discharge if it is not practicable to adopt alternative methods and locations for disposal.

#### **WD-P11 Stormwater Management**

Avoid in the first instance, or otherwise minimise or mitigate adverse effects of stormwater discharges through:

1. Having particular regard to:
  - a. the nature, quality, volume and peak flow of stormwater runoff
  - b. the current state of receiving environments including the nature of and sensitivity to the adverse effects of the discharge, including hydrological and contamination effects and how these can be avoided, minimised or mitigated
  - c. options to manage stormwater on-site or the use of communal stormwater management measures
  - d. practical limitations in respect of the measures that can be applied
  - e. avoiding, minimising or mitigating new adverse effects and progressively reducing existing adverse effects on water and sediment quality by following relevant best practice guidance

2. Requiring Comprehensive Stormwater Discharge Consents for discharges from stormwater networks including design details, management and monitoring plans that demonstrate how the discharge is:
  - a. forming part of an integrated catchment approach to stormwater management
  - b. adopting the relevant best practice options for stormwater management
  - c. minimising the generation and discharge of runoff volume and contaminants at source prior to the consideration of mitigation measures
  - d. using and enhancing natural hydrological features and green infrastructure for stormwater management where practicable
  - e. avoiding, minimising or mitigating changes in hydrology and effects on coastal water quality
  - f. avoiding, minimising or mitigating the effects on the receiving environment arising from changes in water temperature caused by stormwater discharges
  - g. providing for the management of gross stormwater pollutants (e.g. litter) in areas where the generation of these may be an issue
  - h. addressing mitigation and monitoring of residual adverse effects on the receiving environment
3. Requiring stormwater from high risk facilities to be separated from run off collected from potentially contaminated areas of the site.

**WD-P12 Discharges from high risk facilities#**

Avoid in the first instance or otherwise minimise or mitigate the adverse effects of discharges from high risk facilities, including vessel maintenance areas, through treating these discharges to relevant industry standards and best practice guidance including use of an interceptor system. Where possible, avoidance will be achieved via diversion to a dedicated trade waste system or containment facility.

**Rules | Ngā ture**

**Permitted activities**

**WD-R1 Minor permitted discharges**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b>          Except as permitted or restricted by any other rule, the discharge of water, or water containing contaminants to the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Any visible change in water quality is not detectable 12 hours after discharge</li> <li>2. The discharge will not cause any breach of water quality limits and trigger levels in Schedule 9 outside of the 20m reasonable mixing zone</li> <li>3. The discharge will not contain any hazardous substances or come from a high risk facility</li> <li>4. The discharge will not contain any material that will cause the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable suspended materials outside a 5m radius of the point of discharge</li> <li>5. The natural temperature of the water is not changed by more than 3 degrees celsius</li> <li>6. The natural salinity of water within sensitive intertidal zones is not altered outside of a 20m radius of the discharge point</li> <li>7. The discharge will not cause erosion or scouring</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	---	--

	<p>8. The discharge will not occur in or at any area identified as wāhi tapu</p> <p>9. The discharge is not in a SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A or give rise to more than minor adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems in other locations.</p>	
--	--	--

**WD-R2 Firefighting and emergency response discharges**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The discharge from firefighting and other emergency response activities undertaken by Fire and Emergency New Zealand or the New Zealand Defence Force (including discharge of hazardous substances).</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The discharge does not give rise to more than minor adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

**WD-R3 Small discharges of dye tracers**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> The discharge of more than 20 litres of dye in solution or 10 kilograms of dye tracer material, excluding radioisotope tracers, into the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The dye tracer material discharged is not a hazardous substance in terms of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996</li> <li>2. The discharge will not cause fish or shellfish to be unsuitable for harvest and human consumption</li> <li>3. The discharge will have no more than minor adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity</li> <li>4. The discharge is not in any area identified as wāhi tapu</li> <li>5. The dye tracer material is used in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b>
--	---	---

**WD-R4 Existing river and flood control scheme discharges**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Existing river and flood control scheme discharges to the coastal marine area that are lawfully established or authorised before the date of notification of this plan.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Any erosion occurring as a result of the discharge is remedied as soon as practicable</li> <li>2. The discharge will not exacerbate the effects of flooding downstream of the discharge point except in accordance with approved scheme design</li> <li>3. The discharge will not result in more than minor adverse effects on SIBA-A or other marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems</li> <li>4. The discharge will not cause dissolved oxygen to fall below 80 per cent of saturation concentration outside of the 20m reasonable mixing zone, unless the concentration in the receiving water body is below 80 per cent, in which case the discharge will not lower it further</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>CON</b> (WD-R6)
--	---	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. The discharge will not increase suspended sediment concentrations in the receiving water</li> <li>6. The discharge does not contain any material that will cause the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable suspended materials at any point downstream that is a distance greater than three times the width of the stream at the point of discharge</li> <li>7. The activity will not disturb any historic heritage or wāhi tapu site in Schedule 5 except where an authority has been obtained under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014</li> <li>8. In the event of any wāhi tapu that is not subject to standard (7) being identified by the Waikato Regional Council to the person undertaking the activity, the activity is to cease insofar as it may affect the wāhi tapu, and not recommenced without the written approval of the Waikato Regional Council.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

## Controlled activities

### WD-R5 Discharge of dye tracers

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> The discharge of more than 20 litres of dye in solution or 10 kilograms of dye tracer material, excluding radioisotope tracers, into the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The dye tracer material discharged is not a hazardous substance in terms of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996</li> <li>2. The discharge is not in any area identified as wāhi tapu, or will not adversely affect any area identified as wāhi tapu</li> <li>3. The dye tracer material is used in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.</li> </ol> <p><b>Matters of control:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The location, timing, volume and method of discharge</li> <li>2. Effects on indigenous biodiversity and the edibility of fish and shellfish harvested from the area affected.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

### WD-R6 Existing river and flood control scheme discharges

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> Existing discharges to the coastal marine area that are from river and flood protection schemes lawfully established or authorised before the date of notification of this plan that are not permitted by WD-R4.</p> <p><b>Matters of control:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Measures to prevent erosion or scour at the point of discharge</li> <li>2. Management measures and practices to minimise contaminant loads prior to discharge</li> <li>3. Measures to avoid adverse effects on water quality after reasonable mixing and to minimise the reasonable mixing zone</li> <li>4. Measures to avoid adverse effects on SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and to avoid significant adverse effects on SIBA-B identified in Schedule 7B and to avoid, remedy or mitigate other</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---



	adverse effects 5. Measures to protect cultural values that may be potentially affected.	
--	---	--

## Restricted discretionary activities

### WD-R7 Discharge from vessel hull cleaning on the foreshore

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> Discharge of material or marine pests from the cleaning, scraping, sanding, or blasting of a vessel hull on the foreshore.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The discharge is contained and collected as far as practicable, for removal to an approved land-based disposal facility within the tidal cycle</li> <li>The activity is not within a SIBA-A site identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The method(s) to be used to clean the hull</li> <li>The adequacy of the proposed procedures and equipment for containment of discharged material</li> <li>Proximity of the maintenance site to any habitat identified in Schedule 7</li> <li>Consideration of effects on cultural values, including wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>PR</b>
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### WD-R8 Discharge of contaminants not otherwise provided for

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> Discharge of contaminants into the coastal marine area not identified as permitted, controlled or restricted discretionary elsewhere in this plan.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

### WD-R9 Discharge of hazardous substances

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The discharge of hazardous substances except those specifically exempted under RMA Regulations, and those authorised for biosecurity purposes under BIO-R4, BIO-R5, BIO-R6 and BIO-R9.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

### WD-R10 Discharge of treated sewage to the CMA

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The discharge of treated human sewage directly to coastal water from sources other than ships, vessels and offshore installations that comply with the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The treatment method includes the passing of sewage through land, soil or a wetland or uses an alternative technology and disposal methodology that addresses cultural values</li> <li>The discharge avoids SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and recreational beaches/surf breaks as identified in Schedule 8</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

	<p>3. The discharge is consistent with policy 23(2)(b) of the NZCPS as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. No human sewage is discharged without treatment</li> <li>b. No discharge of treated human sewage occurs unless there has been adequate consideration of alternative methods, sites and discharge routes (including land-based) and this has been informed by tangata whenua values and effects on them.</li> </ol>	
--	--	--

**WD-R11 Discharge of water from new river and flood control schemes**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> New river and flood control scheme discharges to the coastal marine area following the date of notification of this plan.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	--	---

**Prohibited activities**

**WD-R12 Disposal of human ashes**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The discharge or disposal of human ashes in the coastal marine area.</p>	
--	--	--

**WD-R13 Discharge of human sewage**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The discharge of human sewage from vessels within a Vessel Sewage Prohibition Area shown on planning maps, and any other discharge of human sewage to the coastal marine area not authorised by other rules of this plan or the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998.</p>	
--	--	--

**WD-R14 Application of anti-fouling materials and discharge of hull scraping**

	<p><b>Activity status: PR</b> The application of anti-fouling materials to vessel hulls on the foreshore, and vessel hull cleaning activities that do not comply with other rules in this plan.</p>	
--	---	--

**Stormwater**

**Permitted activities**

**WD-R15 Existing lawfully established stormwater discharges**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b> Stormwater discharges to the coastal marine area lawfully established prior to the date of notification of this plan.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The discharge is the same or lesser in terms of volume, rate and quality and contaminant load characteristics to that existing prior to the date of notification of this plan</li> <li>2. The discharge is not from a high risk facility or dedicated vessel maintenance area</li> <li>3. The discharge is from an overall aggregate area of less than 1 hectare</li> <li>4. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. The discharge does not, outside of the 20m reasonable mixing zone, give rise to the following adverse effects in coastal water: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials</li> <li>b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity</li> <li>c. any emission of objectionable odour; or</li> <li>d. discharge of litter or other gross pollutants</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. All associated stormwater management devices are designed, operated and maintained in accordance with best practice</li> <li>7. The discharge does not give rise to more than minor adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems or cultural values including mahinga kai.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

**WD-R16 New stormwater discharges**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b></p> <p>New stormwater discharges to the coastal marine area following the date of notification of this plan from:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. New or upgraded roads and trafficked areas up to an overall aggregate area of 0.5 ha</li> <li>2. New or redeveloped urban areas up to an overall aggregate area of 0.5 ha</li> <li>3. New or redeveloped non-urban areas up to an overall aggregate area of 1 ha.</li> </ol> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The discharge is not from a high risk facility or dedicated vessel maintenance area</li> <li>2. The discharge does not cause scouring or erosion at the point of discharge</li> <li>3. The discharge does not, outside of the reasonable mixing zone, give rise to the following in coastal water: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials</li> <li>b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity</li> <li>c. any emission of objectionable odour; or</li> <li>d. discharge of litter or gross pollutants</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The discharge is managed through stormwater management devices that are designed, operated and maintained in accordance with best practice</li> <li>5. It is not practicable to connect to an existing stormwater network that has a Comprehensive Stormwater Discharge Consent authorisation in place</li> <li>6. The discharge does not significantly adversely affect cultural values including mahinga kai.</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved:</p> <p><b>CON</b> (WD-R17) or <b>DIS</b> (WD-R18)</p>
--	--	---

## Controlled activities

### WD-R17 Existing lawfully established stormwater discharges from non-urban roads

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b> Stormwater discharges from non-urban roads to the coastal marine area lawfully established before the date of notification of this plan, and which are not permitted by WD-R15.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The discharge is the same or less in terms of volume, rate and contaminant load characteristics to that which existed before the date of notification of this plan</li> <li>2. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge</li> <li>3. The discharge does not, outside of the 20m reasonable mixing zone, give rise to the following adverse effects in coastal water:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials</li> <li>b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity</li> <li>c. any emission of objectionable odour; or</li> <li>d. discharge of litter or other gross pollutants</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. All associated stormwater management devices are designed, operated and maintained in accordance with best practice</li> <li>5. The discharge does not give rise to significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems or cultural values including mahinga kai.</li> </ol> <p><b>Matters of Control:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Requirements for management measures and devices to reduce and/or minimise the discharge volume, rate and contaminant load characteristics of the discharge</li> <li>2. Measures to prevent scouring, erosion and localised flooding at the point of discharge</li> <li>3. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on receiving environments, including cumulative effects and/or residual effects</li> <li>4. Measures to protect the cultural and heritage values of any historic heritage site potentially affected</li> <li>5. Operation, maintenance, monitoring and reporting requirements</li> <li>6. Duration of consents and the timing and nature of reviews and consent conditions.</li> </ol> <p><u>Advisory note:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Non-urban roads are located outside of urban areas. They may include ancillary areas that form part of the road or state highways operated by a road controlling authority.</i></li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--

## Discretionary activities

### WD-R18 All other stormwater discharges

	<b>Activity status: DIS</b> The discharge of stormwater to the coastal marine area not otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

# 25 WT – Water take, use, dam, divert | Herenga, whakamahinga, aukati me te kaupare ā-wai

## Overview | Tirohanga whānui

The take, use, damming or diversion of coastal water within the coastal marine area can have adverse effects on water quality, other activities and the environment that need to be considered and addressed. Damming or diversion of water may be required for marinas, seawalls and reclamations, or for flood and river scheme protection works. Water takes may be required for land-based aquaculture.

This chapter sets out provisions for the taking, using, damming or diversion of coastal water in the CMA.

## Objectives | Ngā whāinga

### WT-O1 Damming or diversion of coastal water

Damming or diversion of coastal water is only undertaken where it is necessary to:

1. Protect people and property, including from the adverse effects of flooding
2. Provide for navigational safety and safe access to the ocean
3. Restore or rehabilitate the coastal environment
4. Maintain or improve water quality.

### WT-O2 Take and use of water

Coastal water is taken and used at a quantity and rate that protects water quality, biodiversity values, ecosystems, social and cultural values, and coastal processes.

## Policies | Ngā kaupapahere

### WT-P1 Damming and diverting water

Ensure damming or diversion of coastal water occurs only where the activity:

1. Avoids adverse effects on SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A
2. Avoids significant adverse effects on SIBA-B identified in Schedule 7B, regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B, and on social and cultural values.

### WT-P2 Take and use of water

Provide for the take and use of coastal water where the activity has no more than minor effects on:

1. The values and mauri of coastal water including biodiversity and ecosystem values
2. Natural coastal processes
3. Social and cultural values
4. Water quality.

Permitted activities

**WT-R1 Taking and use of water by ships**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b>                  The taking and use of water from the coastal marine area for the normal functional need of ships, including for engine cooling, loading ballast, deck washing, firefighting and desalination.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b>
--	---	---

**WT-R2 Taking and use of coastal water**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b>                  The taking and use of water from the coastal marine area.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. All water intakes are screened with a mesh aperture size not exceeding 1.5 millimetres in diameter</li> <li>2. The maximum intake velocity for any water intake structures will not exceed 0.3m per second</li> <li>3. The take occurs:                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. in open coastal waters; or</li> <li>b. in estuaries, inlets, harbours or embayments outside of SIBA-A identified in Schedule 7A and the quantities taken and used are less than 1,000 cubic metres per day; and</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The activity has no adverse effects on national surf breaks or significant adverse effects on regional surf breaks.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>RDA</b>
--	---	---

**WT-R3 Damming or diversion of coastal water for existing lawfully established river and flood protection schemes**

	<p><b>Activity status: PER</b>                  The damming and diversion of water in the coastal marine area by river and flood protection schemes lawfully established or authorised before the date of notification of this plan, including their ongoing operation and maintenance.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The scheme owner provides, if requested by the Waikato Regional Council:                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. clear written or photographic evidence the structure existed at the date of notification of this plan; or</li> <li>b. a copy of the necessary current authorisation(s) for the structure</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The scheme complies with any conditions that are part of a resource consent granted for the structure before the date of notification of this plan, other than conditions relating to review or expiry</li> <li>3. Any maintenance will not result in an increase in the design height relative to sea level at the time of construction or increase the footprint occupied by the structure</li> <li>4. The scheme is operated and maintained in accordance with an adaptive management plan meeting the requirements of NH - Natural hazards chapter objectives and policies.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	---	---

## Controlled activities

### WT-R4 Temporary dam/divert – coffer dam

	<p><b>Activity status: CON</b></p> <p>The temporary diversion of water in the coastal marine area, and the associated use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration or extension of a temporary diversion structure for the purpose of maintaining an existing lawfully established structure.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The diversion structure is maintained in a structurally sound condition</li> <li>2. All construction materials and equipment will be removed from the CMA on the completion of the activity</li> <li>3. No contaminants (including, but not limited to, oil, hydraulic fluids, petrol, diesel, other fuels, paint or solvents but excluding sediment) will be released to water from the activity</li> <li>4. The activity will not disturb any historic heritage or wāhi tapu site in Schedule 5 except where an authority has been obtained under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014</li> <li>5. Any erosion occurring as a result of the structure will be remedied as soon as practicable</li> <li>6. Any structure built with materials not naturally present in the area will be fixed in place to prevent it being washed away</li> <li>7. The entire structure will be removed immediately after completion of the works that it was built to assist and the foreshore or seabed will be reinstated to its original state</li> <li>8. The Waikato Regional Council will be notified of the commencement date of the works and of the removal date of the structure.</li> </ol> <p><b>Control is reserved over the following matters:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The design, location and size of the structure</li> <li>2. The degree to which the structure is able to restrict the natural flow of water in the vicinity</li> <li>3. The length of time that the temporary dam/diversion structure will remain in place</li> <li>4. The construction materials and methods used and when construction is to occur</li> <li>5. The dewatering on the inside of the structure and any necessary fish recovery</li> <li>6. Measures to control the effects of the structure on navigation safety</li> <li>7. Measures to control the effects of the activity on areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna</li> <li>8. Measures to control the discharge of sediment</li> <li>9. The potential effects on bed and bank stability and water quality.</li> <li>10. Measures to control the effects of the activity on any lawfully established structures</li> <li>11. Effects on any wāhi tapu or other taonga from the activity</li> </ol>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b></p>
--	--	--



	<p>12. Effects on the relationship of tangata whenua and their culture and traditions with the site and any wāhi tapu or other taonga affected by the activity</p> <p>13. Effects on the ability of tangata whenua to exercise their kaitiaki role in respect of any wāhi tapu or other taonga affected by the activity.</p>	
--	--	--

## Restricted discretionary activities

### WT-R5 Take and use coastal water not authorised by other provisions

	<p><b>Activity status: RDA</b> The taking and use of water from estuaries, inlets, harbours or embayments, in quantities equal to or greater than 1,000 cubic metres per day or not authorised under other rules of this plan.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Screening is used to ensure no intake of marine fauna or flora.</li> </ol> <p><b>Discretion is restricted to:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The information and monitoring requirements</li> <li>The location of the take and proximity to, and effects on, other activities</li> <li>The take rate - including frequency</li> <li>The method used for the take and the proposed screening and/or filtering devices</li> <li>Adverse effects on biodiversity, social and cultural values</li> <li>Adverse effects of the activity on any lawfully established structures.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>DIS</b>
--	--	---

## Discretionary activities

### WT-R6 Damming and diverting coastal water

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The damming and diversion of coastal water from, or within the CMA, other than those authorised under WT-R3 or WT-R7.</p> <p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The damming or diversion <u>is not</u> in, or on, any area identified as wahi tapu</li> <li>The activity is not within an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, a significant geo-preservation site identified in Schedule 3A or a SIBA-A site identified in Schedule 7A.</li> </ol>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

### WT-R7 Damming and diverting coastal water by new river and flood protection schemes

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b> The damming and diversion of water in the coastal marine area by new river and flood protection schemes or those not meeting the requirements of WT-R3, including their operation and maintenance.</p>	Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>NC</b>
--	---	--

	<p><u>Where:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The scheme is not within an area of outstanding natural character identified in Schedule 4, a significant geopreservation site identified in Schedule 3A or a significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7</li> <li>2. The scheme is maintained in a structurally safe condition at all times</li> <li>3. The scheme is not located on any site of significance to tangata whenua, archaeological or wāhi tapu site</li> <li>4. The scheme does not restrict public access to the coastal marine area</li> <li>5. The scheme is operated and maintained in accordance with an adaptive management plan meeting the requirements of NH - Natural hazards chapter objectives and policies.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

**WT-R8 Temporary dam/divert – coffer dam**

	<p><b>Activity status: DIS</b></p> <p>The temporary diversion of water in the coastal marine area, and the associated use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration or extension of a temporary diversion structure for the purpose of maintaining an existing lawfully established structure not complying with WT-R4.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	--	--

**Non-complying activities**

**WT-R9 All other damming and diversion of coastal water**

	<p><b>Activity status: NC</b></p> <p>The damming and diverting of water in the coastal marine area not authorised under other rules in this plan.</p>	<p>Activity status where compliance not achieved: <b>N/A</b></p>
--	---	--

---

# **PART 3 – APPENDICES AND MAPS | WĀHANGA 3 – NGĀ ĀPITIHINGA ME NGĀ MAHERE**

---

# Schedule 1 – Coastal marine area and river mouth boundaries | Āpiti 1 – Ngā rohenga takutai moana me ngā ngutuawa

The landward boundary of the coastal marine area and the river mouth for each of the rivers included in Schedule 1 was agreed and set by the Waikato Regional Council, the relevant territorial authorities and the Department of Conservation in 1994.

For rivers and streams not identified in this schedule, the agreed and set “mouth”, for the purposes of section 2 of the RMA, is a straight line representing a continuation of MHWS on each side of the river.

The river mouths and coastal marine area boundary for the rivers and streams included in this schedule are shown on the maps that accompany this plan.

Area	River/Stream
West Coast - Waitomo District	Awakino River Mōkau River
West Coast - Waitomo District	Waikawau River
West Coast - Waitomo District	Marokopa River Kiritehere Stream
Kāwhia - Waitomo and Ōtorohanga Districts	Manawatuhatuha Stream Mangaora Stream Oparau River Te Kauri Stream Awaroa River Waiharakeke Stream Matauwai Stream Wainui Stream
Aotea - Waikato and Ōtorohanga Districts	Pakoka River Makomako Stream
Raglan - Waikato District	Ohautira Stream Waitetuna River Wainui Stream
West Coast - Franklin District	Kaawa Stream
West Coast - Franklin District	Waikato River
Firth of Thames - Hauraki and Thames Coromandel Districts	Waitakaruru Canal Piako River Waihou River Kauaeranga River

<b>Area</b>	<b>River/Stream</b>
<b>Coromandel West Coast - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Waiomu Stream
<b>Coromandel West Coast - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Waikawau River Te Mata River Tapu River
<b>Manaia - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Manaia River
<b>Coromandel - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Whangarahi Stream Waiau River
<b>Kennedy Bay - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Harataunga Stream
<b>Colville and Waikawau - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Umangawha Stream Waikawau River
<b>Port Charles - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Tangiara Stream Parakete Stream
<b>Kennedy Bay and Whangapoua - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Harataunga Stream Opitonui River Mapauriki Stream
<b>Kuaotunu to Otama - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Kuaotunu River Otama River
<b>Whitianga - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Taputapuatea Stream Whangamaroro River Ounuora River Waiwawa River Whenuakite River
<b>Tairua - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Tairua River
<b>Wharekawa - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Wharekawa River
<b>Whangamatā - Thames Coromandel District</b>	Wentworth River Otahu River (Waiharakeke Stream)

# Schedule 2 – Mooring areas | Āpiti 2 – Ngā wāhi pou herenga waka

Schedule 2 contains identified mooring areas, and prohibited mooring areas where the mooring of vessels is prohibited and for which no resource consent can be granted.

## Mooring areas

EAST COAST	
COROMANDEL	Te Kouma Harbour
	Takawhare Bay - East
	Takawhare Bay - West
	Puhi Rare Bay
	Wyuna and McGregor Bay
	Aropawa Bay
	Oamaru Bay
	Long Bay
PORT CHARLES HARBOUR	Port Charles - Carey Bay
	Port Charles - Jetty North
	Port Charles - Jetty South
	Port Charles - Little Sandy Bay
GREAT MERCURY ISLAND (AHUAHU)	Great Mercury Island (Ahuahu)
WHANGAPOUA HARBOUR	Whangapoua Harbour
OPITO BAY	Opito Bay
MATAPAU BAY	Matapau Bay
MERCURY BAY	Cooks Beach
	Flaxmill Bay (Maramaratotora)
	Whitianga Harbour
TAIRUA HARBOUR	Tairua Harbour
	Paku
WHANGAMATĀ HARBOUR	Whangamatā Harbour

WEST COAST	
WHAINGAROA (RAGLAN) HARBOUR	Raglan Wharf
	Lorenzen Bay
	Te Akau
KĀWHIA HARBOUR	Kāwhia - North of Wharf
	Kāwhia - Opposite Wharf
	Kāwhia - Maketu Marae
	Kāwhia - South of Wharf
	Kāwhia - Te Maika
	Kāwhia - Te Waitere

## PROHIBITED MOORING AREAS

EAST COAST	Cooks Beach
	Coromandel Harbour
	Flaxmill Bay (Maramaratotara)
	Great Mercury Island Huruhi Harbour (Ahuahu)
	Hahei Beach
	Long Bay
	Matapaua Bay
	Oamaru Bay
	Opito Bay
	Opoutere Harbour
	Port Charles Harbour
	Tairua Harbour
	Te Kouma Harbour
	Whangamatā Harbour
	Whangapoua Harbour
Whitianga Harbour	
WEST COAST	Kāwhia Harbour
	Raglan Harbour (Whaingaroa)

# Schedule 3 – Seascapes – Outstanding natural features and landscapes | Āpiti

## 3 - Ngā tirohanga takutai – ngā tirohanga whenua

Schedule contains 18 seascape areas that are identified as outstanding natural features or landscapes (seascapes). An attributes/values table for each area is included below. Information included within this schedule has been informed by the report Waikato Regional Seascape Study within the CMA (2023) and engagement undertaken as part of the Regional Coastal Plan review. The report contains further information on the Waikato region’s seascape as a whole and the assessment of areas identified as having outstanding value, with maps and photographs of each site.

### Outstanding Natural Landscapes (ONL)

- Motukawao Island Group
- Northern Coromandel Peninsula
- North Eastern Coromandel
- Repanga Island (Cuvier Island)
- Mercury Islands and Opito Headland
- Coromandel Peninsula and Outer Mercury Bay
- Coromandel Peninsula Tapuaetahi and Kohungahunga
- The Aldermen Islands Group
- Waikato River Mouth and Okariha Sand Spit
- Kārewa / Gannet Island
- Waikato Coast
- Waikato Karioi
- North Taranaki Bight

- **Outstanding Natural Features (ONF)**Chenier Plains
- Whakahau (Slipper Island) Group
- Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour)
- Aotea Harbour
- Kāwhia Harbour



<b>Chenier Plains ONF</b>				
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the coastal area surrounding the Chenier Plains and Miranda Wetlands within Tikapa Moana (the Hauraki Gulf) coastal area. The extent includes an approximate 3 nautical mile buffer from landward extent around the Chenier Plains.			
<b>Attributes / Values</b>				
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values	
<p>Very high biophysical attributes associated with the shell barrier beach at Miranda. The beach is the largest in the country and the only one of its kind in the world that is actively aggrading. The feature has a high degree of rarity in the coastal marine area.</p> <p>The surrounding benthic marine area is dominated by mud and muddy sands.</p> <p>The Chenier Plains is a Ramsar site of international importance to migratory wader birds (including Tūturiwhatu / the New Zealand Dotterel). The area covers the intertidal area of the southern and western shores of the firth.</p> <p>The combination of the naturally rare ecosystem of the Chenier Plains and this shoreline creates a unique natural environment of very high value.</p> <p>The Chenier Plains and Miranda Wetlands are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>	<p>The open surface of Tikapa Moana (the Hauraki Gulf) provides a dramatic setting for the combination of the significant shoreline and shell barrier beach.</p> <p>A high sense of isolation and remoteness with human activities or structures limited on the shoreline and surrounding barrier beach.</p> <p>Transient values of the Firth of Thames are recognisable in the water and tidal patterns, as well as in the movement/migration of birds. Together with the transient exposure of the shell barrier beach they are dramatic and memorable features.</p> <p>From the waters the natural darkness of the night sky can be appreciated, with few lights from settlements on the coastal edges.</p>	<p>The very high shared and recognised values associated with the Miranda Chenier Plains and Ramsar site are largely draw from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>Very high aesthetic, naturalness and memorability qualities associated with the area, together with its very strong sense of remoteness and 'getting away from it all'.</p>	<p>A significant feature supporting shorebirds the Miranda Chenier Plains is of significance to Māori.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>	
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the Chenier Plains is considered an ONF with striking and unique biophysical qualities. The combination of physical, perceptual and associative attributes as well as the context alongside the modified adjoining land demonstrates a feature separate and unique to its surrounding seascape and landscape context.			

<b>Motukawao Island Group ONL</b>			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the coastal area from Amodeo Bay, encompassing the Motukawao Island Group extending south to Whawenga Point. The extent includes an approximate 3 nautical mile buffer from landward extent and incorporates the Motukawao Group Islands, Hautapu Channel and Motuoruhi Island (Goat Island). The Motukawao Group are a group of rugged volcanic islands located some two to seven kilometres offshore the Coromandel Peninsula. Some aquaculture is noted off the eastern shores of Moturua Island (Rabbit Island). The ONL extent does not include Motukopake Island and Waimate Island due to the level of modification and existing aquaculture in this area.		
<b>Attributes / Values</b>			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>Very high biophysical attributes associated with the Motukawao islands. These islands are a prominent and unmodified volcanic island group surrounded by unmodified rocky shelves and open waters.</p> <p>Unmodified vegetation sequences between islands and sea floor.</p> <p>Motuoruhi Island (Goat Island) is partly pest free.</p> <p>A wide variety of bird life populations are supported around the islands, particularly the Motukawao Group islands, which are home to many threatened bird species.</p> <p>The dramatic interface between the rocky outcrops and sea is expressive of coastal processes. Coastal erosion, tidal processes, seasonal change, atmospheric conditions, and windswept vegetation combine to create a dynamic interplay between the Motukawao Group islands landforms and Tikapa Moana (the Hauraki Gulf).</p>	<p>The open surface of Tikapa Moana (the Hauraki Gulf) provides a dramatic setting and defines the Motukawao Island group. The exposed landforms contrast markedly with the vast open expanse of the Pacific Ocean.</p> <p>Very high sense of isolation and remoteness. Limited human activities or structures exist or are apparent on the Islands (some aquaculture is noted off of the eastern shores of Moturua Island (Rabbit Island). Largely undeveloped landward extent through this part of the peninsula with the occasional settlement.</p> <p>Expansive views of the open largely undeveloped seascape. The Motukawao islands are visible from various points along the western Coromandel coastline and are a defining feature when travelling along Colville Road.</p> <p>Transient values of the Western Coromandel are recognisable in the water and tidal patterns, movement/migration of birds and changes in the appearance of the</p>	<p>Very high shared and recognised values associated with the seascape and coastline evidenced by the descriptions of the area in tourism publications and the popularity of the area as an inspiration/subject for art and photography. This largely draws from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>Very high recreational values associated with boating, fishing and diving.</p> <p>Very high aesthetic, naturalness and memorability qualities associated with the area, together with its very strong sense of remoteness and 'getting away from it all'.</p>	<p>Valued for the gathering of kaimoana, the waters around this island group are abundant for food generation.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>

Motukawao Island Group ONL				
The Motukawao Island Group are identified as having outstanding natural character..		ocean's surface due to changing weather conditions and light.  From the waters, the natural darkness of the night sky can be appreciated, with few lights observed from settlements on the coastal edges, particularly around the island grouping and away from settlements.		
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the Motukawao Island Group seascape area has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical, perceptual and associative values.  The Motukawao Island Group although focused on the islands includes the surrounding bays and connecting seascape areas. The seascape encapsulates a wide variety of landforms, which are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations. Perceptually the Motukawao Islands are the focus of the seascape vista and are important habitats for birds.			

Northern Coromandel Peninsula ONL			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the open waters around the north tip of the Coromandel Peninsula (Cape Colville). The area includes Port Jackson, Fletcher Bay, Stony Bay and Port Charles. It extends approximately 3 nautical mile from the landward extent and includes parts of Tīkapa Moana (the Hauraki Gulf) and Colville Channel as well as Channel Island, Square Top Island and Motukokopu Island.		
<b>Attributes / Values</b>			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
Large open expanse of water contrasts with the adjacent rising Moehau Mountain Range. Moehau is one of the most conspicuous landforms on the Coromandel Peninsula and within the Hauraki Gulf, rising to a height of 892 metres above sea level.  Strongly expressed coastal processes are evident in the dramatic interface between the Pacific Ocean and complex array of	High to very high naturalness values arising from the wild and dynamic coastal context; the sense of remoteness associated with the area; the proliferation, scale and (in many instances) dramatic character of biophysical features.  Limited evidence of human modification. Where this occurs, development is 'modest' and includes low intensity pastoral farming and scattered and modestly scaled rural dwellings and visitor accommodation. There	Port Jackson was the site of a fierce and bloody battle in 1828 between Nga Puhi and Ngati Maru. For many years after, the area was declared tapu (sacred).  Māori were attracted to the region by the abundance of snapper, kingfish and hāpuku.  High European historical associated with Whaling and flax trade with remains of old Jetty at Port Jackson.	Port Jackson was the site of a fierce and bloody battle in 1828 between Nga Puhi and Ngati Maru. For many years after, the area was declared tapu (sacred).  Māori were attracted to the region by the abundance of snapper, kingfish and hāpuku.  Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this

Northern Coromandel Peninsula ONL				
	<p>cliffs, headlands, sandy beaches and rocky outcrops.</p> <p>Prominent andesite and rhyolite outcrops along the coastline.</p> <p>Pasture is dominant, although patches of windswept regenerating and remnant native forest survive within steep gullies and on coastal slopes.</p> <p>The andesite headlands of Sugar Loaf and Kaiti Point reveal the landscapes underlying volcanic geology and are highly expressive of the landscapes' formative processes.</p> <p>The richness of reef fish species is good within Port Jackson.</p> <p>High biophysical values associated with the deeper waters to the north and west of Port Jackson. With common siting of orca, dolphins and whale.</p> <p>Parts of this seascape area (Sugar Loaf, Stony Bay and outer waters of Port Charles) are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>	<p>is a small settlement at Port Charles as well as an aquaculture site to the north east of the Port Charles inlet.</p> <p>High aesthetic and memorability values of the area as a consequence of its highly attractive and dramatic visual character and seemingly isolated context.</p> <p>The very high legibility and expressiveness values due to the visibility and abundance of biophysical attributes that enable a clear understanding of the landscape's formative processes.</p> <p>Expansive views, particularly from elevated positions above Port Jackson out to the coast including to Aotea Island (Great Barrier Island) and to the Tikapa Moana (Hauraki Gulf). On a clear day downtown Auckland can be seen.</p> <p>Transient values of the Northern Coromandel are recognisable in the water and tidal patterns, movement/migration of birds and changes in the appearance of the ocean's surface due to changing weather conditions and light.</p>	<p>The very high shared and recognised values associated with the seascape and coastline evidenced by the descriptions of the area in tourism publications and the popularity of the area as an inspiration and subject for art and photography.</p> <p>Untouched nature with reference to a 'bygone era'. Largely drawing from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>Very high recreational values associated with boating, fishing and diving. Department of Conservation (DOC) campgrounds are located at Port Jackson and Fletcher Bay, with numerous DOC walkways that traverse the coastal landscape.</p> <p>Very high aesthetic, naturalness and memorability qualities associated with the area, together with its very strong sense of remoteness and 'getting away from it all'.</p>	<p>table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	<p>Based on the above values, the Northern Coromandel Peninsula seascape area has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical, perceptual and associative values. The Northern Coromandel Peninsula comprises the open waters around the north tip of the Coromandel Peninsula (Cape Colville) including a series of islands, bays and exposed headlands. The seascape encapsulates a wide variety of landforms, which are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations. Perceptually the Northern Coromandel seascape provides uninterrupted open seascape vistas. Key vistas include views of Aotea Island (Great Barrier Island) and to the Hauraki Gulf. This area of the northern Coromandel is isolated and the least modified and is valued highly for this strong sense of remoteness.</p>			

North-Eastern Coromandel Peninsula ONL			
<b>Description</b>		The area occupies the coastal area on the north-eastern side of the upper Coromandel Peninsula. The area extends from the peninsula to the north of Port Charles south towards Motuto Point at the northern end of Whangapoua Beach. An approximate 3 nautical mile offset is provided from the land ward extent. The ONL extends to include the many bays along the eastern edge of the peninsula namely Wainuiototo Bay (New Chums Beach), Kennedy Bay, Waikawau Bay, Potiki Bay and Rauporoa Bay.	
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>The coastline is varied characterised by embayed sandy beaches separated by rocky headlands, harbours, estuaries and cliffs.</p> <p>Particularly significant coastal geological features include the Waikawau Bay coastal features, an undeveloped white sand beach and the Kennedy Bay "Tumbledown Rocks" rock fall.</p> <p>Inlets provide breeding habitat for threatened wading birds present in many locations along the coast.</p> <p>High reef fish richness between Port Jackson and Tuatēawa.</p> <p>Extensive areas under formal protection in Conservation Areas, QEII covenants.</p> <p>Steep valleys and spurs contain a mixture of unmodified native shrub land and forest.</p> <p>Parts of this seascape area (Rauporoa Bay, Potiki Bay and Te Karaka Bay) are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p> <p>Dramatic cliffs and exposed rocky shores amplify areas unique geology.</p>	<p>Overall, the coast comprises relatively unmodified marine environments between highly (and often seasonally) populated beach areas.</p> <p>The coastal waters display high levels of ecological naturalness and modification is limited.</p> <p>Dramatic broad sweeping views can be obtained from high points along the eastern coastline. These are broad and expansive across the coastal environment. Views are typically focused towards the striking outer Islands on the horizon.</p> <p>There are a number of large semi-enclosed bays and smaller inlets, which are sheltered from the more open coast.</p> <p>Transient values of the North-Eastern Coromandel are recognisable in the water and tidal patterns, movement/migration of birds and changes in the appearance of the ocean's surface due to changing weather conditions and light.</p>	<p>Rich European cultural use including historic quarries and whaling.</p> <p>Very high shared and recognised values associated with the seascape and coastline evidenced by the descriptions of the area in tourism publications, the popularity of the area as an inspiration/subject for art and photography. Largely drawing from the aesthetic and qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>Very high recreational values associated with boating, game fishing and diving.</p> <p>New Chums beach located to the north of Whangapoua is famous for its 'untouched' character and features a white sand beach backed by native bush and coastal hill country. It was voted 'one of the world's best beaches' by Lonely Planet.</p> <p>A number of noted DOC conservation areas are located on land adjacent to this area.</p>	<p>Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki (NPKH) affinity with Te Tohora (the whale) – The whale is the most significant species for Ngāti Porou.</p> <p>Some specific taonga fish species described include Manopare, Wahi, Hapuku Matua, Haku, Takeketonga, Wheke, and the Violet snail. Tables of other taonga marine mammals, fish species, seabirds and traditional fishing grounds are provided in the Ngati Porou Marine and Coastal Area Plan (NPMCAP).</p> <p>Traditional fishing grounds, fish movement, spawning and nursery grounds occur just outside of Kennedy's Bay.</p> <p>Ocean trading and sea going experience enabled Ngāti Porou to cement relationships in the Coromandel region – commercial fishing and Whaling history, navigation and Tikanga pure (rite of passage) provide cultural context and reference to activities tying NPKH to the EEZ.</p> <p>Ngāti Porou were renown as whalers and sealers.</p>

North-Eastern Coromandel Peninsula ONL				
			Very high aesthetic, naturalness and memorability qualities associated with the area, together with its very strong sense of remoteness and 'getting away from it all'.	To NPKH the Moana, EEZ, Marine and coastal area and outlying islands have varying degrees of Tapu.  There is traditional ecological knowledge relating to the coast and marine environment from within the Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki rohe.
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	<p>Based on the above values, the North-Eastern Coromandel seascape area has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical, perceptual and associative values.</p> <p>The North-Eastern Coromandel comprises the open waters to the east of the northern Coromandel Peninsula as well as a number of larger semi-enclosed bays and inlets. These include a wide variety of coastal landforms, which are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations. The landward extent of the area is largely unmodified with some larger coastal tourist towns towards the south</p>			

Repanga Island (Cuvier Island) ONL			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the waters associated with Repanga Island (Curvier Island). The seaward extent is generally 3 nautical miles from the shoreline.		
<b>Attributes / Values</b>			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>Steep rocky island, with cliffs and coastal bluffs, rocky shores and small rocky islets covered in native regenerating bush punctuate the eastern extent of Colville Channel.</p> <p>Repanga Island tourmalinised rocks represent a good example of exposed large black crystals of tourmaline evident from the shoreline.</p>	<p>Very high levels of perceived naturalness due to limited modification and sense of remoteness associated with the Seascape area.</p> <p>Repanga Island contains some human modification including the lighthouse that was built in 1889 and DOC Cabins. However the exposed and rocky shorelines are</p>	<p>Very high recreational values associated with boating, fishing and diving.</p> <p>Rich in European history including the lighthouse on Cuvier Island (first lit in 1889), and the WW2 radar station and other structures.</p> <p>High in Maaori cultural value, Repanga is tapu to Ngati maru.</p>	<p>Tables of taonga marine mammals, fish species, seabirds and traditional fishing grounds are provided in the Ngati Porou Marine and Coastal Area Plan (NPMCAP). The list of fishing grounds includes Repanga.</p> <p><i>"Repanga is tapu to Ngati maru. As the Tainui and Te Arawa Canoes arrived in hauraki from hawaiki, as</i></p>

Repanga Island (Cuvier Island) ONL				
Repanga Island is a nature / DOC reserve that is managed primarily for scientific and species protection purposes and is predator free  There are a high number of reef fish and intact habitats around Repanga Island.  Repanga Island also supports large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.  Repanga Island (Cuvier Island) is identified as having outstanding natural character.	devoid of modification creating a strong sequential link between land and sea.  The Island is highly remote with the waters surrounding it remaining unmodified. The distance from the main coastline reinforces a sense of remoteness.			<i>acknowledgement of their roles in safely guiding the waka to Aotearoa, they freed the sacred birds Takareko and Te Mumuhau to Repanga. With recitation of lengthy invocations, they charged the liberated birds as sentinels to maintain their lasting vigil over all voyages who passed that way. Since that day,tribal seafares have always kept a wary eye on the weather patterns signalled about the island."</i>  Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the seaward extent around Repanga Island (Cuvier Island) has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical values, exceptional associative values and very high perceptual values. The ONL comprises the open waters around Repanga Island with interactions with the land area around the coastal cliffs and sea as this is the least modified. It is one of the region's most important predator-free islands.			

Mercury Islands and Opito Headland ONL			
<b>Description</b>	The extent of this Outstanding Natural Landscape (Seascape) area occupies the coastal area around Mercury Islands (the entire Mercury Group). It also extends to include the seascape area from Motuhua Point and the Opito Peninsula. It includes the 'Hole in the Wall Islands and islets' offshore from Opito Bay.		
<b>Attributes / Values</b>			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
Spectacular exposed geology and coastal landforms exemplify coastal processes.	All Islands (except Great Mercury) are completely unmodified with a character	Very high recreational values associated with boating, fishing and diving (several	Tables of taonga marine mammals, fish species, seabirds and traditional fishing

Mercury Islands and Opito Headland ONL					
<p>Numerous Geopreservation Sites including the Korapuki Sea Arch; the Stanley Island basalt vents and cone; and Red Mercury Island basalt.</p> <p>The complex bathymetry and varying shelter provided by the islands and adjacent mainland make this an area of high habitat diversity, which is reflected in the diversity of species found in the surrounding waters.</p> <p>The influence of the subtropical East Auckland Current and high-water clarity result in diverse algal and encrusting invertebrate assemblages. Shallow rocky reefs are dominated by large brown seaweeds.</p> <p>The majority of the islands are Pest Free Islands and support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.</p> <p>The Mercury Islands and associated coastal waters are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>		<p>that expresses both natural processes and evokes a strong sense of being divorced from human activity.</p> <p>Great Mercury (<i>Ahuahu</i>) Island has a strong sense of naturalness that is primarily derived from the diversity of landscapes that comprise the dramatic coastal edge, despite the presence of farming activities, settlements and forestry.</p> <p>Hole in the Wall Islands are landmarks in the surrounding area and can be seen from Opito Bay.</p> <p>The Mercury Bay islands are visible from settlements within Mercury Bay (including Wharekaho Beach, Whitianga, and Cooks Beach).</p> <p>The coastal waters from Opito Peninsula including the Mercury Island group are broadly devoid of noticeable human modification (such as aquaculture), which reinforces and 'binds' the collective aesthetics of the area.</p>		<p>commercial dive sites identified around the Mercury Islands).</p> <p>White cliffs of Great Mercury Island were used for navigation toward Aotearoa. The reflective landmarks are important coastal navigation aids for early sea travellers.</p> <p>James Cook helped his astronomer Charles Green observe the transit of Mercury at Te Whanganui-o-Hei (Mercury Bay).</p> <p>High Māori cultural values attributed to the island group and shoreline of Opito headland, attributed to intrinsic relationships with the waters, its food source and occupation.</p>	<p>grounds are provided in the Ngati Porou Marine and Coastal Area Plan (NPMCAP). The list of fishing grounds includes Ahuahu.</p> <p><i>"Whakaū or Whaka-U was an important fishing and birding settlement of Ngati Hei. It is the Island furthest heading east out into Te Tai Tamahine but could be reached quite easily by traversing the Islands of Korapuki, Ngaraurapa (Middle Is), Atiu (Stanley Is) and Ngaruamahanga (Double Is) by waka. Whakau has a fresh water stream that permitted longer visits. The fish sought from this Island were moeone, shark and hapuku. Titi and Oi (mutton bird) were in abundance. Aruhe (fernroot) kumara and tutaekoau (wild native celery) were in good quantity."</i></p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	High	
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the seaward extent around Mercury and Hole in the Wall Islands has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical, associative and perceptual values. The seascape area comprises the open waters, a series of islands and islets and exposed peninsulas.				



Coromandel Peninsula Outer Mercury Bay ONL			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the coastal area from north of Humbug Bay on the Opito Peninsula to Hereheretaura Point south of the settlement of Hahei. The area includes the Mercury Bay Islands of Motumanga (the Twins), Mahungarape Island (Round Island), Motukarure Island (Centre Island), Motueka Island (Pigeon Island) and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island). The seascape area extends out to approximately 3 nautical miles from the coast. The seascape area excludes the coastal area around the settlement of Whitianga and the Whitianga Harbour.		
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>The coastline is varied and characterised by embayed sandy beaches separated by rocky headlands, harbours, estuaries and cliffs. Particularly significant coastal geological features include the distinctive basalt peak of Mauhuatawhiri and Cathedral Cove Arch and stack 1km to the north of Hahei.</p> <p>There is a Marine Reserve Area at Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove). Within Te Whanganui-A-Hei Marine Reserve species include crayfish, corals, brittle stars, paua, kina, sponges, ascidians, bryozoans, macroalgal species and coastal fish (including black angel fish, red moki and leather jacket).</p> <p>Inlets provide breeding habitat for threatened wading birds present in many locations along the coast. Between Opito Bay and Mercury Bay there are areas where New Zealand dotterel breed.</p> <p>High biophysical values associated with Orca being observed off the southern end of Hahei Beach, Common dolphin have been sighted more frequently along the entire eastern coast of the Coromandel</p>	<p>Due to accessibility the coastline of Hahei, and Cathedral Cove are popular visitor destinations.</p> <p>Dramatic sweeping views can be obtained from high points along the eastern coastline. These are typically broad and expansive across the coastal environment. Views are typically focused on the striking Mercury Bay Islands.</p> <p>Conversely, the landform surrounding many of the east coast bays provides for sense of enclosure and limits views to the wider landscape.</p> <p>Transient values of the Eastern Coromandel are recognisable in the water and tidal patterns, movement/migration of birds and changes in the appearance of the ocean's surface due to changing weather conditions and light.</p>	<p>Particularly high values associated with Mercury Bay. In 1769 Captain Cook landed on the shores of Mercury Bay to observe the Transit of Mercury (hence the name Mercury Bay / Mercury Islands).</p> <p>Rich history of land use including: production forestry; sawmilling; flax harvesting and pastoral farming.</p> <p>Very high shared and recognised values as evidenced by the descriptions of the area in tourism publications, the popularity of the area as an inspiration/subject for art and photography.</p> <p>Cathedral Cove and its adjoining marine reserve, Te Whanganui-A-Hei is a highly popular feature. This area is a popular snorkelling, diving and kayaking location with significant numbers of visitors to the area. This area is also a popular filming location.</p> <p>The coastal waters are popular locations for recreational boating, jet-skis, waka</p>	<p>Harbour and island catchment environments, which have values that are unique to that place and that Hauraki Whānui want to protect – such as the unique plant and animal life, mahinga mātaimai and mahinga kai (titi) on the Ruamaahua islands.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>

Coromandel Peninsula Outer Mercury Bay ONL				
	<p>and Bottle-nose dolphin have been seen adjacent Matapaua Bay.</p> <p>No human activities or structures exist or are apparent on the Mercury Bay islands. Coastal erosion, tidal patterns, atmospheric conditions and windswept vegetation combine to create a dramatic interface between these rocky outcrops and island and the Pacific Ocean and are reflective of the natural coastal processes at work in this environment.</p> <p>The coastal water between Cooks Bluff and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>		<p>ama, canoeing, kayaking, swimming, diving and snorkelling.</p>	
<b>Rating</b>	High	Very High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	<p>Based on the above values, the Coromandel Peninsula Outer Mercury Bay seascape area has been identified as an ONL due to its high physical, and very high perceptual and associative values.</p> <p>The area comprises the open waters to the south of Opito peninsula as well as a number of larger semi-enclosed bays and inlets. These include a wide variety of coastal landforms, which are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations. The landward extent of the area is largely unmodified with pockets of more dense modification associated with larger coastal tourist towns such as Hahei. The Mercury Islands Group focus of the seascape vista and are largely important undeveloped islands with strong values and associative qualities. There are some particular areas within this area that have very high shared and recognised values, including Te Whanganui-A-Hei - Cathedral Cove.</p>			

Coromandel Peninsula Tapuaetahi and Kohungahunga ONL	
<b>Description</b>	<p>The area occupies the coastal area from Hereheretaura Point south of the settlement of Hahei to Pumpkin Hill, the coastal cliffs to the north of Tairua. The area extends to the southwest to include Motuhua (Shoe Island). The seascape area extends out to approximately 3 nautical miles from the coast and includes Castle Island off the coast of Hot Water Beach and Motuhua (Shoe Island) off the coast of Tairua. The majority of the land is classified as an ONL in the Thames-Coromandel District Plan.</p>
<b>Attributes / Values</b>	

Coromandel Peninsula Tapuaetahi and Kohungahunga ONL				
Physical Values		Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>The coastline is varied and characterised by rocky, exposed outcrops, islands, bluffs, as well as a several sandy beaches and rocky bays in the south (including Tapuaetahi Bay (boat harbour), Neaves Bay, Otara Bay and Te Karo Bay).</p> <p>Inlets provide breeding habitat for threatened wading birds present in many locations along the coast.</p> <p>Common dolphin sighted frequently along the entire eastern coast of the Coromandel.</p> <p>No human activities or structures exist or are apparent on castle island or Motuhoa (Show Island).</p> <p>Particularly significant coastal geological features include the Hot Water Beach foredune belt 1 km long arcuate belt of virtually unmodified sand dunes.</p> <p>The remote coastline and coastal waters south of Hot Water Beach are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>		<p>Due to accessibility the coastline of Hahei, and Cathedral Cove are popular visitor destinations.</p> <p>Dramatic broad sweeping views can be obtained from high points along the eastern coastline. These are typically broad and expansive across the coastal environment. Views are typically focused on the outer Islands.</p> <p>Conversely, the landform surrounding many of the east coast bays provides for sense of enclosure and limits views to the wider landscape.</p> <p>Transient values of the Eastern Coromandel are recognisable in the water and tidal patterns, movement/migration of birds and changes in the appearance of the ocean's surface due to changing weather conditions and light.</p>	<p>Particularly high values associated with Mercury Bay. In 1769 Captain Cook landed on the shores of Mercury Bay to observe the Transit of Mercury (hence the name Mercury Bay / Mercury Islands).</p> <p>Rich history of land use including: production forestry; sawmilling; flax harvesting and pastoral farming.</p> <p>Very high shared and recognised values as evidenced by the descriptions of the area in tourism publications, the popularity of the area as an inspiration/subject for art and photography.</p> <p>The coastal waters are popular locations for recreational boating, jet-skis, waka ama, canoeing, kayaking, swimming, diving and snorkelling.</p> <p>The rocky shoreline that extends from Cooks Beach to Hot Water Beach has areas of the coastline that are inaccessible from land. Strong sense of remoteness and isolation.</p> <p>Hot Water Beach is a popular tourist destination.</p>	<p>Harbour and island catchment environments, which have values that are unique to that place and that Hauraki Whānui want to protect – such as the unique plant and animal life, mahinga mātaītai and mahinga kai (titi) on the Ruamaahua islands.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	<p>Based on the above values, the Coromandel Peninsula Tapuaetahi and Kohungahunga seascape area has been identified as an ONL due to its high physical and perceptual values and its very high associative values.</p> <p>The area includes a wide variety of coastal landforms, which are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations. The landward extent of the area is largely isolated and remote, with some more populated areas such as Hot Water Beach.</p>			

The Aldermen Islands Group ONL			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the coastal area 3 nautical miles offset from the Alderman Islands. Lying 20km offshore from Tairua and Pauanui, the Aldermen are an important nature reserve and wildlife sanctuary made up of six main islands (Hongiora, Ruamahuanui Island, Middle Island, Nga Horo Island, Half Island, Ruamahuaitei Island) and many uncharted volcanic spires.		
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>Very High biophysical attributes associated with the Alderman Islands. The steep rhyolite features provide a range of spectacular rocky coastal landforms such as spires, needles and vertical bluffs that extend through the archipelago. The Islands also forms part of a larger submarine platform that has been eroded almost entirely by wave action.</p> <p>The Alderman Islands are surrounded by an extensive and complex system of rocky reefs extending from the shoreline to about 100 m depth.</p> <p>The Alderman Islands are a nature reserve/wildlife reserve with a high diversity and richness of demersal reef fish.</p> <p>The islands also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.</p> <p>The Alderman Islands and coastal waters are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>	<p>Very high remote values evident, including darkness of the sky and sense of isolation. The marine environment creates a sense of remoteness from the mainland and unmodified environment.</p> <p>The islands are largely unmodified and have a character that expresses natural processes.</p> <p>The islands are visible from a number of public and private viewpoints down this eastern stretch of the Coromandel coastline.</p> <p>Strong aesthetic values.</p>	<p>Unique plant and animal life, mahinga mātaitai and mahinga kai (titi) exists on the Ruamaahua islands.</p> <p>Very high recreational and scenic values associated with the islands include activities such as fishing, kayaking and diving. Largely draws from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>Each island or rocky outcrop/shoal is a landmark in itself.</p> <p>The islands are an important part of the commercial rock lobster fishery.</p>	<p>The unique plant and animal life, mahinga mātaitai and mahinga kai (titi) on the Ruamaahua islands.</p> <p>Evidence of seasonal occupation by Māori and birds would have provided an important food source.</p> <p>The white cliffs are illuminated by late afternoon sun and would have been important navigational aids.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>

The Aldermen Islands Group ONL				
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	Very High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the seaward extent around the Alderman Islands has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical values, associative and perceptual values. The seascape encapsulates the wide variety of coastal edge landforms that are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations.			

Whakahau (Slipper Island) Group ONF			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the coastal area approximately 1 nautical mile around Whakahau (Slipper Island). It also encompasses Watchman Rock to the west and Penguin Island and Rabbit Island to the south.		
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>The coastal waters associated with Whakahau, Rabbit and Penguin Islands, including Watchman Rock nature reserve/wildlife reserves hold a high diversity and richness of demersal reef fish.</p> <p>The coastal water also supports large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.</p> <p>Whakahau (Slipper Island) includes one of the only known examples of subtidal seagrass within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park. High water quality combined with a mosaic of rocky reefs, coarse sand and subtidal seagrass habitats results in an area of high biodiversity (i.e. elevated species richness and abundance).</p> <p>Slipper Island contains a number of small golden sandy beaches, located in sheltered positions between rocky outcrops and headlands.</p>	<p>High remote values evident, including darkness of the sky and sense of isolation. The marine environment creates a sense of remoteness from the mainland and unmodified environment.</p> <p>Whakatau has some modification but the coastal waters remain largely unmodified and have a character that expresses natural processes.</p> <p>The islands are visible from a number of public and private viewpoints and are particularly exposed to largely settlements on the coast such as Pauanui and Tairua.</p>	<p>Very high recreational and scenic values associated with the islands include activities such as fishing, kayaking and diving. Largely drawing from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>Each island or rocky outcrop/shoal is a landmark in itself.</p> <p>The islands are an important part of the commercial rock lobster fishery.</p>	<p>The unique plant and animal life, mahinga mātaītai and mahinga kai (titi) on the Ruamaahua islands.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>

Whakahau (Slipper Island) Group ONF				
<p>Whakahau has vegetated coastal fringes but the rolling landform and majority of the island is dominated by pastoral farming.</p> <p>The Island also contains a boat ramp, a small number of houses and associated roads.</p> <p>Penguin Island and Rabbit Island are largely unmodified.</p>				
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	<p>Based on the above values, the seaward extent around Whakahau (Slipper Island), Penguin and Rabbit Island and Watchman Rock is identified as an ONF due to its high physical and perceptual values and very high associative values. Due to the land-based modification associated with the mainland and the proximity of these islands to the mainland, the coastal extent of this defined ONF is limited to a generic seascape offset of approximately 1 nautical mile. The seascape encapsulates the wide variety of coastal edge landforms that are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations.</p>			

Waikato River Mouth and Okariha Sand Spit ONL				
<b>Description</b>	The area includes the Waikato River mouth and its coastal extends, the Okariha Sand Spit, extending southwards to Nihonui			
Attributes / Values				
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values	
<p>Much of the coastal edge is backdropped by productive forestry and mining along the northern river corridor, and native regenerating scrub and farmland the south, including the settlement of Port Waikato.</p> <p>Sand is common in this area and is apparent with migrating sand dunes, sand sheets and blowouts along the cliff faces and tops.</p>	<p>Settlement is focused around Port Waikato however in places the dunes screen this settlement / modification from the coast.</p> <p>Sand mining operations extend along the northern edge of the Waikato River mouth and are encompassed in productive forestry.</p> <p>Further south along the Waikato River the CMA extends into the river wetlands and islands that contain numerous 'maimai' and stands for whitebaiting activities.</p>	<p>Recreational values – swimming, fishing, camping, water skiing and waka ama.</p> <p>Water quality has a strong correlation with its recreational value – the health and wellbeing of water.</p> <p>Tahinga moana have been used and valued by Tahinga people for cultural, spiritual and economic purposes since they arrived to Aotearoa – Access to the sea and ability to harvest sea food that</p>	<p>In the past, Māori used the Waikato River in its entirety. It provided for spiritual and material needs, food, a source of cleansing and healing and a network for trade, travel and communication. An abundance of food such as tuna (eel), inanga (whitebait), kōura (freshwater crayfish), kanae (mullet), waterfowl, and wild vegetables were harvested from the river and associated swamps and tributaries.</p> <p>For hundreds of years, the Waikato River has provided physical and spiritual</p>	

Waikato River Mouth and Okariha Sand Spit ONL		
<p>Ephemeral streams, prevailing winds and high energy waves subject this area of the coast to considerable erosion.</p> <p>The Okariha Sand spit's form is subject to natural processes of a river mouth system and the influences of human activity.</p> <p>Coastal vegetation is very limited and typically found only on the coastal dune face and providing variable cover in pasture, depending on the land management regime. The vegetation is highly modified by vegetation clearance and grazing with only less palatable species present or those capable of surviving on the mobile coastal cliff environment.</p> <p>Nihonui/Tetehe headland (with its rocky coastline) is a distinctive bush clad backdrop and it anchors the contrasting Okariha Sand Spit.</p> <p>The Port Waikato dunes and river mouth are identified as key ecological sites. The dunes have high natural values, and in places screen the Port Waikato Settlement.</p> <p>The Delta is also home to a multitude of exotic and indigenous waterfowl, marshbirds, and shorebirds using the various mudflat, sandflat, saltmarsh and wetland habitats for feeding and breeding.</p> <p>The Waikato River has a diverse assemblage of freshwater and saltwater fish. The delta is known for its whitebait</p>	<p>Whilst dramatic in its remoteness and experience of the coastal processes these modifications are apparent and recognisable.</p> <p>A strong sense of the natural systems of the river are apparent through the intertidal movements and sand accretion and erosion at the distal end of the sand spit.</p>	<p>is abundant and healthy is central to customs and traditions.</p> <p>Kai moana mahinga kai, minerals under the sea bed, estuaries and coastal water, waahi tapu.</p> <p>Two key taonga species are the tohorā/whale and the paaua.</p> <p>The Waikato River is the Awa Tupuna (ancestral river) and Waikato-Tainui view the river as an indivisible entity.</p> <p>Taonga fish species include, but are not limited to, tuna (Shortfinned and Longfinned eel), whitebait species (iinanga, kooaro, banded kōkopu, giant kōkopu, and shortjaw kōkopu), smelt, piiharau.</p> <p>(lamprey eels), kanae (mullet – yellow-eyed and grey), paatiki (flounder – yellow-bellied), kahawai, trevally and tamure (snapper).</p> <p>Taonga shellfish and koura include: koura, kaaeo, kaakahi (freshwater mussels), tio (oyster), pipi, kina and kuutai (green-lipped mussel).</p>
		<p>sustenance for the people of Waikato-Tainui. The river was a means of transportation for waka and a source of food and resources.</p> <p>Tahinga moana have been used and valued by Tahinga people for cultural, spiritual and economic purposes since they arrived to Aotearoa – Access to the sea and ability to harvest sea food that is abundant and healthy is central to customs and traditions.</p> <p>Kai moana mahinga kai, minerals under the sea bed, estuaries and coastal water, waahi tapu.</p> <p>Two key taonga species are the tohorā/whale and the paaua.</p> <p>The Waikato River is the Awa Tupuna (ancestral river) and Waikato-Tainui view the river as an indivisible entity.</p> <p>Taonga fish species include, but are not limited to, tuna (Shortfinned and Longfinned eel), whitebait species (iinanga, kooaro, banded kōkopu, giant kōkopu, and shortjaw kōkopu), smelt, piiharau.</p> <p>(lamprey eels), kanae (mullet – yellow-eyed and grey), paatiki (flounder – yellow-bellied), kahawai, trevally and tamure (snapper).</p>

Waikato River Mouth and Okariha Sand Spit ONL				
fishery, and provides a habitat, nursery, and conduit for migrating freshwater species.  The river mouth also offers temporary habitat for seals, dolphins, and sharks.				Taonga shellfish and koura include: koura, kaaeo, kaakahi (freshwater mussels), tio (oyster), pipi, kina and kuutai (green-lipped mussel).  Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the Waikato River Mouth and Okariha Sand Spit have been identified as an ONL due to their high physical, perceptual and associative values.			

Waikato Karioi ONL				
<b>Description</b>	The area extends from Te Kaha Point (Mussel Rock) at the northern end of Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) mouth to Papanui Point, south of Mount Karioi at the northern end of Ruapuke Beach. The outer edge of the Whāingaroa Harbour (including the Raglan Bar) is also included in this seascape area. The seaward extends out west 3 nautical miles (5km).			
Attributes / Values				
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values	
The open coastline comprises the volcanic shoreline of Mt Karioi with long black sandy beaches and exposed volcanic sections.  The rocky shoreline creates exposed rock shelves and blowholes with dynamic and high energy wave action along the shoreline.	There is little evidence of human modification with few vehicular access points and limited development or structures at the coastal margin. Where residential development has occurred this modest and subservient to the landscape.  Very strong sense of isolation, remoteness and wilderness due to the inaccessibility of	Manu Bay and Whale Bay provide a nationally significant surf break. High recreation values attributed to this coastline and its' waters.  Mt Karioi, maunga forms a strong cultural, physical and visual connection with the seascape area and is an integral feature within the context of the seascape.	There are many taonga species within the coastal and marine environment, including wading birds, such as the threatened reef heron, banded rail, NZ dotterel, and wetland bird species like the threatened and rare variable oystercatcher and Hectors dolphins.  The cultural heritage landscape along the coast is highly significant to Maniapoto -	



Waikato Karioi ONL				
<p>Rocky reefs, islets and outcrops are generally located adjacent to volcanic geology, particularly around Mt Karioi and south of Kāwhia Harbour.</p> <p>Limited biotic information relating to the open coastline. Except for fishing, modification of the marine environment is minimal, marine fish and benthic organism diversity and distribution can be expected to be unmodified.</p> <p>The open coast provides a transit route for shorebirds.</p>		<p>the area and the relatively limited boating activity on the Tasman Sea.</p> <p>Particularly significant vistas include mid and long-range views of dramatic western coastline and seascape.</p> <p>Transient values derive from the highly exposed environment of the west coast and are amplified by the dynamic dunes (at Rangitoto Point); and the dynamic patterning of light on intertidal areas.</p>		<p>cultural heritage (in the CMA) may include mammalian habitats, migration routes (including the ahoaho [Hectors dolphin] and kōura), reefs, islands and trenches, burial caves, wāhi tapu.</p> <p>The Mōtakotako rohe/area of interest includes Aotea Harbour and the coast north to the vicinity of Papanui Point and include important traditional mahinga mataitai, mahinga waimāori mahinga kai, and waahi tapu.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the ocean coast from Te Kaha Point (Mussel Rock) to Papanui Point, south of Mount Karioi is identified as an outstanding natural landscape (seascape). This is due to its high physical and perceptual values and very high associative values.			

Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) ONF				
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) east from Motukokako Point. It includes Whiwhiroa Bay, Waihara Bay, Te Kotuku Creek, Tawatahi River, Haroto Bay and Okete Bay. The ONF does not include the more modified seascape around Raglan township or into the Kaitoke, Ponganui or Paihere Creek.			
<b>Overall rating</b>	Outstanding			
<b>Attributes / Values</b>				
Physical Values		Perceptual Values		Te Ao Māori Values

Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) ONF			
<p>Collectively, Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) retains a number of significant landform, geological and ecological features. Including the Raglan Coastal limestone Karst to the northern extent of Whāingaroa - located around Marotaka Point and Tokatoka Point.</p> <p>Significant ecological values within Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Estuarine vegetation is predominately located at the head of sheltered arms. The exposed coastal edge is not conducive to estuarine vegetation establishment.</li> <li>• There are examples of extensive rushland, saltmarsh ribbonwood and remnant freshwater wetland communities.</li> <li>• Vegetation predominately grazing and pasture to the waters edge. With some areas of the harbour margin heavily vegetated (north-east).</li> <li>• Large intertidal areas that support extensive seagrass meadows (<i>Zostera</i> sp.). Important habitat for fish nurseries, shorebird feeding and shellfish.</li> </ul> <p>Particularly significant hydrological attributes include:</p> <p>The seascape of Whāingaroa, the extensive intertidal flats with natural</p>	<p>Transient intertidal areas are dynamic and can fluctuate dramatically over short timeframes.</p> <p>Strong visual and physical connection between Raglan township and the seascape area. Several water views are framed by the end of carriageways or by built form and vegetation. Edges of the harbour are largely open and accessible.</p> <p>Visual relationship between the Harbour and Mt Karioi.</p> <p>Inanga farms located on land adjoining the intertidal saltmarsh.</p> <p>Lack of modification on the water's surface within the harbours, principally due to the low concentration of population.</p> <p>Some modification around the south of the harbour associated with Raglan township. The scale of modification is generally small compared to the size of the harbours and coastal processes (sediment transport, water movement and tidal movement) appear to have a low degree of modification.</p>	<p>The benign and calm waters of the harbours allow for numerous kinds of water-based activities, including swimming and boating.</p> <p>Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) seascape retains high shared and recognised values as evidenced by the descriptions of the area in tourism publications and the popularity of the area as an inspiration/subject for art and photography.</p>	<p>The harbour comprises significant value to Tainui with the waters being a taonga. Tainui hapu whakapapa to these waters and its whenua.</p> <p>The waters and intertidal areas is a food basket of Tainui and other hapu and for migratory bird species.</p> <p>Values of hapū that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>

Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) ONF				
<p>estuarine and wetland features, which contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour.</p> <p>The quality of the water in Whāingaroa is particularly high due to regular tidal flushing and the high quality of the water that comes from the catchment.</p> <p>The 'bowl' like topography in which Whāingaroa Harbour is set, with rising landform to the north, east and west separates the catchment from other parts of the Waikato District.</p>				
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	High to Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the seascape within Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) has been identified as an ONF due to its high physical and perceptual values, and its high to very high associative values. The seascape encapsulates the wide variety of harbour edge landforms that are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations.			

Karewa / Gannet Island ONL				
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies a 3 nautical mile are around Karewa / Gannet Island. The mapped extent derives from the feature rather than the mainland with mapped extent reflective of the underwater features.			
Attributes / Values				
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values	
<p>Located 19 kilometres off the coast the Karewa is a 2ha, steeply rising 15m above sea level offshore island. The island is an eroded tuff ring that erupted about half a million years ago.</p> <p>The low-lying nature of the island means that in big swells the island can be entirely washed over.</p>	<p>Very high levels of perceived naturalness due to limited modification and sense of remoteness associated with the Seascape area.</p> <p>Exposed and rocky shorelines are devoid of modification creating a strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea.</p>	<p>Guano is present and was mined in the late 1800's for a short period of time.</p> <p>High associative values with proving popular for fishing and diving.</p> <p>Known for unique opportunities for bird watching, photography and enjoyment of the natural beauty</p>	<p>Through the co-operation and approval of the last Māori Queen, Te Atai-rangi-kahu, Gannet Island ( Karewa Island) was gazetted as a wildlife sanctuary and is Māori land. Some of the values attribute to its whakapapa and to te taiao.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by</p>	

Karewa / Gannet Island ONL				
<p>Dynamic and exposed island that is expressive of the natural abiotic processes that formed it and continue to erode it.</p> <p>The island supports a wildlife sanctuary and New Zealand's largest breeding colony for Australasian gannets (<i>Morris serrator / takapu</i>), holding about 8000 breeding pairs.</p> <p>It is a haul out for the New Zealand Fur Seal.</p> <p>Sea life is abundant and the waters surrounding the island is a popular destination for diving.</p> <p>Extreme isolation and exposure results in an absence of vascular plants and flora.</p> <p>Vegetation is limited to a small area (3m<sup>2</sup> on the summit cliffs) comprising <i>Prasiola</i>, <i>Xanthoria</i>, <i>Tortula</i> and <i>Xanthoparmelia</i>, primarily lichen, moss and green alga.</p> <p>Karewa is identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>		<p>The Island is highly remote with the waters surrounding it remaining unmodified. The distance from the main coastline reinforces a sense of remoteness.</p>		<p>hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	Very High	High to Very High	High to Very High	High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	<p>Based on the above values, the seaward extent around Kawera / Gannet Island has been identified as an ONL due to its very high physical values, and high to very high perceptual and associative values. The ONL comprises the open waters around Kawera / Gannet Island with interactions with the land area around the coastal edge.</p>			

Waikato Coast ONL	
<b>Description</b>	<p>The area extends from Papanui Point (south of Mount Karioi) to Paparoa Point south of Albatross Point. The outer edge of the Aotea Harbour and Kāwhia Harbour is also included in this seascape area. The seaward extent extends west 3 nautical miles.</p>

Waikato Coast ONL			
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
<p>The coastline comprises the open storm battered west coast shoreline with long black sandy beaches and exposed cliff sections.</p> <p>The rocky and exposed shoreline and rock shelves create dynamic and high energy wave action along the shoreline.</p> <p>Particularly significant landform and geological features include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Aotea dune fields north of Aotea Harbour, the biggest example of mobile dune fields on the west coast of the North Island.</li> <li>▪ Hot Springs at Kāwhia (Te Puia)</li> <li>▪ Sandstone cliffs at Albatross Point.</li> </ul> <p>Includes the Aotea Reef (awash in low water) and Waioioi Reef.</p> <p>Limited biotic information relating to the open coastline. Except for fishing, modification of the marine environment is minimal, marine fish and benthic organism diversity and distribution can be expected to be unmodified.</p> <p>The open coast provides a transit route for shorebirds.</p>	<p>There is little evidence of human modification with few vehicular access points and limited development or structures at the coastal margin. Where residential development has occurred, this modest and subservient to the landscape.</p> <p>Very strong sense of isolation, remoteness and wilderness due to the inaccessibility of the area and the relatively limited boating activity on the Tasman Sea.</p> <p>Particularly significant vistas include mid and long-range views of dramatic western coastline and seascape.</p> <p>Transient values derive from: the highly exposed environment of the west coast. The highly dynamic dunes (at Rangitoto Point); and the dynamic patterning of light on intertidal areas.</p> <p>Impressive coastal features associated with Albatross Point create a dynamic coastal edge to this area.</p>	<p>Renown for its geothermal shoreline the beaches are frequented by locals and visitors alike.</p> <p>The very high recreational and scenic values associated with the seascape, coastline and walkways. Largely drawing from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p> <p>The waters are renown for coastal fisheries and support the communities of Aotea, Kāwhia and Marokopa.</p>	<p>Ngāti Hikairo has been associated predominantly with Kāwhia and traditionally occupy the North West portion of Kāwhia Harbour, traditionally utilising the coast and harbour.</p> <p>The Maniapoto rohe western boundary incorporates Aotea and Kāwhia harbours and extending 20 nautical miles out to sea; the northern boundary from Raukūmara to the Waipingao Stream; and the southern boundary of the Tūhua ranges.</p> <p>The coastal and marine environment is highly valued and important to the culture, tradition and history of the people of Maniapoto.</p> <p>There are numerous wāhi tapu within Maniapoto rohe that are significant and important to the people of Maniapoto.</p> <p>The role of Maniapoto and the exercise of rangatiratanga and kaitiakitanga for fisheries - there are approximately 20 taonga fish species within Maniapoto rohe, some of which spend at least part of their lifecycle at sea.</p> <p>There are many taonga species within the coastal and marine environment, including wading birds, such as the threatened reef heron, banded rail, NZ dotterel, and wetland bird species like the threatened</p>

Waikato Coast ONL				
				<p>and rare variable oystercatcher and Hectors dolphins.</p> <p>The cultural heritage landscape along the coast is highly significant to Maniapoto - cultural heritage (in the CMA) may include mammalian habitats, migration routes (including the ahoaho [Hectors dolphin] and kōura), reefs, islands and trenches, burial caves, wāhi tapu.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the ocean coast from Papanui Point south to Albatross Point is identified as an outstanding natural landscape (seascape). This is due to its high physical and perceptual values and very high associative values.			

Aotea Harbour ONF			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the entirety of the Aotea Harbour including Te Kowiwi Creek, Matakowhai Bay, Korua Bay and Potoorangi Bay. The area extends out to the Potahi Point where it meets the adjacent ONL (Waikato Coast ONL). Aotea Harbour and its margins has been identified as outstanding natural character.		
<b>Attributes / Values</b>			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
The Aotea dune fields are a significant large and dramatic landform feature. They – are a highly dynamic and active dune system located at the harbour	The high to very high naturalness values arising from the harbour; and the relatively diminutive scale of modifications within that context (including the mussel farm and	Aotea Harbour is one of the few Maataitai Reserves in New Zealand. Maataitai reserves recognise the use and management practices of Māori in the	The Maniapoto rohe western boundary incorporates Aotea and Kāwhia harbours and extending 20 nautical miles out to sea; the northern boundary from Raukūmara

Aotea Harbour ONF			
<p>mouth. The natural processes that occur are an excellent example of the unmodified coastal processes of this part of the west coast.</p> <p>Particular significant ecological attributes include:</p> <p>930ha of regenerating forest and indigenous scrubland that borders the harbour, with seven ecological sites identified by the Waikato Regional Council.</p> <p>Large areas of the harbour margin are heavily vegetated with native bush cover transitioning to estuarine vegetation and wetlands upstream. The natural patterns and their connectedness highlight the natural landform and microclimate present in each area of the harbour.</p> <p>Potahi Point sand dunes provides an excellent example of native vegetation sequencing from dune to coastal shrubland to estuarine vegetation. This is a key ecological site.</p> <p>Rauri Head dune scrubland is also a registered ecological site.</p> <p>Aotea Harbour is an important breeding and feeding areas for a number of coastal birds (particularly wading birds) and fish</p> <p>Particularly significant hydrological attributes include:</p>	<p>some boat ramps / infrastructure within this seascape context). The lack of human modification within the identified area is a significant part of the experience of naturalness of the area.</p> <p>The lack of access and in turn remoteness is apparent in the mid to northern parts of the area.</p> <p>The very high transient values associated with the coastal and dune processes, climatic characteristics and birdlife.</p> <p>Particularly significant vistas include mid and long-range views of dramatic western coastline and seascape.</p>	<p>exercise of non-commercial fishing rights.</p> <p>The very high recreational and scenic values associated with the seascape, coastline and walkways. Largely drawing from the aesthetic and remote qualities associated with these places.</p>	<p>to the Waipingao Stream; and the southern boundary of the Tūhua ranges.</p> <p>The Mōtakotako rohe/area of interest includes Aotea Harbour and the coast north to the vicinity of Papanui Point and include important traditional mahinga mataitai, mahinga waimāori mahinga kai, and waahi tapu.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>

Aotea Harbour ONF				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The seascape of Aotea Harbour, the extensive intertidal flats with natural estuarine and wetland features, which contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour.</li> <li>The quality of the water in Aotea Harbour is particularly high due to regular tidal flushing and the high quality of the water that comes from the catchment.</li> </ul> <p>Aotea Harbour waters are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>				
<b>Rating</b>	High	High to Very High	High to Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the seascape within Aotea harbour has been identified as an ONF due to its high physical values, and high to very high perceptual and associative values. The seascape encapsulates the wide variety of coastal edge landforms that are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations.			

Kāwhia Harbour ONF			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the inner Kāwhia Harbour and upper channels. This extends out to Tauratahi and Urawhitiki Point where it meets the adjacent ONL (Waikato Coast ONL). Kāwhia Harbour and its margins has been identified as outstanding natural character.		
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori Values
The coastal edges of the Kāwhia Harbour retain a number of significant geological features including a number of Jurassic exposed rocks and Fossil beds.	The shallow harbour and its intertidal zone remain largely unmodified except for the margins of the residential settlement.	Kāwhia has great significance for Māori because it was the final landing place of the ancestral waka Tainui	Te Rohe o Ngāti Hikairo extends from inland across the Kāwhia Harbour to Paringātai



<b>Kāwhia Harbour ONF</b>				
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies the inner Kāwhia Harbour and upper channels. This extends out to Tauratahi and Urawhitiki Point where it meets the adjacent ONL (Waikato Coast ONL). Kāwhia Harbour and its margins has been identified as outstanding natural character.			
<p>The heavily vegetated southern extent of the harbour demonstrates impressive sequencing of native vegetation through to estuarine vegetation.</p> <p>Kāwhia Harbour is known for containing sites of national importance for wintering indigenous and international migratory shorebirds.</p> <p>The harbour is identified as being an Area of Significant Conservation Value by Waikato Regional Council.</p> <p>Kāwhia Harbour waters are identified as having outstanding natural character.</p>	<p>The fluvial processes remain largely unmodified excluding some culverts at the southern edges of the harbour where road and vehicle access is provided for. The remainder of the harbour retains the natural estuarine and wetland features that contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour.</p> <p>The southern extents of the harbour have limited modification. This is further emphasised through the lack of access and in turn remoteness adding to an experience of naturalness.</p>	<p>The name Kāwhia (“abundance of everything”), which was not at first applied to the town, is derived from awhia, the ceremony performed by Māori’s when visiting a new district. Te Rauparaha, the great warrior chief, was born at Kāwhia.</p> <p>Site of significance to palaeontologists both amateur and professional, including miles of cliffs around the harbour that expose a very considerable fossil record extending from Jurassic times.</p> <p>The Kāwhia Te Puia natural hotspots sited along the shoreline within the intertidal shoreline is frequented by the community and tourists.</p> <p>Te Rohe o Ngāti Hikairo extends from inland across the Kāwhia Harbour to Paringātai</p> <p>Ngāti Hikairo traditions maintain that mauri were brought to Kāwhia upon Tainui Waka and were placed within the harbour</p>	<p>Ngāti Hikairo traditions maintain that mauri were brought to Kāwhia upon Tainui Waka and were placed within the harbour</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>	
<b>Rating</b>	High	High to Very High	High to Very High	Very High
<b>Overall Evaluation</b>	Based on the above values, the seascape within Kāwhia harbour has been identified as an ONF due to its high physical values, and high to very high perceptual and associative values. The seaward extent of the harbour has been identified as an ONL. The seascape encapsulates the wide variety of coastal edge landforms that are imbued with rich cultural and historical associations.			

North Taranaki Bight ONL			
<b>Description</b>	The area occupies an area immediately north of the Marokopa River to Tirua Point in the south. The ONL extends west into the Tasman Sea approximately 3 nautical miles / 5.5km.		
Attributes / Values			
Physical Values	Perceptual Values	Associative Values	Te Ao Māori
<p>High energy open coastline.</p> <p>Particularly significant coastal landform and geological features include the Marokopa River mouth sandspits and dune field and the Tirua Point a prominent headland.</p> <p>Notable sequence of steep cliffs, bluffs, rocky shores and sandy beaches coupled with areas exposure display a rich geological area. Land-based farming extends right to the tops of the coastal cliffs both detracting from natural biophysical patterns of the area.</p> <p>Small coastal settlement at Marokopa</p> <p>Limited/ no biotic information relating to the open coastline. Given that modification of the marine environment is minimal, except for commercial and recreational fishing activities, marine fish and benthic organism diversity and distribution can be expected to be largely unmodified.</p> <p>Mauis dolphin are occasionally seen, and the area provides a transit route for shorebirds.</p>	<p>Human modification of the area is generally low and coastal processes are expected to be unmodified.</p> <p>Recreational use of the coastal waters is limited due to travel distance to the nearest boat ramps or monitored beach.</p> <p>Impressive collection of coastal features, cliffs, beaches and river mouths culminate in a memorable part of the Waikato West Coast.</p> <p>Offshore shipping movements are apparent on a transient basis. Overall, the experience of remoteness and isolation is high.</p> <p>High levels of naturalness are perceived.</p> <p>Expansive, open, uninterrupted views west to the Tasman Sea.</p> <p>The prevailing weather is westerly, with moist winds, moderate temperatures and ample sunshine.</p>	<p>Well regarded for the coastal fishery the shoreline comprises a memorable headland and coastline.</p> <p>Unmodified coastal waters with striking coastline the dynamic waters are infrequently used, compared to east coast waters, however highly valued by the local community.</p> <p>The coastline comprises a site of cultural importance to Tainui iwi for gathering of kaimoana.</p>	<p>The coastline comprises a site of cultural importance to Tainui iwi for gathering of kaimoana.</p> <p>Values of hapu that address the construct of landscape / whenua values are held by hapu. Not all values are expressed in this table and require engagement with hapu and iwi to express. The baseline is that the Te Ao Māori values addressing all dimensions of landscape are high.</p>
<b>Rating</b>	High	High	High

**North Taranaki Bight ONL****Overall  
Evaluation**

Based on the above values, the seascape of the north Taranaki bight and the seaward extent has been identified as an ONL due to its high physical and perceptual values. The seascape has an exposed, high energy open coastline and high remote and isolation values due to its relative inaccessibility. Neighbouring land use is predominately rural agriculture, however there are some significant incised and indigenous-clad gully features that penetrate this undulating farmland.

## Schedule 3A – Significant geopreservation sites

### Advisory notes:

- Information listed in this schedule has been sourced from the Geoscience Society of New Zealand, 'New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory'.
- Under the New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory, sites are listed under three levels of importance:  
*A = of international scientific, aesthetic or educational value*  
*B = of national scientific, aesthetic or educational value*  
*C = of regional scientific, aesthetic or educational value*
- Any resource consent application for activities within the CMA should consider whether or not the activity is likely to have an adverse effect on that feature or landform listed.

Name	Significance and Description
Whakatiwai gravel ridges (B)	Nationally important area for study of gravel ridge development in a tectonically stable progradational coast. Only known occurrence in the world of a chenier plain/gravel ridge association (in conjunction with Miranda chenier plain). Sequence of stranded fossil beach ridges running parallel to the long axis of the Firth of Thames. Represent storm ridges composed of gravel derived from Hunua meta-greywackes and supplied by local streams and transported by longshore drift.
Miranda chenier plain and coastal flats (A)	Internationally important area for study of chenier plain development in a tectonically stable progradational coast. Only known occurrence in the world of a chenier plain/gravel ridge association (in conjunction with Whakatiwai gravel ridges). Series of 13 ridge complexes along the coastal plain. Ridges vary from 20m to more than 100m width. Individual ridges may show one or a sequence of recurves at their southern end, and episodes of erosion are evident by truncation of landward ridges
Karita Bay sea caves, Coromandel Peninsula (C)	A series of sea caves, some higher than 10m, eroded into Kuaotunu Subgroup andesite. Rumoured to have been used by smugglers in the past.
Waikawau Bay coastal features, Coromandel Peninsula (C)	One of the few pristine, undeveloped white sandy beaches, with associated coastal features, on Coromandel Peninsula. 2.5km-long sweeping white sandy beach, backed by partly grassed-over sand dunes, vestiges of dune-dammed swamps, and at the northern end native forest almost to the water's edge. Two unspectacular estuaries drain the hinterland.
Kennedy Bay 'Tumbledown Rocks' Rock fall (C)	Spectacular example of a pre-European rock fall. Jumble of large blocks of breccia up to the size of a house.
Whangapoua columnar jointed basalt shore (B)	Impressive example of columnar jointed basalt. Headland composed of solid mass of basalt with vertical columnar jointing, cave and blowhole.
Omara spit (C)	A well-defined barrier sandspit.
Otama relict dunes (C)	Abandoned Pleistocene dune barrier. Classic example, the best on Coromandel Peninsula.
East Otama basalt (C)	Well exposed section showing sheet lava flows and a spatter cone and dike at Tokarahū Point.
Opito Point basalts (C)	At Opito Point a solid basalt plug with sub-horizontal platy jointing is exposed. A spatter remnant occurs at the summit and east side.
The Hole in the Wall, Needle Rock (B)	Spectacular rock arch islet, similar to the one sketched by Captain Cook when he visited Mercury Bay. Hole eroded through andesitic volcanic breccia of late Miocene age.

Name	Significance and Description
Ohinau Island columnar rhyolite (C)	
White Cliffs, great Mercury Island (C)	Most prominent landform in the Mercury Islands and the highest coastal cliffs on the Coromandel coast. Two-hundred-metre-high cliffs of white weathered rhyolite lava forming prominent landform for many kilometres.
Korapuki sea arch (B)	Spectacular sea arch opening through cliff into a small cove. Arch opens into 50m diameter circular cove and lagoon, can be entered by rowing boat. Arch is made of basalt.
Stanley Island basalt vents and cone (C)	Well exposed section showing eroded volcanic neck and scoria cone, with parasite cone and lava lake, buried by sheet flows.
Red Mercury Island basalt (C)	Thickest and best exposed sequence through Mercury Basalt flows, with contemporaneous rhyolitic ash horizons within. One-hundred-metre-thick sequence exposing six thick flows and up to 10 thinner ones with a number of rhyolitic and basaltic tuff beds in between. Section cut by several basalt dikes.
Cuvier Island tourmalised rocks (B)	Good exposure of large black crystals of tourmaline. Good example of hornfelses. Tourmalinised alteration of country rocks intruded by mid-Tertiary diorite. Strongest in siliceous lithologies and breccias.
Whitianga Ferry Landing ignimbrites (C)	Well exposed ignimbrite, and exposed contacts between two ignimbrite flows.
Whitianga (Shakespeare Cliff) ignimbrite with clastic dikes (C)	Well exposed coastal section through Whitianga Group ignimbrite containing charred logs. Several clastic dikes between Maramaratotara Bay and Lonely Bay, up to 90cm in width; some show internal layering.
Maramaratotara Bay coastal features (B)	An excellent example of a visor notch carved into ignimbrite. Two levels of platform, one related to high tide and one to groundwater level. Notch at east end of Maramaratotara Bay. Also clastic dike in ignimbrite at this locality.
Cooks Beach blowhole (B)	One of three spectacular sea blowholes (daylighted sea caves) on the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula. Major tourist attraction. 10 x 10m across hole at the surface with vertical sides passing down 15m to sea level with a 2 m wide sea arch entrance eroded into ignimbrite cliff.
Cathedral Cove Hahei (B)	Spectacular coastal arch beneath headland; isolated stack (Te Horo Rock), impressive cliffs of white ignimbrite. Major tourist attraction.
Hahei rhyolite dome (C)	Complete coastal section through rhyolite dome. Exposures of non-spherulitic flow-banded rhyolite, representing a section through a dome.
Wigmore rhyolite dome (C)	Excellent example of flow-banding in rhyolite. Massive to platy dome with excellent examples of folded flow-banding and possible vent breccia cut by fine grained dike.
Big Bay blowhole, Hahei (C)	Largest blowhole on Coromandel Peninsula. Blowhole 40m high, at least 30m in diameter. Inactive at present.
Hot Water Beach foredune belt (C)	One-kilometre-long arcuate belt of virtually unmodified sand dunes extending 100-150m inland from the beach with numerous rounded high points just over 20m above MSL. A small stream estuary separates the northern end of the dune belt from the high country.
Orua Hot Springs (Hot Water Beach) (B)	One of only two hot springs at sea level in New Zealand. Hot water emerges through sand on the beach about 2m above low tide.
Paku tombolo Tairua (C)	One of the most easily accessible and visualized tombolos along the Coromandel coast. Tombolo linking Paku Hill to the mainland at Ocean Beach, Tairua.
Paku rhyolite dome and perlite locality (B)	
Pauanui barrier spit (C)	Superb example of a large barrier spit made of numerous dune ridges.

Name	Significance and Description
	Spit built up from at least 60 dune ridges.
Pauanui eroded columnar jointing (C)	Example of progression of different stages of erosion of a columnar jointed lava flow. Natural cobble stone pavement, erosion of shore platform with different stages of erosion of columnar jointed Late Miocene rhyolite lava flow.
Aldermen Islands coastal features (C)	A range of spectacular rocky coast landforms such as spires, needles and vertical bluffs. The Spire is a spectacular 100 m high rock with steep conical form. 'Pisa Rock' is a 2-3 m wide, 10 m high leaning needle that sticks out of the water off Raumahuaiti. Middle Island has a series of vertical cliffs, often with columnar-jointed rhyolite faces, and also a tunnel passing through the southwest part of the island.
Ruamahuaite andesite flow, Aldermen Islands (C)	Only exposure of andesite on Aldermen Islands. Three-metre-thick andesite flow and andesitic pyroclastic sequence unconformably beneath rhyolites.
Whiritoa Blowhole (C)	Most spectacular active blowhole on Coromandel Peninsula. Large blowhole formed in dacite on southern headland of Whiritoa Beach. Active during easterly storms. Seaward entrance and also landward entrance to lagoon.
Te Kouma Harbour, Coromandel Peninsula (C)	Drowned river valley, protected by Rangipukea Island offshore. Includes rugged headlands, extensive intertidal flats, and salt marsh at the head of the valley.
Fenchmans Cap old hat islet, Coromandel Peninsula (C)	Best example of an old hat islet on the west coast of Coromandel Peninsula. A steep-sided, round-topped islet and smaller rugged pinnacles surrounded by a shore platform barely 40m long and 2 m across.
Waitete Bay Oligocene (C)	Best exposure of Te Kuiti Group sequence on Coromandel Peninsula. About 50m of terrestrial or beach sediments overlain by Oligocene marine calcareous sandstone and limestone. Sandstone contains oyster shellbeds.
Ongohi Stream delta, northwest Coromandel (B)	One of the best and least modified examples of rare classical delta shapes along the coast of the North Island associated with a stream or river mouth. One-kilometre-wide, symmetrical delta at the mouth of Ongohi Stream, protruding into the Hauraki Gulf. Mostly made up of tonalite pebbles and boulders from Paritu Pluton.
Darkie Stream tourmaline (C)	A good and accessible example of tourmaline rosettes, on joint surfaces in dacite.
Paritu granite quarry (C)	Main source of 'Coromandel Granite', a widely used building and monumental stone in New Zealand. Abandoned quarry and wharf made of the quarry stone. Main wharf at Paritu constructed in 1918. Quarry now overgrown.
Fantail Bay, Paritu hornfels (C)	Best and most easily accessible example of the Paritu Pluton and contacts with greywacke, which has thermally metamorphosed to hornfels. One of the very few hornfels localities in the North Island. Exposures of the quartz diorite pluton. At northern contact (Fantail Bay) of pluton (tonalite at contact) with greywacke country rock, a porphyritic dike (dacite) passes from the hornfels into the pluton and has a swirled chilled contact. Good exposures.
Kai-iti Point porphyrite (C)	A small hydrothermally altered lopolithic basin-shaped intrusion of altered andesite, cutting Moehau Formation sediments, with prominent hydrothermal minerals, chlorite, epidote, albite, pyrite and rutile.
Fletchers Bay Waitemata Group sediments, northern Coromandel Peninsula (C)	Best sequence of these sediments on Coromandel Peninsula. Transgressive Waitemata Group sequence (on greywacke) with "Parnell Grits" passing up through a regressive sequence into Coromandel Group volcanics. Cut by dikes.
Sugar Loaf volcanic sequence, northern Coromandel Peninsula (C)	Spectacular pinnacles. Excellent exposures of volcanic features. Earliest preserved andesite eruption deposits in the Coromandel Volcanic Zone. Laharic conglomerate and breccia intruded by andesite dikes and minor flows. Also paleosols, petrified wood.

Name	Significance and Description
Port Waikato Sandspit (B)	Largest sandspit of active sparsely vegetated dunes on the west coast of New Zealand, with the exception of Farewell Spit. Large area of mobile sand dunes on a growing sandspit at the mouth of the Waikato River, where long-shore drift is greater than river discharge rates. The sandspit has extended northwards by more than 1.5km in the last 150 years.
Port Waikato to Tuakau Bridge Road Jurassic section (B)	Holostratotype section of Waikatoan Substage of Puroan Stage.
Huriwai Beach Jurassic plant beds (B)	Extremely well-preserved and historically significant upper Jurassic flora. Type locality of several species.
Huriwai-Waikawau coastal section Jurassic / Oligocene unconformity (C)	Oligocene rocks and unconformity; diverse topmost Jurassic macroflora. Deltaic Upper Tithonian (and perhaps basal Cretaceous) indurated siltstones, sandstones and conglomerate with diverse floras overlain with marked unconformity by Oligocene to Lower Miocene calcareous sandstone, flaggy limestone and marl.
Waiwiri Beach unconformity and basal Waitemata Group sediments (C)	Transgressive Waitemata Group sequence overlying a bored and eroded unconformity on the Te Akatea Limestone. The sequence contains inner shelf fossiliferous siltstones, outershelf glauconitic phosphatic cast beds and bathyal sediments of the Waikawau Sandstone.
Kaawa Creek – Ngatutura Bay section (B)	Completely interrelated upper Cenozoic strata and faulting. Type section, Kaawa Formation. Only significant Pliocene fauna in north-west North Island. Rich, diverse and well-preserved molluscs. Good example of faulting. Shellbeds unconformably overlying calcareous sandstone and marl, and overlain by basaltic flow and agglomerate, beach and dune sands, distal ignimbrite.
Ngatutura Point dissected eruptive centre sea stacks (B)	Most impressive coastal landforms eroded into columnar-jointed basalt in New Zealand. Spectacular outcrops of dissected eruptive centre including lava flows, dikes and diatrems. A multiple complex, deeply dissected and consisting of intrusions, flows and extensive pyroclastics deposits.
Gibsons Beach unconformity, fossil karst and mushroom rock, Te Akau (C)	Excellent exposure of channelled unconformity, sitting on paleokarst. Nearby is a small mushroom rock. Coarse sandstone and conglomerate of the Kawau Subgroup filling 5m deep channels in the Te Kuiti Group, in some places directly overlying a paleokarst surface. Also nearby is a 4m high mushroom rock of Ōtorohanga Limestone in the intertidal zone.
Carters Beach shore platforms, Raglan (B)	One of best examples in New Zealand of a remnant Holocene highstand shore platform, also excellent example of eroding rectangular shore platform in silty limestone. Partly eroded remnant of seaward-dipping shore platform eroded in silty limestone and cut by 1-2m spaced eroding joints forming a spectacular rectangular paving pattern. The remnant shore platform is 1.5-2m above the level of the modern shore platform at high tide level and in many places forms small flat-topped stacks.
Raglan coastal karst (C)	Most easily accessible and well known example of spectacular coastal karst on west coast North Island. Well-developed pavement with clints and grikes. Some low pinnacles. Four areas of coastal karst in intertidal zone and low vegetated cliffs. In several places the karst extends up onto the land as areas of extensive limestone rocky outcrops or discontinuous bluffs. Numerous small pinnacles, and areas of pavement with joints. Flaggy Oligocene limestone formed into high towers. Intertidal solution runnels well developed in places. Solution notches reflecting current and former sea levels.
Whale Bay lava flow section (B)	Well exposed sections of basalt lava flows.

Name	Significance and Description
Papanui Point Volcanics (C)	Well exposed section through Okete Volcanics. A sequence of olivine tholeiite lava flows exposed along the shoreline.
Taranaki Point karst, Aotea Harbour north head (B)	Spectacular coastal karst features outcropping on storm battered coast. Numerous limestone pinnacles and outcrops with variously developed fluting and solution features forms middle and lower cliffs and intertidal rocks. In a few places the limestone extends further inland into farmland.
Taranaki Point Volcanics (C)	Sequence of volcanics overlying flaggy Te Kuiti Group limestone. Sequence of Okete Volcanics lava flows (olivine tholeiite) overlying Te Kuiti Group flaggy limestone.
Aotea dune fields (B)	A large area of mobile dune fields - the biggest example on the west coast of the North Island. A 590ha transgressive dune field on the northern head of Aotea Harbour. It includes tall (120m) migrating dunes, dune slacks, deflation plains and a small dune lake.
Kāwhia (Te Puia) hot springs (C)	Hot springs in a region of about 25m diameter on the beach due west of Kāwhia.
Motutara Peninsula Jurassic and Oligocene sediments (C)	Oligocene overlying peneplain on Upper Jurassic siltstones. Very rich fossil locality in the Puroan. Dipping, moderately indurated Jurassic siltstones overlain unconformably by calcareous Oligocene siltstones.
Puti Point Jurassic fossiliferous siltstone, Kāwhia (B)	Type locality of Puti Siltstone Formation, a massive, blue-grey siltstone, thin sandstone. Rich fossil locality in Puroan Stage.
Kāwhia coastal karst (B)	Best area of coastal karst in New Zealand. Ephemeral wetlands in drowned dolines. Polygonal karst inland on Rakaunui Peninsula, mostly in grassland. Some of the dolines have swamps or small lakes in them, partly as a result of partial submergence as a result of Holocene sea level rise.
Kāwhia Harbour wave-cut notch (B)	Excellent example of rare wave-cut notches reflecting former higher sea level. Wave-cut notch about 2m above current mean sea level, formed in limestone along a small section of Kāwhia Harbour coast.
Waiharakeke Bridge - Kinohaku Jurassic sediments (B)	Easily accessible continuous sequence of Upper Jurassic formations. East-dipping, indurated siltstone grading up to sandstone and volcanic pebble conglomerate. The conglomerate weathers to a distinctive red clay.
Kāwhia Harbour Ohaua Point Jurassic fossils (B)	Holostratotype of Ohauan Stage, with rich macrofossil faunas in concretionary siltstones.
Kāwhia Harbour, Heteri Point, Jurassic macrofossils (B)	Holostratotype of Heterian Stage, with rich macrofossil faunas in shelly siltstone.
Kāwhia Harbour, Totara Point and Captain Kings Shell Bed Jurassic fossils (B)	Lower part of Heterian Stage stratotype, includes historically important Captain Kings Shellbed containing a rich bivalve and brachiopod fauna. Type locality of many species.
Te Maika Point Jurassic sequence and fossil forest, Kāwhia Harbour (B)	Holostratotype of Te Maikan Stage. Includes tree stumps in-situ.
Kāwhia West Coast Lower to Middle Jurassic fossiliferous sequence (B)	Most important and continuous fossiliferous Lower to Middle Jurassic sequence in New Zealand. Stratotypes of New Zealand Jurassic stages Aratauran and Ururoan. Includes important Dactyloceras bed with a rich and varied fossil fauna.
Anaomaki Point volcanic section (C)	Well preserved section of the Orangiwhao Volcanics, with exposures of the Orangiwhao porphyritic andesite and plagioclase-hornblende porphyry, lavas, dikes and plutons.
Albatross Point, Kāwhia Coast Jurassic sediments and syncline (B)	Reasonably well exposed syncline showing geomorphic expression of dip slopes.



Name	Significance and Description
	Sandstone, siltstone, conglomerate, carbonaceous beds. Gently plunging syncline with one well-exposed limb on shore platform.
Marokopa mouth sandspits and dune field (C)	Interestingly entwined north-and south-extending sandspits at Marokopa River mouth. The Marokopa River flows around a northward-extending sandspit now occupied by Marokopa village then, before reaching the sea, it is diverted southwards by one of the most pristine southward-extending sandspits on the southwest Waikato coastline.
Marokopa Coast Triassic – Jurassic fossil-bearing sequence (B)	Good exposure of Triassic-Jurassic boundary recorded by ammonites.
Kiritehere Coast Triassic section (B)	Continuous exposure of Upper Triassic to basal Jurassic strata; includes stratotypes of Warepan substages; well exposed examples of submarine slumps. Excellent series of numerous zeolitised vitric tuff beds in sedimentary sequence. East-dipping fossiliferous sandstones, siltstones and shellbeds. Sequence contains several hundred thin, zeolitised tuffaceous beds.
Waikawau Beach Miocene sediments (C)	Good exposure of sediments and structure of Mohakatino Formation.
Waikawau meandering river estuary (C)	Some of best and most easily seen cut-off river meander loops in region. The estuary has flooded the lower meandering section of the Waikawau Valley
Awakino River mouth barrier (C)	The only river mouth barrier in the region - good example of the effects of longshore drift.
Awakino River mouth Mōkau group / Mohakatino Group contact (C)	Contact between Mōkau and Mohakatino Groups. Good exposure of Mohakatino volcanoclastics. Lag horizon of bored concretions marks the boundary between massive, non-volcanogenic mudstones and sandstones below (Mōkau Group) with well-bedded volcanogenic sandstones (Mohakatino Group) above.
Mōkau Estuary (C)	Most natural, least modified tidal estuary in region. Flooded meandering estuary.

# Schedule 4 - Outstanding natural character areas

## | Āpiti 4 – Āhua tūturu

Schedule 4 contains identified areas of outstanding natural character in the coastal marine area and their contributing values and characteristics.

ONC Number	Name	Attributes	Key Values
1	Pūkoro - Chenier Plains and Miranda Wetlands	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The shell barrier beach at Miranda is the largest in New Zealand and is the only one of its type that is actively aggrading.</li> <li>Chenier Plains: Internationally significant landform at Miranda.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Firth of Thames contains a Ramsar site of international significance to migratory wading birds, including the rare New Zealand Dotterel.</li> <li>Associated mangroves add to biotic sequences from land to sea.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Largely remote unmodified shores amplifies the perceived naturalness.</li> <li>Tidal changes promote ephemeral activity.</li> <li>Presence of birds amplifies perceived level of naturalness.</li> </ul>
2	Motukawao Island Group	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Islands are surrounded by unmodified rocky shelves and open waters.</li> <li>Prominent and unmodified volcanic island group.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Area of very high conservation value for demersal fish occur around Motuoruhi Island.</li> <li>Unmodified vegetation sequences between islands and sea floor.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A sense of isolation and remoteness.</li> <li>High levels of perceived naturalness due to lack of modification.</li> </ul>
3	Coastline between Fletcher Bay and Kennedy Bay	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Limited modification to wild and rugged coastline.</li> <li>Dramatic cliffs and exposed rocky shores amplify areas unique geology.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Entire coastal near shore indented coastal waters hold an array of high biotic habitats with limited modification.</li> <li>High reef fish richness between Port Jackson and Tuatēawa.</li> <li>Steep valleys and spurs contain a mixture of unmodified native shrub land and forest.</li> <li>Extensive areas under formal protection in Conservation Areas, QEII covenants. The Moehau ecological area in particular, supports an almost complete altitudinal sequence of plant and animal communities from near sea level to sub-alpine conditions. It is home to a number of rare or endangered endemic species (e.g. land snails, Archey's frog).</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unmodified coastal edge forms majority of coastline, amplifying perceived naturalness.</li> <li>Wild and remote feel within more open waters.</li> </ul>
4	Coastline, coastal waters and islands off Cathedral Cove	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Spectacular coastal arch, isolated stack (Te Horo Rock) and impressive cliffs of white ignimbrite at Cathedral Cove cumulatively read as an extremely well defined set of landforms of scientific and educational value that are unmodified.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve contains a variety of habitats including hard rock, soft sediment, caves and arches with high levels of ecological naturalness.</li> </ul>

ONC Number	Name	Attributes	Key Values
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ribbon of indigenous bush skirts the steep coastal fringe.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cumulatively, the offshore islands hold high degrees of perceived naturalness due to their modified form.</li> <li>High experiential values due to the bush lined white sands and recognisable landforms of Te Horo Rock and Cathedral Cove.</li> <li>Visually dramatic eroded coastal landforms that are etched into the psyche of New Zealanders and visitors.</li> </ul>
5	Remote coastline and coastal waters off Taupuaetahi	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exposed rocky cliffs, shores and beaches are representative of natural processes.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comprised mainly of Coromandel State Forest Park (notably southern sections) and numerous areas of QEII land.</li> <li>Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Access is difficult to gain with a rugged shoreline which amplifies perceived naturalness.</li> <li>Very high degree of experiential values due to limited modification and extent of indigenous bush cover.</li> <li>Wildness and remote experiential values along the rocky and indigenous bush-clad coastline.</li> </ul>
6	Aldermen Islands and coastal waters	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forms part of a larger submarine platform that has been eroded almost entirely by wave action.</li> <li>Steep rhyolite features provide a range of spectacular rocky coastal landforms such as spires, needles and vertical bluffs that extend through the archipelago.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A nature reserve/wildlife sanctuary comprising five main islands with high reef fish.</li> <li>Contains threatened and endangered species including tuatara, giant centipedes; lizards (geckos and skinks) and tusked weta and giant weka. These islands also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.</li> <li>High diversity and richness of demersal reef fish.</li> <li>Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Very high remote values evident, including darkness of the sky.</li> </ul>
7	Mercury Islands associated coastal waters	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exposed and rocky shorelines are devoid of modification.</li> <li>Spectacular exposed geology and coastal landforms exemplify coastal processes including the Korapuki Sea Arch; the Stanley Island basalt vents and cone; and Red Mercury Island basalt.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Six of the Mercury Islands (excluding Great Mercury Island) are nature reserves.</li> <li>High species of reef fish and intact habitats around islands</li> <li>These Islands contain threatened and endangered species including tuatara, giant centipedes; lizards (geckos and skinks) and tusked weta and giant weka. These islands also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.</li> <li>Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification.</li> </ul>
8	Repanga / Cuvier Island and associated coastal waters	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exposed and rocky shorelines are devoid of modification.</li> <li>Repanga / Cuvier Island tourmalinised rocks represents a good example of exposed large black crystals of tourmaline evident from the shoreline.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Repanga / Cuvier Island is a nature reserve.</li> <li>High species of reef fish and intact habitats around the island.</li> <li>Contain threatened and endangered species including tuatara, giant centipedes; lizards (geckos and skinks) and tusked weta</li> </ul>

ONC Number	Name	Attributes	Key Values
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>and giant weka. These island also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.</li> <li>Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea.</li> <li>Regenerating native bush cover.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification.</li> <li>Strong sense of remoteness due to distance from mainland.</li> <li>Modification associated to DOC cabins and historical light house.</li> </ul>
9	Coastal waters and margins of Aotea Harbour	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dramatic and highly dynamic large active dune system at the harbour mouth. Considered a geopreservation site the abiotic processes are an excellent example of the unmodified coastal processes of the west coast.</li> <li>The shallow harbour and its intertidal zone remain largely unmodified except for the margins of the residential settlement. The fluvial processes remain largely unmodified excluding some culverts at the southern edges of the harbour where vehicle access is provided for. The remainder of the harbour retains the natural estuarine and wetland features which contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour.</li> <li>Inner harbour islands are remnants of the harbour margins.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some 930ha of regenerating forest and indigenous scrubland borders the harbour, with seven ecological sites registered by Waikato Regional Council.</li> <li>Potahi Point sand dunes provides an excellent example of native vegetation sequencing from dune to coastal shrubland to estuarine vegetation. This is a key ecological site.</li> <li>Rauri Head dune scrubland is also a registered ecological site.</li> <li>Large areas of the harbour margin are heavily vegetated with native bush cover transitioning to estuarine vegetation and wetlands upstream. The natural patterns and their connectedness highlight the natural landform and microclimate present in each area of the harbour.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification.</li> <li>High experiential values associated with the interpretation of the dominant abiotic and biotic processes occurring within the harbour and on its margins. The experience of the 'entire dune process' from coast to inner harbour is memorable and recognised as completely natural and unmodified.</li> <li>The lack of access and in turn remoteness is apparent in the mid to northern parts of the area.</li> <li>The lack of human modification within the identified area is a significant part of the experience of the naturalness of the area.</li> </ul>
10	Karewa Island / Gannet Island	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Located 19 kilometres off the coast the island is 2ha in size rising some 15m above sea level from a 65m base. The island is an eroded tuff ring that erupted about half a million years ago.</li> <li>The conditions are harsh with no permanent fresh water.</li> <li>The low-lying nature of the island means that in big swells the island can be entirely washed over.</li> <li>Guano is present and was mined in the late 1800's for a short period of time.</li> <li>Dynamic and exposed island expressive of the natural abiotic processes which formed it and continue to erode it.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	

ONC Number	Name	Attributes	Key Values
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A wildlife sanctuary and New Zealand's largest breeding colony for Australasian gannet birds (<i>Morus serrator</i> / takapu), holding about 8000 breeding pairs.</li> <li>• It is a haul out for NZ Fur Seal.</li> <li>• Sealife is abundant and is popular destination for diving and bird watching.</li> <li>• Extreme isolation and exposure results in an absence of vascular plants and flora.</li> <li>• Vegetation is limited to a small area (3m<sup>2</sup> on the summit cliffs) comprising <i>Prasiola</i>, <i>Xanthoria</i>, <i>Tortula</i> and <i>Xanthoparmelia</i>, primarily lichen, moss and green alga.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High perceived naturalness values due to extremely minimal modification.</li> <li>• High sense of remoteness and experience of the daily natural processes from abiotic and biotic factors.</li> <li>• Experiential values are highly associated with isolation and observation of natural wildlife and dynamic coastal processes.</li> </ul>
<b>11</b>	Coastal Waters and Margins of Kawhia Harbour	<b>Abiotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The shallow harbour and its intertidal zone remain largely unmodified except for the margins of the residential settlement. The fluvial processes remain largely unmodified excluding some culverts at the southern edges of the harbour where road and vehicle access is provided for. The remainder of the harbour retains the natural estuarine and wetland features which contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour.</li> <li>• The heavily vegetation southern extent of the harbour demonstrates impressive sequencing of native vegetation through to estuarine vegetation.</li> </ul>
		<b>Biotic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Known for containing sites of national importance for wintering indigenous and international migratory shorebirds.</li> <li>• The harbour is identified as being an Area of Significant Conservation Value (ASCV) by Waikato Regional Council.</li> </ul>
		<b>Experiential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification on the southern extents of the harbour margin and the mid to southern portions of the harbour body itself.</li> <li>• High experiential values associated with the interpretation of the dominant abiotic and biotic processes occurring within the harbour and on its margins.</li> <li>• The lack of access and in turn remoteness is apparent in the southern areas of the harbour.</li> <li>• The lack of human modification within the identified area is a significant part of the experience of the naturalness of the area.</li> </ul>

# Schedule 5 – Historic heritage | Āpiti 5 – Taonga onamata

Schedule 5 contains identified historic heritage sites in the Waikato region's CMA. Schedule 5 includes the following schedules:

- Schedule 5A: Heritage Structures - discrete structures or historic heritage sites readily identifiable
- Schedule 5B: Heritage Sites - larger historic heritage site or more poorly defined sites
- Schedule 5C: Shipwrecks – includes known locations and those shipwrecks that do not have a mapped location.

Sites have been identified from the New Zealand Heritage List, the NZ Archaeological Association Database and the Australian National Shipwreck Database, along with additional known significant sites not on these lists e.g. Raglan Wharf.

Note that the Plan only addresses sites located entirely or partially in the CMA. Some are potentially in the CMA as determined by their site descriptions. Sites should be verified by individual on-site investigation, as to their current condition and precise location.

## Schedule 5A - Heritage structures

ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH1	HNZ 6201	Midden/ Artefacts	Site extends into water at Port Jackson	Unknown
HH2	NZAA T10/58	Fishing	Fish Trap. 11 x 6 metre circle of stones forming a pool on the volcanic shoreline for a fish trap.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH3	NZAA T10/720	Tramway	Tramway on the west bank of the Tangiario River Mouth. Visible in the foreshore 35m from the beach. Eight wooden sleepers lying in a NW-SE direction visible in the sand and stones.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH4	NZAA T10/330	Landing	Canoe Beaching. Canoe landing on artificial terrace with anchor stone	Indigenous pre-1769
HH5	NZAA T10/600	Timber milling	Timber Boom. Remains of link chain in rocks at north end of Teeney Bay from logging boom.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH6	NZAA T10/396	Jetty	Jetty. Series of rough 12-15cm square footings cut into soft rocky platform to received jetty piles that have decayed.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH7	NZAA S10/375	Fishing	Fish Trap. Fish trap located below high tide, appears to be made from smallboulders but no further details are clear from the records.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH8	NZAA S10/79	Fishing	Flounder Trap. Semi-circular trap of stones 71 yards long and 30 yards across. Green and grey obsidian, midden and ovenstones found nearby.	Indigenous pre-1769, Contact
HH9	NZAA T10/706	Cave/ rock shelter	Rock Shelters. Three rock shelters at back of 2m raised beach. Midden, bone, and obsidian observed in 1983.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH10	NZAA T10/853	Quarry	Quarry used to create basalt tools located along the base and lower part of Motutu Point cliff face. Motutu Point is composed of basalt outcrops with examples of where flakes had been removed at high tide level.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH11	NZAA T10/721	Opera Sawmill (Timber milling)	Sawmill and associated features including a tramway and ballast quay. NZ Timber Company constructed a tramway along the harbour foreshore to bring timber from Oponoi to a wharf adjacent to the Opera Sawmill. Booms were in place along the western shore. Slipway or tramway on the beach, only one metal rail remains. A heap of stone ballast near to the low tide mark c.200m to the east of concrete sheep dips. Breakwater or quay at the tip of triangular shaped sandspit, rectangular, extends from below beach.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH12	HNZ 9419	Tahanga Quarries	Extent includes Pt Bed of Opito Bay	Unknown
HH13	NZAA T11/751	Tramway	Tramway. Causeway extends into mudflat, 35m long and 0.6m high mase of clay and manuka fascines. A channel is cut through the mangroves from the end of the causeway. Wooden piles beyond the tidal channel, which are the remains of a boom or wharf.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH14	NZAA S11/887	Shipyards	Historic shipyard. Possibly established originally by William Webster, trader, whose trading post is S11/888 in Aropawa Bay on same island. Raised rectangular bank at the eastern end of Tawhiti Bay and immediately above mean high water mark.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH15	NZAA S11/886	Shipyards	Shipyards. Pit where timber for boat building yard was sawn.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH16	NZAA T11/719	Burial/ cemetery	Urupa/ Midden. Midden with evidence for human remains. Eroding west edge of an urupa.	Indigenous pre-1769

ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH17	NZAA S11/925	Stone Walls	Stone wall at North Head, Te Kouma Harbour. 80cm high enclosing a flat area of shingle bank c.20m across at the base of headland pa S11/59.	Unknown
HH18	NZAA S11/927	Landing	Stone heap/ mound on the beach west of pa site S11/926. Possibly a canoe landing with channel.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH19	HNZ 4675 NZAA T11/613	Old Stone Wharf	Stone wharf, constructed 1837. Wharf/ jetty.	Contact 1769-1840, Colonial 1840-1900
HH20	NZAA T11/1011	Timber milling	Timber boom and stone wall. Two wooden posts eroding at base and a low stone wall on estuary side of the boom.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH21	HNZ 4649	Rock Silos (2)	(blank)	Unknown
HH22	NZAA S11/627	Burial/ cemetery	Burial. Burial. Under large overhanging rock on southern shore of Manaia Harbour.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH23	NZAA T11/868	Fishing	Fish Trap. Semi-circular wall of stones located at the tidal zone of the estuary (Firth of Thames) for fish trap.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH24	NZAA T11/1010	Timber milling	Timber milling remains. Timber off-cuts 50cm below surface extending onto mudflats over a length of +/-50m. Timber appears to be off-cuts of sawn kauri. Sawdust and off-cuts from the outside of logs were dumped into the harbour and used in reclamation so timber could be stored.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH25	NZAA T12/191	Fishing	Fish Trap. Long crescent shaped mound of large boulders, submerged at high tide. Approximately 45m long and up to 3m high.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH26	HNZ 4666 NZAA T12/1030	Burke Street wharf (aka 'Goods Wharf')	Wharf originally constructed 1872 as part of goldfields transportation system. In the 1920s, a scheme was devised to convert the old Burke St wharf into a deep water harbour but this was abandoned. Concrete piles from the 1920s scheme and breakwater walls that were partially complete. Stumps of wooden piles from the original wharf can also be seen at low tide.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH27	HNZ 4672	Shortland Wharf	Shortland Street, Wharf Jellicoe crescent	Colonial 1840-1900
HH28	HNZ 4681	Kopu Bridge	1920s bridge in Thames. Much of the structure's historical significance is derived from its design, which made provision for the considerable river traffic that had begun in earnest in the 1880s and upon which the region initially depended to facilitate development. Bridge structure.	Modern 1900-
HH29	NZAA T12/504	Pa	Headland pa defended by double ditch and bank, with transverse and lateral terraces and a possible pit. Cave below at northern end of small beach, with petroglyphs and modern graffiti. Petroglyphs in cave below northern end of small beach.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH30	NZAA T12/498	Pa	Headland pa with summit platform, lateral terraces (to W) and landward deep transverse ditch. Steep cliff to E and Caves at sea level. Caves at sea level, and to north and NW of pa there are burial recorded in the dunes behind the beach (not clear if in the CMA).	Indigenous pre-1769
HH31	NZAA R14/331	Engravings	Rock engravings on flat, low rocks, exposed by tidal scour and meandering of Waimai Stream. Petroglyph- Maori names/words, most letters 20cm tall, 5mm deep; also marks left by horse shoes.	Contact 1769-1840



ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH32	NZAA R14/348	Quarry	Small exposure of lahar deposit that contains lumps of tough, fine-grained basalt. Basalt quarry and stone flakes found on west side of inlet. For 20-30m along high-tide mark there is eroded basalt from the lahar, & basalt flakes from pre-European Maori use for stone tool making.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH33	NZAA R14/346	Fishing	C-shaped line of calcareous sandstone and/or limestone rocks. "C"-shape line of rocks about 25m from end to end and 15m across to form a fish trap.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH34	(blank)	Raglan Wharf	Built in the later 1910s/1920s Raglan Wharf was one of the first examples built in New Zealand of reinforced concrete. Wharf at the end of Wallis Street in Raglan.	Modern 1900-
HH35	HNZ 9441	Putoetoe Redoubt (Former)	Extent boundary appears to be based on shoreline of Whaingaroa Harbour	Unknown
HH36	NZAA R14/355	Quarry	Limestone Workings. Limestone slabs from a small quarrying operation c.1880s. On a rock platform on the shoreline exposed at low tide, Narrows Bay. 60 x 30 m.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH37	NZAA R14/50	Tattooed Rocks	Petroglyphs: 'tattooed' basalt rocks of local origin, apparently drawn on with ship tar, show Maori facial tattoo patterns and initials FC and TA. Petroglyph are near the high tide mark and are frequently buffeted by high seas.	Contact 1769-1840
HH38	NZAA R14/242	Retaining Wall	Dry-stone retaining wall constructed out of limestone face stones and quarried basalt backing. Possible wharf/quay/fishtrap. - function unclear. Retaining wall constructed of stone in the form of two right-angle triangles. Function unknown.	Contact 1769-1840
HH39	NZAA R14/436	Landing	Stone arrangement, stands on the mud flats on the left bank of the Oporoturu estuary, 1.5 km up the channel from the Oporoturu bridge. It is immediately south of a small embayment created by the discharge of a short unnamed stream into the estuary. Linear arrangement of stones comprises 17-20 m of rounded river cobbles arranged in a line projecting from the shoreline out towards the channel. The arrangement is approximately 2 m wide at its widest point.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH40	NZAA R14/236	Fishing	Stone alignment, stone heap/ mound. Stone ridges, heaps and alignments on mudflat.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH41	NZAA R15/107	Working area	Specialised workshop for grinding and polishing stone adzes. 1979: Seven boulders of hard sandstone have up to 19 scalloped groves and cavities each. By 1997 only two boulders not covered by sand. The site is in rocky bed at mouth of Marumaruitu Stream, directly beneath pa R15/58 and just below the high water mark.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH42	NZAA R15/702	Maari Crossing (Road)	Road low tide. Fascined road incorporating two causeways, paved with rocks ca. 10cm diameter.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH43	NZAA R15/711	Aotea Beach Road	Approximately 3m wide roadway cut across the rougher parts of the coastal rock bench. Rock cutting for Aotea Beach Road, below high tide.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH44	NZAA R15/710	Working area	A slab of rock about 1x1x0.5m lying on the beach appears to have been used for sharpening adzes. The rock is lying on the beach at the tip of the headland.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH45	NZAA R15/692	Te Wharemataiti Cave (Rockshelter and Midden/Oven)	Headland with two rockshelters with associated midden. Rock shelter with livable floor in the front of which is a layer of solid midden. A second rock shelter with midden is identified on the seaward side of a stack, the latter located at the end of the point.	Indigenous pre-1769

ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH46	NZAA R15/599	Road	Road - Low-tide road across mudflats. 200m long and 3-4m wide. Built up of rocks with kerbs made of larger stone	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH47	NZAA R15/490	Cupboard	Cool store cut into rock face. Within the hole, horizontal lengths of no8 wire have had their ends embedded into the walls to form racks/shelves. South-facing cut of 39 x 46 x 80 cm, immediately opposite (NE) of Ngatokakairiri Island.	Modern 1900-
HH48	NZAA R15/187	Ngatokakairiri (Pa)	Islet Pa. Steps leading to coastline on SW corner are in the CMA.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH49	HNZ 9425	Te Papa o Karewa (Wahi Tapu)	The extent of registration encompasses two groves of pohutukawa trees known as Te Papa o Karewa and Tangi te Korowhiti and the land (and part of the foreshore) described as Blk X Kawhia North SD (NZ Gazette 1913, p.320) South Auckland Land District. Area of Wahi Tapu that includes a tunnel system and the landing site of the Tainui waka (the masonry groyne) . The area is approximately 245 metres long, 55 metres wide and 1.3 ha.	Unknown
HH50	NZAA R15/402	Boat Channel	According to the account of an early settler this is the site of a boat channel connecting Oparau channel to the Awaroa channel, dug by pre-contact Maori. Possible man-made channel with a depth of over 1 metre at low-tide. Further zigzag boat channel may also be present closer in to the peninsula.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH51	NZAA R15/513	Ballast	Ballast Pile. Ballast pile on the sand bar that runs between Totara point and Te Maika. Exposed at unusually low tides and 4m across where visible. Rocks range in size with most examples appearing to have been freshly quarried volcanic rock.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH52	NZAA R15/514	Ballast	Ballast pile, similar to R15/513. Patch of rocks at edge of channel exposed only at unusually low tides. About 4m across where visible but more may be buried beneath sand. Most rocks of soft iron-rich sandstone. Some of same hard vesicular grey volcanic rock as ballast pile at R15/513.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH53	NZAA R15/574	Shipyards	Shipyards. Possible boat yard. Four piles located in the bay.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH54	NZAA R16/561	Ballast	Ballast Heaps. Four heaps of ballast rock spread along the edge of the channel over a distance of 100m. Heaps are 3-6m diameter, and rise to 0,5m above the surrounding mud.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH55	NZAA R17/87	Tunnel	Tunnel for moving cattle from the north beach to the Waikawau Valley. Possible that the tunnel connects to the CMA.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH56	NZAA R17/99	Flax milling	Flaxmill / Tramway, Presumed to be for transportation of flax from valley to beach. Tramway remains on the wavecut rock bench. Slots cut into rock to accommodate sleepers for a NZ narrow gauge track.	Colonial 1840-1900, Modern 1900-
HH57	NZAA R18/91	Cave/ rock shelter	Cave with evidence of pre-contact occupation. Original entrance appears closed off with the current opening the collapsed seaward wall of the cave. Artefacts, fireplaces, kokowai, and midden. Single storm surge or heavy king tide could wash the cave out and destroy the archaeological sites.	Indigenous pre-1769

## Schedule 5B - Heritage sites

ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH58	NZAA S10/44	Working area/flaking floor	Area of flakes, roughouts, hammer stones and obsidian chips scattered among beach boulders. Working area/ flaking floor extends for some distance on either side of road on both sides of Ongohi Stream mouth.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH59	NZAA T10/219	Burial, Working area/flaking floor	Beach working floor, recorded in 1960. Working area/ flaking floor in dunes. Washing away. Previously human remains and moa eggs have apparently been discovered in the dunes.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH60	NZAA T10/266	Burial/ cemetery	Burial, recorded in 1972. Human remains noted eroding and being recovered.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH61	NZAA T10/305	Burial/ cemetery	Burial, pit. This site has been excavated (1955). Recovered was the burial of a women in an upright position. Could signify further remains are present.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH62	NZAA T10/312	Burial/ cemetery	Crouched Burial. The grave of a young woman was discovered and excavated. This was a simple hole in the boulder beach into which the trussed skeleton had been inserted in the typical upright posture. The head faced due south. Could signify further remains are present.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH63	NZAA T10/70	Burial/ cemetery	Burial. Between Wharf Rd, the 2 streams, and the main Colville Rd north. Small swampy area at the edge of Colville Bay. Human bones have been located in the estuary over the years.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH64	NZAA T10/373	Working area/flaking floor	A formerly extensive occupation floor as suggested by the widespread scatter of basalt flakes, occasional rough-out and hangi stone. Flakes and adze rough-outs that extend for two thirds of the beach length.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH65	NZAA T10/372	Burial/ cemetery	Archaic Burial. Burial in consolidated dune sand a few metres above the beach and eroding by wind actions.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH66	NZAA T10/385	Burial/ cemetery	Dune Burial. Located in the foredunes.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH67	NZAA T10/390	Whaling Station	Whaling Station. Three large "try-pots"; one halfway along beach, one under water in the bay and one complete in Whitianga.	Contact 1769-1840, Colonial 1840-1900
HH68	NZAA T10/509	Whaling Station	Stated to have been a Whaling Station in early 19th century and visible evidence lasted into the early decades of the 20th century, reported by hearsay, but no visible evidence by 1970s. No visible evidence recorded in 1970s.	Colonial 1840-1900
HH69	HNZ 7464	Papa Aroha (Wahi Tapu)	Area of Wahi Tapu that includes the land known as Papaaroha 6B7 (CT SA67D/961), Papaaroha 6B8 (CT SA67D/962), Pt Papaaroha No.5 urupā blk (CT 309346), Papaaroha 6B12 (CT SA67D/966), South Auckland Land District. Area of Wahi Tapu contains four known urupa, Kotikotiweka Tapu, Tahuna-Torea Tapu, Te Nanga Tapu and Koputauki Tapu.	Unknown
HH70	NZAA S11/640	Burial/ cemetery	Midden/ Burial. Extending along most of the beach frontage of Little passage.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH71	NZAA T11/348	Working area/flaking floor	Abundant large basalt flakes and obsidian flakes. Flakes and midden found along bank behind beach.	Indigenous pre-1769

ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH72	NZAA T11/76	Pa	Headland pa and associated working floor. Associated working floor on the east side of the pa in a small mud-flat bay, being eroded by the sea. Greenstone pendant found here.	Indigenous pre-1769, Colonial 1840-1900
HH73	NZAA T11/690	Working area/flaking floor	Working area of basalt flakes and some obsidian with residents recalling collection of adze roughouts. Working area/ flaking floor exposed in intertidal zone.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH74	NZAA T11/135	Working area/flaking floor	Numerous flakes of Tahanga Basalt eroding out of dark soil exposed in boat access cutting. Basalt flaking activity found along south bank of wigmore stream.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH75	NZAA S12/364	Burial/ cemetery/ waahi tapu	Urupa. This site is traditionally known to Ngati Paoa and has been used in living memory as an urupa. It is also likely to be prehistoric. Site is located at the Whakatiwai River mouth on both the north and south banks.	Indigenous pre-1769, Modern 1900-
HH76	NZAA T12/975	Awarua (Pa)	Pa site/settlement. Historic midden. Historic midden identified on eastern foreshore, and bricks extending out c.20m possibly identifying Watts trading store (1872).	Colonial 1840-1900
HH77	NZAA T12/3	Midden/Oven	Archaic midden and artefacts (including fishing hooks, an imitation whale-tooth pendant and adze making debris and roughouts). Visible in the inter-tidal zone and on land between Beach, Bond and Port Roads. Artefact - stone flakes, fishing gear, obsidian, adze, and ornaments, middens and ovens.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH78	NZAA R14/58	Working area/flaking floor	Working area with broken/reject adze blanks, waste flakes, finished adzes, drillpoints, and midden. Flake, adze pre-forms found on shoreward facing dune slope about 50 metres back from high water mark, seen from shoreline as a scatter of bleached shell and stone material covering about 20 x 25 metres.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH79	NZAA R14/342	Source Site	Scatter of yellow-brown chert over an area 30m across. Cores and flakes recovered, chert buried in swamp deposits behind beach. 120m to SW are ovenstones with midden at back of beach. Chert cores and flakes found along the beach.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH80	NZAA R15/794	Burial/ cemetery	Shell midden and human remains reported, but not identified by an archaeologist. Site is located within eroding dune system at Ruapuke Beach. Site is located approx. 400m south of Matawha Point and c. 400m south-west of R15/101. Located on a beach/sand dune.	Indigenous pre-1769, Contact 1769-1840, Colonial 1840-1900
HH81	NZAA R15/553	Waka	Waka hull ca. 12m long and 0.8m wide, originally recorded as lying in the intertidal zone on the edge of Aotea Harbour. A later visit records that the gully appears to now be above high tide level due to silting. Seen in 1988 but not found on revisit in Feb 2004. Likely to have been partly buried in silt and trampled by cattle after scrub cleared. The waka could not be observed and considered mostly destroyed.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH82	HNZ 7562	Te Waihoanga (Wahi Tapu)	Area of Wahi Tapu, Legal Description: Road Reserve- Harbour Road, Kawhia	Unknown

ID	Data Source Reference	Name / Type	Description	Period
HH83	NZAA R16/221	Pa	Pa, as part of the description for this site a waka is recorded in the mudflats. Local knowledge identified c.2 feet of a canoe visible in the bank of a small spring just above the mudflats at Kaiwaka, marked by a rock sticking out of the mudflats. Not seen from the c.1960s onwards.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH84	NZAA R17/80	Occupation (this is a collection of sites)	Midden, hangi and koiwi. In-situ hangi, midden, and 3 burial on the seaward crest of the major sand dune.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH85	NZAA R17/139	Burial/ cemetery	Burial.	Indigenous pre-1769
HH86	NZAA R18/79	Burial/ cemetery	Urupa. Cemetery/ urupa. On the estuary foreshore is approximate location of Te Punga a Tainui (archorstone), a mauri and boundary marker, now removed to Maniaroa Marae. On the seaward side of the peninsular several burials have washed out in the sand.	Indigenous pre-1769

## Schedule 5C - Shipwrecks

ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
HH87	ANSDB 9290	Helen Denny	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 728.0, year wrecked: 1948	Cuvier Island	Modern 1900-
HH88	ANSDB 10584	Onyx	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 419.73, year wrecked: 1925	Cuvier Island	Modern 1900-
HH89	ANSDB 10203	Elizabeth Curle	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 76.0, year wrecked: 1882	Curvier Island	Colonial 1840-1900
HH90	ANSDB 9284	Nucula	Oiler,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 4614.0, year wrecked: 1947	11 miles ENE of Curvier Island	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9596	Eagle	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 92.0, year wrecked: 1850	Cape Colville	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9638	Auckland	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1853	Cape Colville	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9961	Ariel	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 18.06 Year wrecked: 1868	Cabbage Bay, Cape Colville	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10164	Heather Bell	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.0, year wrecked: 1879	Jackson Reef, Cape Colville	Colonial 1840-1900
HH91	ANSDB 9282	Eileen Bell	year wrecked: 1947	Port Charles, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH92	ANSDB 10192	Isabella Pratt	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Top sail schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 71.13, year wrecked: 1881	Port Charles, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900

ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
HH93	ANSDB 8637	Fiery Star	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ship. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 1361.0, year wrecked: 1865	15 miles south of Curvier Island	Colonial 1840-1900
HH94	ANSDB 9193	Thomas Bryan	Type of vessel: Screw steamer Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 215.8, year wrecked: 1928.	Between Port Charles and Waikawau Bay, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH95	ANSDB 8745	Harriet King	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Brigantine. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 155.0, year wrecked: 1872	Port Charles, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10588	Genevie M Tucker	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 487.0, year wrecked: 1926	Waiaro, Colville	Modern 1900-
HH96	ANSDB 9243	Yvonne	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch, year wrecked: 1937	Waikawau Bay, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH97	ANSDB 10141	Sydney	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1877	Cabbage Bay, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
HH98	ANSDB 9686	Undine	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 21.0, year wrecked: 1856	Western coast of Great Mercury Island	Colonial 1840-1900
HH99	ANSDB 8991	Stanley	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Brigantine. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 350.2, year wrecked: 1899	Double Island, west of Red Mercury	Colonial 1840-1900
HH100	ANSDB 9355	Relax	Fishing vessel year wrecked: 1968	Red Mercury Island, Von Luckners Cove	Modern 1900-
HH101	ANSDB 8935	Maitai	Type of vessel: Single screw steamer Sailing rig type: Fore & aft Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 275.0, year wrecked: 1889	Mercury Island	Colonial 1840-1900
HH102	ANSDB 9062	Kathleen Maud	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1908	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH103	ANSDB 9272	Combine	Lighter,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 58.0, year wrecked: 1945	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH104	ANSDB 10330	Start	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.22, year wrecked: 1893	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
HH105	ANSDB 10089	Blonde	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 14.0, year wrecked: 1875	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel peninsula	Colonial 1840-1900
HH106	ANSDB 10271	Frithjof	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.26, year wrecked: 1887	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
HH107	ANSDB 8658	Brisk	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 15.0, year wrecked: 1866	Coromandel, 4 miles south of Cabbage Bay	Colonial 1840-1900
HH108	ANSDB 10043	Shamrock	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.85, year wrecked: 1871	Whangapoua bar	Colonial 1840-1900

ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
HH109	ANSDB 10051	Lion	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 216.0, year wrecked: 1872	Whangapoua bar	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10612	Pearleen	Type of vessel: Motor vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 12.72, year wrecked: 1929	Whangapoua	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10011	Rose Ann	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 26.05, year wrecked: 1869	Whangapoua River, eastern side	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9983	Sea Belle	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.77, year wrecked: 1868	Whangapoua, south spit	Colonial 1840-1900
HH110	ANSDB 8806	Bonita	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1876	North Head, Coromandel Harbour	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10380	Ngaru	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1900	Te Kouma, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH111	ANSDB 10270	Columbia	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 46.0, year wrecked: 1887	Mercury Bay	Colonial 1840-1900
HH112	ANSDB 9482	Darling	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 36.0, year wrecked: 1832	Mercury Bay	Colonial 1840-1900
HH113	ANSDB 8888	Opotiki	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.76, year wrecked: 1884	Mercury Bay, South Sunk Rock	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9577	Albert	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 36.0, year wrecked: 1849	Mercury Bay, Whangamatā River mouth	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10098	Janet Gray	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 26.87, year wrecked: 1875	Mercury Bay, on the point to west of Kourangi Rocks	Colonial 1840-1900
HH114	ANSDB 8451 NZAA T11/562	HMS Buffalo	Wreck of the HMS Buffalo, which was blown ashore at Whitianga on 28 July 1840. Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ship. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 589.0	Whitianga	Contact 1769-1840, Colonial 1840-1900
HH115	ANSDB 9124	Winnie	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.12, year wrecked: 1918	Kiritia Bay, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
HH116	ANSDB 8969	Nellie	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 41.17, year wrecked: 1894	Hot Water Bay, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
HH117	ANSDB 9239	Kaiaia	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 26.87, year wrecked: 1936	Castle Rock 7 miles south of Mercury Bay	Modern 1900-
HH118	ANSDB 10218	Half Caste	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 16.0, year wrecked: 1883	Tairua, Boat Harbour	Colonial 1840-1900
HH119	ANSDB 9201	Elsie Mary	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 134.0, year wrecked: 1929	Aldermen Islands	Modern 1900-



ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
HH120	ANSDB 8659	Annie Laurie	Vessel name: Annie Laurie Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.21, year wrecked: 1866	Alderman Islands	Colonial 1840-1900
HH121	ANSDB 8446	Glatton	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 15.0, year wrecked: 1838	Alderman Islands	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10607	Amelia Sims	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 121.33, year wrecked: 1929	Alderman Islands	Modern 1900-
HH122	ANSDB 10129	Glance	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 19.0, year wrecked: 1877	Shoe Island	Colonial 1840-1900
HH123	ANSDB 9130	Wairoa	Type of vessel: Screw steamer Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 99.98, year wrecked: 1919	Tairua	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9705	Little Maria	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1858	Tairua	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9939	Mapere	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 30.24, year wrecked: 1867	Tairua	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10212	Tartar	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1882	Tairua	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10576	Onerahi	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 47.0, year wrecked: 1924	Tairua	Modern 1900-
HH124	ANSDB 10035	Eclair	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.0, year wrecked: 1871	Tairua, inside bar	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9920	Elizabeth Ann	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1867	Tairua bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH125	ANSDB 9480	Elizabeth & Mary	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 90.0, year wrecked: 1831	Waikato bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH126	ANSDB 10090	Brunette	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 18.24, year wrecked: 1875	Tairua harbour	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9831	Onward	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.0, year wrecked: 1865	Shoe and Slipper Islands	Colonial 1840-1900
HH127	ANSDB 9707	Mary Jane	Sailing Vessel, year wrecked: 1858	Slipper Island	Colonial 1840-1900
HH128	ANSDB 9134	Te Teko	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 108.5, year wrecked: 1920	Slipper Island, on reef at SE end	Modern 1900-
HH129	ANSDB 9174	Manaia	Type of vessel: Screw steamer Sailing rig type: Fore & aft Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 1159.0, year wrecked: 1926	Slipper Island, southern end of the Slipper Island rocks	Modern 1900-



ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
HH130	ANSDB 9050	Surprise	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 88.18, year wrecked: 1907	1 mile from the northern end of Ohui Beach	Modern 1900-
HH131	ANSDB 8693	Glitter	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1868	Tararu Point, near Thames	Colonial 1840-1900
HH132	ANSDB 9696	Lizzie	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 10.0, year wrecked: 1857	Firth of Thames, Wapu Bay	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9858	William	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 15.0, year wrecked: 1865	Thames	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10394	Loch Lomond	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ship. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 1249.1, year wrecked: 1908	Thames	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10567	Vera	Launch,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 4.0, year wrecked: 1922	Thames, Shortland Creek wharf	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9936	Invictor	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1867	Pukorokoro, near Miranda	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10341	Lily	Fishing vessel year wrecked: 1894	Tararau Point, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10519	Wellington	Type of vessel: Single screw steamer Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 365.54, year wrecked: 1913	Moehau, Coromandel	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10613	Portare	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 12.69, year wrecked: 1929	Coromandel	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10236	William & Jane	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 39.21, year wrecked: 1883	Waikato River bar, north spit	Colonial 1840-1900
HH133	ANSDB 8606	Waverley	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 91.0, year wrecked: 1864	Waikato River bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH134	ANSDB 8728	Industry	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 23.72, year wrecked: 1871	Waikato River bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH135	ANSDB 8607	Arthur McKenzie	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Brig. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 229.0, year wrecked: 1864	Waikato River bar	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10402	unknown	Unknown, year wrecked: 1828	Waikato River bar	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10138	Orakau	Type of vessel: Barge Sailing rig type: Not rigged. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 43.95, year wrecked: 1877	Waikato River	Colonial 1840-1900
HH136	ANSDB 8774	Agnes	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 23.09, Year wrecked: 1874.	Pukerewa, Waikato coast, mid-way between Raglan and Waikato River	Colonial 1840-1900

ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10124	Dante	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 16.0, year wrecked: 1877	Near Waikawa, between Waikato River and Raglan harbour	Colonial 1840-1900
HH137	ANSDB 8532	Pride of the Isles	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 29.0, year wrecked: 1860	Takau 12 miles north of Raglan	Colonial 1840-1900
HH138	ANSDB 9026	Isobella Anderson	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 85.46, year wrecked: 1904	Rangikahu Beach, north of Raglan	Modern 1900-
HH139	NZAA R14/301	(blank)	Shipwreck - Discrete items from a ship are scattered over 70m, previously buried in sand. Includes wooden windlass, 2 iron hanging knees, 4 iron objects and parts of bilge pump.	Waikorea Beach	Colonial 1840-1900
HH140	ANSDB 8466	Nymph	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1842	Raglan, north of Mussel Rocks	Colonial 1840-1900
HH141	ANSDB 8814	Echo	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.0, year wrecked: 1877	Raglan, north of Mussel Rocks	Colonial 1840-1900
HH142	ANSDB 9106	Falcon	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 98.0, year wrecked: 1915	Raglan harbour, north head	Modern 1900-
HH143	(blank)	Sarah Berry	12 tonne cutter sunk off the coast of Raglan in 1846. Unclear of this vessel was salvaged	Near site R14/50, Raglan	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9671	Ann	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1856	Raglan	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9822	Maori Queen	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 15.63, year wrecked: 1865	Raglan	Colonial 1840-1900
HH144	ANSDB 10152	Kaiuma	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 39.19, year wrecked: 1878	Ruapuke Beach, between Matawha Rocks and Toreparu Stream	Colonial 1840-1900
HH145	NZAA R15/778	Ruapuke Wreck	A shipwreck reported as early as 1875, likely buried in sand. Appears periodically.	Ruapuke	Colonial 1840-1900
HH146	ANSDB 10036	Florence	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch, year wrecked: 1871	Te Puru Point, Coromandel	Colonial 1840-1900
HH147	ANSDB 8474	Richmond	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1845	Kawhia bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH148	ANSDB 8496	Royalist	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 86.0, year wrecked: 1854	Kawhia, northern spit	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9698	Naumai	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 14.0, year wrecked: 1857	Kawhia, north spit	Colonial 1840-1900

ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
HH149	ANSDB 8585	Thistle	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.39, year wrecked: 1863	Kawhia bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH150	ANSDB 8954	Harihari	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1892	Kawhia south head	Colonial 1840-1900
HH151	ANSDB 9236	Campbell	Fishing vessel, year wrecked: 1936	Kawhia, Albatross Point	Modern 1900-
HH152	ANSDB 8450	Hannah	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 60.0, year wrecked: 1840	Kawhia, Te Waitere	Colonial 1840-1900
HH153	ANSDB 9109	Albatross	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 50.0, year wrecked: 1916	Marakopa River bar	Modern 1900-
HH154	ANSDB 9374	Tyrone	Fishing vessel, year wrecked: 1977	5 miles south of Marokopa	Modern 1900-
HH155	ANSDB 9047	Kia Ora	Screw steamer,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 299.9, year wrecked: 1907	Piritoki Reef, off Tirua Point	Modern 1900-
HH156	ANSDB 10372	Roseanne	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1899	Awakino River entrance	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10323	Gowanburn	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 2079.0, year wrecked: 1893	Awakino	Colonial 1840-1900
HH157	ANSDB 8872	Enterprise No.2	Fishing vessel year wrecked: 1882	Mōkau bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH158	ANSDB 9031	Moana	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 120.7, year wrecked: 1905	Mōkau, one mile north of the heads	Modern 1900-
HH159	ANSDB 9226	Kapui	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 59.18, year wrecked: 1934	Mōkau, 300 yards to the north of the river mouth	Modern 1900-
HH160	ANSDB 8960	Waitara	Type of vessel: Single screw steamer Sailing rig type: Fore & aft Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 36.19, year wrecked: 1893	Mōkau River bar	Colonial 1840-1900
HH161	ANSDB 8999	Douglas	Screw steamer. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 92.19, year wrecked: 1900	Mōkau River, north spit	Modern 1900-
HH162	ANSDB 9137	Turanga	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 28.4, year wrecked: 1921	Mōkau River bar	Modern 1900-
HH163	ANSDB 8930	Oregon	Type of vessel: Side wheel paddle steamer Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.42, year wrecked: 1889	Mōkau River mouth	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10239	Irishman	Single screw steamer, year wrecked: 1884	Mōkau River	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10573	unknown	Launch, year wrecked: 1923	Mōkau River	Modern 1900-

ID	Data Source Reference	Name	Description	Wreck Location	Period
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10606	unknown	Barge, year wrecked: 1928	Mōkau River	Modern 1900-
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9743	Raven	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.0, year wrecked: 1861	Between Mōkau and Kawhia	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 9481	Samuel	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 67.0, year wrecked: 1831	Waikato	Colonial 1840-1900
Location not mapped	ANSDB 10391	Titan	Side wheel paddle steamer, . Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 97.0, year wrecked: 1901	Waikato	Modern 1900-

# Schedule 6 - Sites and areas of significance to Māori | Āpiti 6 - Ngā wāhi tapu a te Māori

Schedule 6 lists known sites with special cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional associations to Māori. Sites identified in Schedule 6 are not necessarily all sites of significance to Māori in the CMA and have been identified through Treaty settlements and iwi planning documents. Some important sites have a "silent file" status and are not identified in this schedule.

Waikato Regional Council is committed to working with mana whenua within the region to further identify culturally significant sites within the CMA. Site locations are approximate only and are not intended to provide a definitive location or extent of a site. These include those sites that are identified as wāhi tapu by iwi and hapū.

The values identified in this schedule derive from the assessment criteria of the RPS.

## Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori identified in the Waikato region CMA

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
1	Mōkau River Estuary	<b>Te Une-pota</b> <b>Te Naunau urupā</b>	<p><b>Area of cultural importance to Ngāti Maniapoto, Waikato-Tainui and Taranaki iwi</b></p> <p>The Mōkau River was a major transport route for Taranaki and Tainui iwi. The region, especially near the river mouth was densely settled. It provided strategic sites for fortified settlements (pā), fertile volcanic soils for horticultural activity, fish and shellfish gathering sites. Te Une-pota is one of the numerous caves along the coast at the base of the cliff at Mōkau. A reddish sediment (kokowhai or red ochre) was scraped from the walls and used for colouring canoes and wooden articles. These caves are also said to be urupā.</p> <p>Groves of Tainui tree (Pomaderris apetala) growing near the heads are said to have sprung from the rollers, skids and flowing of Tainui waka, the canoes that brought Ngāti Maniapoto and other Tainui tribes to Kāwhia and soon after, to Tongaporutu, Mōkau and Awakino.</p>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu</b> <b>Wāhi tapu</b> <b>Mahinga kai</b> <b>Rohe marker</b></p>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p>The sandstone rock in the Mōkau estuary on which Tainui waka was said to have been anchored (hence the name Tainui anchor) was discreetly moved in 1926 to the cemetery near Awakino. It is this long association with the site, importance of pā, particularly that on Motu-tawa Island situated in a bay in the upper estuary, various battles and the linkages with Tainui waka and important kaimoana gathering for Mōkau marae that makes this area special to Māori.</p>	
		<p><b>Te Kawau pā</b>  <b>Te Puia pā</b>  <b>Rerewaka pā</b>  <b>Te Horu pā</b>  <b>Te Mangaeo pā</b>  <b>Mānaroa pā</b></p>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Maniapoto (as shown on deed plan OMCR-049-04) extends from Waipīngao Stream to the mouth of Kāwhia Harbour</b></p> <p>The coastal area that runs from the Waipīngao Stream to Kāwhia Harbour is rich in Ngāti Maniapoto and Tainui waka history. Ngāti Maniapoto hold extensive knowledge of the coast, its reefs, its fishing beds, its rocks, pā, kāinga, wāhi tapu and other places. This knowledge dates back to the Tainui waka that traversed these waters, leaving its anchor at Mōkau before ending its journey at Kāwhia where it is buried at Maketū.</p> <p>There were many pā, kāinga and wāhi tapu scattered along the coastline. The rugged coast, dominated by cliffs, meant there were exceptional places for defensive pā and places of refuge. Te Kawau Pā was an island pā that Ngāti Maniapoto occupied after the fight at Tihimānuka around 1822. Te Puia and Rerewaka Pā were pā at Mōkau, occupied by Ngāti Maniapoto after the battle of Ngātaiparirua. Other pā around Mōkau included Te Hōrū, Te Mangaeo and Mānaroa. Rangitoto was one of several pā at Awakino.</p> <p>There were fishing grounds all along the coastline. At the Mōkau River Heads, in days of old, the mauri of the fisheries in the form of the historic punga or mooring stone of the Tainui waka lay on the beach. At Te Naenae, tāmure, kahawai and other fish were placed as offerings to Tangaroa. The area was known for its mussel reefs, including that known as Kowhatututae. There was another popular reef near the Mōhakatino River. These mussel reefs attracted people from inland as far as Taumaranui and Te Kūiti.</p> <p>Waka were launched from designated sites such as Te Rua Taniwha in the Poutama region. Piopio and Ōinutai, north of the Awakino River mouth, were other examples of launching sites.</p>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu</b>  <b>Wāhi tapu</b>  <b>Mahinga kai</b>  <b>Rohe marker</b>  <b>Kōrero-o-mua</b></p>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p>Both Kāwhia and Mōkau were key sites of trade for Ngāti Maniapoto after the arrival of the European. Ngāti Maniapoto vessels operating from these waters included the Rere-wiki, Parininihi, Rē-wini and Aotearoa.</p> <p>The coastal area of Ngāti Maniapoto remains a key geographical feature of the tribal identity and domain of the iwi.</p>	
		<b>Urupā</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage site mapped: HH86; NZAA R18/79</li> <li>• Cemetery/ urupā. On the estuary foreshore is approximate location of Te Punga a Tainui (archorstone), a mauri and boundary marker, now removed to Maniaroa Marae. On the seaward side of the peninsular several burials have washed out in the sand</li> <li>• Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>• Condition: eroding</li> </ul>	
2	Marokopa River Estuary		<p><b>Area of cultural importance to Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto for gathering kaimoana</b> The estuary and immediate coastline south to and beyond Kiritihere has been identified by Tainui iwi as a site of importance, both for its cultural and spiritual values and for the harvest of whitebait and kahawai within the river estuary area and snapper, mullet, paua, crayfish and shark from the coastline.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b>
		<b>Pāokauwaho pā Ōtumatua pā Puketoa pā Harihari Piritoka reef Poutama mussel reef</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Maniapoto (as show on deed plan OMCR-049-04) extends from Waipīngao Stream to the mouth of Kāwhia Harbour</b> The coastal area that runs from the Waipīngao Stream to Kāwhia Harbour is rich in Ngāti Maniapoto and Tainui waka history. Ngāti Maniapoto hold extensive knowledge of the coast, its reefs, its fishing beds, its rocks, pā, kāinga, wāhi tapu and other places. This knowledge dates back to the Tainui waka that traversed these waters, leaving its anchor at Mōkau before ending its journey at Kāwhia where it is buried at Maketū.</p> <p>There were many pā, kāinga and wāhi tapu scattered along the coastline. Pāokauwaho and Ōtumatua were pā at Nukuhākari Bay while further north was Puketoa, a pā on the southern side of the Marokopa River estuary occupied during the fishing season. Harihari was a kāinga of the illustrious Ngāti Maniapoto rangatira, Haupōkia Te Pakaru.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Wāhi tapu Mahinga kai Rohe marker Kōrero-o-mua</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p>There were many significant fishing grounds and reefs all along the coastline. Piritoka reef is off Tirua Point and was a favourite fishing place for those who occupied the pā and kāinga around Nukuhākari Bay and Moeātoa. Poutama was a famous mussel reef a little offshore and just to the south of the Mōhakatino River.</p> <p>Taniwha protected many of these reefs and other waters. The taniwha Rua Kura Moana Kiwa, Kupe Moana Kiwa and Te Rauparaha Moana Kiwa occupied the reefs around Marokopa. The coastal area of Ngāti Maniapoto remains a key geographical feature of the tribal identity and domain of the iwi.</p>	
3	Arataura (Albatross Point) and adjoining coastline		<p><b>Area of cultural importance to Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto, for gathering kaimoana</b> The area of traditional use includes the coastline south to Taharoa, which incorporates this site. The headland and bays were important for gathering kaimoana, particularly snapper, mussel, paua, crayfish and kina.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b>
4	Kāwhia Harbour	<p><b>Te Tumu o Tainui</b> (Tainui waka burial site)</p> <p><b>Te Ahurei</b> (One of Waikato Tainui's sacred Whare Wānanga)</p>	<p><b>Area of significance to Waikato Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto</b> Kāwhia Harbour is recognised as the 'hearth of Tainui' and considered an important settlement of the Tainui people. Tainui have grown into a federation of large and powerful tribes and are numerically the largest tangata whenua grouping in Aotearoa. Even today, their origins in Aotearoa are recognised as being at Kāwhia, at Maketu, at Te Tumu o Tainui and Ahurei. Kāwhia Harbour and its environs are of immense importance to Tainui iwi. Ngāti Mahuta ki Tai are kaitiaki of Te Tumu o Tainui and Te Ahurei</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Wāhi tapu Mahinga kai Rohe marker Kōrero-o-mua</b>
		<p><b>Te Arawī pā</b> <b>Taungatara pā</b> <b>Takatahi pā</b> <b>Te Ahuahu pā</b></p> <p>Pipi shellfish grounds</p>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Maniapoto (as show on deed plan OMCR-049-04) extends from Waipīngao Stream to the mouth of Kāwhia Harbour</b></p> <p>The coastal area that runs from the Waipīngao Stream to Kāwhia Harbour is rich in Ngāti Maniapoto and Tainui waka history. Ngāti Maniapoto hold extensive knowledge of the coast, its reefs, its fishing beds, its rocks, pā, kāinga, wāhi tapu and other places. This knowledge dates back to the Tainui waka that</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Wāhi tapu Mahinga kai Rohe marker Kōrero-o-mua</b>



Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
		<p><b>Tāoro, Tūhingarā, Toreparu, Ōtaroi, Hākaha, Te Wharau, Tāhunaroa, Te Maire</b></p> <p><b>Koutou-kōwhai</b></p> <p><b>Te Umuroa</b></p> <p><b>Te ōhau</b></p> <p><b>Whangamumu</b></p> <p><b>Te Māhoe</b></p>	<p>traversed these waters, leaving its anchor at Mōkau before ending its journey at Kāwhia where it is buried at Maketū.</p> <p>There were many pā, kāinga and wāhi tapu scattered along the coastline. At Kāwhia there were many pā, including Te Arawī, which was besieged by Ngāti Maniapoto and another iwi before its chief and his people were able to migrate south. Other pā in the region included Taungatara, Takatahi and Te Ahuahu, the latter an ancient pā that protected the kūmara gardens and now the site of Te Waitere village.</p> <p>There were fishing grounds all along the coastline. Further north, the Kāwhia Harbour and its various inlets were particular waters of abundance with some important fishing grounds. The banks of Tāoro, Tūhingarā, Toreparu, Ōtaroi, Hākaha, Te Wharau, Tāhunaroa, Te Maire and other places, were all pipi shellfish grounds. Tarapikau is a sandbank where the pūpū shellfish was collected. There were appointed places where certain fish were taken. Koutu-kōwhai was a place where whai (stingray) abounded. Mangō (sharks) and tāmure (snapper) were fished and bought ashore at Te Umuroa, at Te Ōhau, at Whangamumu, and other sites around the Kāwhia Harbour.</p> <p>Taniwha protected many of these reefs and other waters. Some fifteen taniwha dwell in those waters at Te Māhoe near the Waiharakeke inlet of the Kāwhia Harbour. Collectively they are known as Ngāi-te-heke-o-te-Rangi. Rākei was a taniwha who lurked near Kaitangata Point beyond Kiritehere in a partially submerged cave. There were many other taniwha along this coastline.</p> <p>Both Kāwhia and Mōkau were key sites of trade for Ngāti Maniapoto after the arrival of the European. Ngāti Maniapoto vessels operating from these waters included the Rere-wiki, Parininihi, Rē-wini and Aotearoa.</p> <p>The coastal area of Ngāti Maniapoto remains a key geographical feature of the tribal identity and domain of the iwi.</p>	
		<b>Te Papa o Karewa</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage Structure mapped: HH49, HN2 9425: <a href="https://www.heritage.org.nz/the-list/details/9425">https://www.heritage.org.nz/the-list/details/9425</a></li> </ul>	<b>Wāhi tapu</b> <b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The extent of registration encompasses two groves of pohutukawa trees known as Te Papa o Karewa and Tangi te Korowhiti and the land (and part of the foreshore) described as Blk X Kawhia North SD (NZ Gazette 1913, p.320) South Auckland Land District</li> <li>Area of wāhi tapu that includes a tunnel system and the landing site of the Tainui waka (the masonry groyne). The area is approximately 245m long, 55m wide and 1.3 ha</li> </ul>	
		<b>Te Waihoanga</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage Site mapped: HH82, HNZ 7562: <a href="https://www.heritage.org.nz/the-list/details/7562">https://www.heritage.org.nz/the-list/details/7562</a></li> <li>Area of wāhi tapu, Legal Description: Road Reserve- Harbour Road, Kawhia.</li> </ul>	<b>Wāhi tapu</b>
		<b>Ngatokakairiri</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage Structure mapped: HH48, NZAA R15/187</li> <li>Islet pā</li> <li>Steps leading to coastline on SW corner are in the CMA</li> <li>Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>Condition: Fair</li> </ul>	<b>Kōrero o mua</b>
		<b>Pā site</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage Site mapped: HH83, NZAA R16/221</li> <li>Pā as part of the description for this site a waka is recorded in the mudflats</li> <li>Local knowledge identified around 2 feet of a canoe visible in the bank of a small spring just above the mudflats at Kaiwaka, marked by a rock sticking out of the mudflats. Not seen from circa 1960's onwards</li> <li>Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>Condition: not visible</li> </ul>	<b>Kōrero o mua</b>
5	Aotea Harbour	<b>Puraho Pā</b>	<p><b>Area of significance to Waikato-Tainui</b> Aotea Harbour was the landing place of the Aotea waka commanded by the great Rangatira Turi. The Aotea waka preceded the Tainui waka by some 50 years.</p> <p>On the southern shore near the entrance is the well-preserved remains of Puraho Pā, which was probably built about 1700 AD. Local tradition holds that the unusual korowai (a stone bird) was found nearby at</p>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua Mahinga kai</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p>the site of an ancient village a little to the west, although other recordings state this stone bird was rediscovered in 1878, on land at Ruapuke, between Aotea and Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) (re Tumu o Tainui 1986). The stone bird (Korotangi) is of great significance to Tainui iwi.</p> <p>Aotea has been identified for the traditional gathering of flounder, pupu crabs, whitebait, mussel, tāmure (snapper), tuna (eel), trevally and mullet.</p>	
		<b>Waka tauranga</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage site mapped: HH81, NZAA R15/553</li> <li>• Waka hull ca. 12m long and 0.8m wide, originally recorded as lying in the intertidal zone on the edge of Aotea Harbour. A later visit records that the gully appears to now be above high tide level due to silting</li> <li>• Seen in 1988 but not found on revisit in Feb 2004. Likely to have been partly buried in silt and trampled by cattle after scrub cleared. The waka could not be observed and is considered to be mostly destroyed</li> <li>• Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>• Condition: mostly destroyed</li> </ul>	
6	Kārewa (Gannet Island)		<p><b>Kārewa is Māori land with an overlying status of wildlife sanctuary</b></p> <p>Kārewa island is an ancient Māori burial site. Through the co-operation and approval of the last Māori Queen, Te Atai-rangi-kahu, Kārewa was gazetted as a wildlife sanctuary. The sanctuary was established to protect the colony of gannets and also one of New Zealand's northernmost seal colonies.</p>	<b>Wāhi tapu</b>
7	Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour)		<p><b>Area of cultural significance to Tainui iwi</b></p> <p>Whāingaroa was a favoured area of Māori settlement. There are a great number of archaeological sites recorded around the harbour - midden, pits, pā and one site containing rock drawings. The significance of these sites is regarded as being of regional importance.</p>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>
8	Waikato River mouth and Estuary		<p><b>Area of cultural importance to Waikato-Tainui</b></p> <p>The importance of the Waikato River to Tainui iwi can be summarised by the following. “In the eyes of the Tainui tribes the Waikato River is a single living entity, a threat to one part is a threat to the whole.”</p>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua Mahinga kai Rawa tūturu</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			Five centuries of continuous occupation of its banks have embedded the river deep into the group and individual consciousness. This importance cannot be over emphasised.	
9 / 10	Firth of Thames (Kaiaua to Waihou River)	<b>Kauaeranga Miranda Piako Pipiroa Pūkorokorou Te Anaputa</b>	<b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi, including Ngāti Maru</b> The Firth of Thames is considered significant to Hauraki iwi for its rich abundance of food and resources. These areas included Kauaeranga, Miranda, Piako, Pipiroa and Pūkorokoro  Te Anaputa, just north of Tararu, is a landing site of the Tainui waka, and contains extensive shellfish beds and gathering of shellfish.	<b>Kōrero-o-mua Rawa tūturu Hiahiatanga Mahinga kai</b>
		<b>Urupā</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage site mapped: HH75, NZAA S12/364</li> <li>• This site is traditionally known to Ngāti Paoa and has been used in living memory as an urupā. It is also likely to be prehistoric</li> <li>• Site is located at the Whakatiwai River mouth on both the north and south banks</li> <li>• Indigenous pre-1769 – Modern 1900</li> <li>• Below surface</li> </ul>	<b>Wāhi Tapu</b>
11	Manaia Harbour		<b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi including Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngaati Whanaunga and Ngāti Maru</b> Manaia Harbour was well known for its rich abundance of food and resources, which is captured in the whakataukī ‘Ko Manaia, he pataka kai’ (Manaia the food store.) Mana whenua believe that the whole of Manaia harbour is particularly significant to kaitiaki and taniwha; and contains wāhi tapu and urupā within the area.  Manaia, 10 km south of Coromandel town, was gifted by Ngāti Maru to Ngāti Pūkenga in recognition of assistance rendered by that Bay of Plenty tribe during the ‘musket wars’. This is one of the few large Māori-owned areas in Hauraki.  Manaia is the largest Māori community on the peninsula north of Thames. The people are of Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngaati Whanaunga and Ngāti Maru tribes. The marae is Te Kou o Rehua.	<b>Kōrero-o-mua Wāhi Tapu Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b>
12			<b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi - Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngaati Whanaunga and Ngāti Maru</b>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
	Inner Coromandel Harbour			Mahinga kai
		<b>Coromandel Island Group (Motuiwi, Oruapopou, Motukawao) Papa-aroha Kikowhakarere</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement – Ngāi Tai ki Tamaki</b> <i>These islands are part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-403-128</i></p> <p>Motuiwi, Oruapopou, Motukawao and the Coromandel Island group are of ancestral significance to Ngāi Tai ki Tamaki as descendants of Manukaihongi. These areas with subsequent relationships provided access to shared fisheries that continue today.</p> <p>Papa-aroha is very significant for Ngāi Tai ki Tamaki as this is the place where Te Whatatau met and subsequently married Te Raukohekohe.</p> <p>The sheltered bay of Kikowhakarere is also very significant for Ngāi Tai as this is where Te Whatatau put aside his wife Te Kaweau for her refusal to share hua-manu with his whanunga from Torere.</p>	
		<b>Urupā</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage structure mapped: HH16, NZAA T11/719</li> <li>• Burial/ cemetery</li> <li>• Midden with evidence of human remains. Eroding west edge of an urupā</li> <li>• Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>• Condition: eroding</li> </ul>	<b>Wāhi tapu</b>
13	Colville Bay		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b></p> <p>Colville Bay was given the name of Te Ūmangawha-o-ngā-waka, the four waka, as the bay provided sheltered anchorage for waka travelling along the coast. The bay was also noted for its four distinct channels of the Ūmangawha river delta (which no longer exists).</p>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>
15	Waikawau Bay and Estuary		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b></p>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>
14	Cape Colville to Sandy Bay		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b></p>	<b>Wāhi Tapu Kōrero-o-mua</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
		<b>Poihakena (Port Jackson) battle site Te Huripupu Tukituki Bay</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement - Ngāi Tai ki Tamaki.</b> <i>This site is part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-403-128.</i></p> <p>Poihakena was the site of a Ngāi Tai battle with another iwi to avenge the deaths of Te Patutatahi (Ngāi Tai) and another whanaunga (relation) of Ngāi Tai.</p> <p>Ngāi Tai/Ngāti Tai acknowledge their shared interests in the greater Moehau area as Poihakena, Te Huripupu and Tukituki Bay were significant sites of battle for Ngāi Tai. These areas with subsequent relationships provided access to shared fisheries that continue today.</p> <p>Te Huripupu was the site of a settlement at Tukituki Bay where Ngāi Tai ancestors led by Manukaihongi fought a battle against Ngati Huarere. Tukituki was the pā erected by Manukaihongi subsequently.</p>	
16	Whangapoua Harbour	<b>Opera point</b>	<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b> A reserve at Opera Point, east of Whangapoua, contains the remains of the Raukawa pā site.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Hiahiatanga tūturu Mahinga kai</b>
			<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei as shown on deed plan OTS-100-34.</b> <i>Whangapoua Harbour and Catchment is a statutory acknowledgement area.</i></p> <p>Whangapoua Harbour is still today one of the most pristine and important fisheries to the tangata whenua. Important rivers flow to this harbour as well, helping provide fish nursery grounds and shellfish gathering places, and there is much evidence of shellfish processing floors especially the sandspit of Matarangi, which separates the outer and inner harbours".</p> <p>Likewise this harbour interacted extensively with the Kauri timber industry with mills being located on the harbour edge at Maungatapu and at Waikauri on the Opera headland. Again, our tupuna interacted and sanctioned all the early dealings in Whangapoua up until the 1920's when the industry closed down.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b>
17	Kūaotunu Peninsula	<b>Tahanga</b>	<p><b>Site of cultural and spiritual significance to Hauraki iwi</b> Sites where the highly-prized properties of the earth for example, basalt for adzes, were utilised at Tahanga.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
18	Ohinau Islands		<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei.</b> <i>This site is part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-24. Ohinau Island is also shown on deed plan OTS-100-20.</i></p> <p>Ohinau Islands and The Ruamahua Islands were once described by the Ngāti Hei chief Tikaokao as the eyes that looked inland toward the Rohe (domain) of Ngāti Hei.</p> <p>Ohinau was a mara kai of hua-whenua (kūmara) and hua-rakau (aruhe or fern root). Kaimanu (birding) such as Oi, (Greyface petrel) and tītī (sooty shearwater) were plentiful. Fish and shark were ample. Ohinau has many rock walls that surrounded and protected the numerous kūmara gardens that could be found on the large north facing flat areas two hundred feet above the sea.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b>
19	Mercury Island Group		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi including Ngāi Tai ki Tamaki, Ngaati Whanaunga, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Maru and Ngāti Tamaterā who also hold statutory acknowledgements in this area</b></p> <p>The larger of the Mercury Islands were used for growing kumara, which grew well in the fertile soils and frost-free conditions. Titi (mutton bird) was harvested on most of the islands. Numerous pā, pits, terraces and middens are found on all but a few of the smaller islands. It is likely that occupation was seasonal except for Great Mercury Island, which is one of the only islands that has permanent water. Occupation on Great Mercury Island continued until the 1820's.</p> <p>Paieka who came from Hawaiki, lived and cultivated kumara at Ahuahu (Mercury Island), which lies just off the Harataunga coast.</p>	<b>Kōrero o mua Rawa tūturu Mahinga Kai Wāhi tapu</b>
		<b>Mercury Islands and Paritū (Fantail Bay)</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki.</b> <i>This site is part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-403-128.</i></p> <p>From Repanga south to Ahuahu and Whakau to Ruamahua and Tuhua. These motu were important to Ngāti Tai/Ngāi Tai as not only did they provide shelter and a stopover during voyaging, but they were also navigation points as their ancestors sailed and traded across the seas.</p>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>
		<b>Ahuahu (Great Mercury Island)</b>	<p>The Mercury Islands and Paritū (Fantail Bay) are of great spiritual, cultural, customary, ancestral and historical significance to Ngāti Tamaterā, Ngāti Maru and Ngāti Hei.</p>	<b>Wāhi tapu Kōrero-o-mua</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei.</b> <i>The Mercury Islands are a statutory acknowledgement area as show on deed plan OTS-100-24.</i></p> <p>Ahuahu is one of the most important Islands for Ngāti Hei spiritually and culturally. According to Ngāti Hei oral tradition Ahuahu is their Hawaiki. The origins of Hei are foretold in the oral histories handed down through our ancestors to our grandfathers who regarded Ahuahu as Hawaiki. Those origins are said to have emerged from two ancient tangata whenua tribes of Ahuahu known as Te Hekengarangi and Hapuoneone. Ngāti Hei tradition states that Hei was said to have arrived on the waka Te Arawa to Aotearoa from a north easterly direction. Those on the waka saw Aotea and then directly behind Aotea was the landmass known as Aotearoa. Sailing on, they laid their mauri at Repanga. From Repanga, Te Arawa returned to their home bay of Huruhi on Ahuahu. From the Huruhi (Ahuahu) to Pikopiko-i-Whiti at Opito then from Opito to Tahanga.</p>	<p><b>Wāhi Tapu Kōrero-o-mua Tauranga waka</b></p>
		Whakaū / Red Mercury Island	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei.</b> <i>This site is part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-24.</i></p> <p>Whakaū or Whaka-U was an important fishing and birding settlement of Ngati Hei. It is the Island furthest heading east out into Te Tai Tamahine but could be reached quite easily by traversing the Islands of Korapuki, Ngaraurapa (Middle Is), Atiu (Stanley Is) and Ngaruamahanga (Double Is) by waka. Whakau has a fresh water stream that permitted longer visits. The fish sought from this Island were moeone, shark and hapuku. Titi and oi were in abundance. Aruhe (fernroot), kumara and tutaekoau (wild native celery) were in good quantity.</p>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga Kai</b></p>
20	Cuvier Island (Repanga)		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi including Ngāi Tai ki Tamaki, Ngaati Whanaunga, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Maru and Ngāti Tamaterā who also hold statutory acknowledgements in this area</b></p> <p>Cuvier island (Repanga) has its origins with the Arawa canoe, which according to tradition carried two guardian birds able to forecast and subdue storms. As the canoe neared the end of its journey the birds were released on Repanga with the task of maintaining a vigil over all seafarers in the area. Cuvier Island also has numerous pits, terraces and midden from past occupation.</p>	
		Repanga Island (Cuvier Island)	<p><b>Repanga (Cuvier) Island is a place of significance to Ngaati Whanaunga, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Maru, and Ngāti Tamaterā</b></p>	



Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			As the Tainui and Te Arawa Canoes arrived in Hauraki from Hawaiki, as acknowledgement of their roles in safely guiding the waka to Aotearoa, they freed the sacred birds Takareko and Te Mumuhau to Repanga. With recitation of lengthy invocations they charged the liberated birds as sentinels to maintain their lasting vigil over all voyagers who passed that way. Since that day, tribal seafarers have always kept a wary eye on the weather patterns signalled about the island."	
			<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei.</b> <i>The Mercury Islands are a statutory acknowledgement area as show on deed plan OTS-100-24.</i></p> <p>Ahuahu is one of the most important Islands for Ngāti Hei spiritually and culturally. According to Ngāti Hei oral tradition Ahuahu is their Hawaiki. The origins of Hei are foretold in the oral histories handed down through our ancestors to our grandfathers who regarded Ahuahu as Hawaiki. Those origins are said to have emerged from two ancient tangata whenua tribes of Ahuahu known as Te Hekengarangi and Hapuoneone. Ngāti Hei tradition states that Hei was said to have arrived on the waka Te Arawa to Aotearoa from a north easterly direction. Those on the waka saw Aotea and then directly behind Aotea was the landmass known as Aotearoa. Sailing on, they laid their mauri at Repanga. From Repanga, Te Arawa returned to their home bay of Huruhi on Ahuahu. From the Huruhi (Ahuahu) to Pikopiko-i-Whiti at Opito then from Opito to Tahanga.</p>	
21	Whitianga Harbour		<b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b>	<b>Rawa tūturu</b>
		<b>Pā site</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage structure mapped: HH72, NZAA T11/76</li> <li>• Headland pā and associated working floor</li> <li>• Associated working floor on the east side of the pā in a small mud-flat bay, being eroded by the sea. Greenstone pendant found here</li> <li>• Indigenous pre-1769, Colonial 1840-1900</li> <li>• Condition: Fair</li> </ul>	
22	Purangi Estuary		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Significant kaimoana breeding ground, adjacent to the Te Whanganui-a-Hei Marine Reserve</li> <li>• Extensive shellfish beds and shellfish gathering</li> </ul>	<b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
23	Te Whanganui-a-Hei Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve south to Hereheretaura Peninsula		<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Significant kaimoana breeding ground, adjacent to the Te Whanganui-a-Hei Marine Reserve</li> <li>Extensive shellfish beds and shellfish gathering</li> </ul>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai</b></p>
24	Alderman Island Group		<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei.</b> <i>These islands are known as Te Rua o Māhu or Ruamāhua Islands which are part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-24.</i></p> <p>The Ruamāhua motu (islands) were a hive of activity for Ngāti Hei, providing high protein yielding delicacies such as titi (mutton birds), oi and seal meat. The fur from seal kills also added to a higher standard of living.</p>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu Kōrero-o-mua Mahinga kai Pūrakau</b></p>
			<p><b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b></p> <p>The islands have been used seasonally in the past by Ngāti Maru, Ngāti Hako and Ngāti Hei for collecting titi and for gardening and provides regionally significant cultural and archaeological sites.</p>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu Hiahiatanga Tūturu Mahinga kai</b></p>
25	Upper Tairua Harbour	<b>Tairua Harbour Pauanui Beach</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei.</b> <i>Tairua Harbour and Catchment is a statutory acknowledgement area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-29.</i></p> <p>The Tairua harbour and nearby Pauanui Beach served as a tauranga waka for fishing and birding expeditions to Slipper Island (Whakahou), Kuranui (Penguin Island), Motu Waikaia, and of course nearby Shoe Island (Matuhua).</p> <p>This harbour, and the rivers and streams that comprise this catchment area, fed and watered the people of Ngāti Hei for centuries. The surrounding lands, through which these watercourses thread their ways, and the water itself, was and is, the source of a diverse and varied range of consumables that has always been used and assigned by Ngāti Hei. All these watercourses teemed with the best quality inanga, which</p>	<p><b>Wāhi tapu Rawa tūturu Tauranga Waka</b></p>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p>was a delicacy highly sought after by Ngāti Hei and a resource jealously guarded, as were all fishing resources.</p>	
			<p><b>The Tairua Harbour is an area of significance to Hauraki iwi including Ngati Tamaterā, Ngaati Whanaunga, Ngāti Maru, and Ngāti Hei.</b></p> <p>The Tairua Harbour area has major cultural significance for the Marutūahu tribes who hold spiritual and cultural relationship with the eastern seaboard of the Peninsula.</p> <p>As a Coastal people, the Marutūahu tribes' livelihood and identity is inextricably connected to the marine environment, customary fisheries and environmental management practices and roles.</p> <p>Traditional fishing, kaimoana grounds and wāhi tapu are present in this area.</p>	<p><b>Hiahiatanga tūturu</b>  <b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>  <b>Rawa tūturu</b>  <b>Wāhi tapu</b></p>
26	Opoutere Sandspit and Wharekawa Harbour	<b>Wharekawa Harbour</b> <b>Opoutere</b> <b>Motu Haua</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei</b> <i>This site is part of the larger statutory acknowledgement area covering the rivers, streams and their tributaries within the Wharekawa Harbour Catchment area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-32.</i></p> <p>The harbour, and the rivers and streams that comprise this catchment area, fed and watered the people of Ngati Hei for centuries. The surrounding lands, through which these watercourses thread their ways, and the water itself, was and is, the source of a diverse and varied range of consumables that has always been used and assigned by Ngati Hei. All of these watercourses teemed with the best quality inanga, which was a delicacy highly sought after by Ngati Hei and a resource jealously guarded, as were all fishing resources.</p> <p>Kaimoana and open sea fish were easily obtained inshore and offshore with Wharekawa Harbour and Opoutere Beach (Takanga) virtually served as tauranga waka.</p> <p>Within this area, the cultural activities of Ngati Hei employed the use of stone and other mineral resources on a daily basis, as well as other useful taonga (valuable resources), including but not limited to timber, medicines, aqua, hydrothermal, air, indigenous and exotic flora and fauna, and more. This underlying wealth of resources created a strong economic base for Ngati Hei that enabled them to thrive</p>	<p><b>Rawa tūturu</b>  <b>Wāhi tapu</b>  <b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>  <b>Mahinga kai</b>  <b>Tauranga Waka</b></p> <p><b>Mahinga Kai</b>  <b>Rawa tūturu</b></p>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			<p>and prosper, through personal consumption and also through trading for economic benefits derived both nationally and internationally.</p> <p>Motu Haua, the rock outcrop at the northern end of Opoutere Beach situated at the kainga Ohui, served as an ancient boundary marker in Ngāti Hei traditional history.</p>	
		<b>Wharekawa Harbour Opoutere</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Tara Tokanui</b> <i>This is part of the larger coastal statutory acknowledgement area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-213.</i></p> <p>Wharekawa Harbour is Ngāti Tokanui ancestral home, for it is here that the ancestress Marama, the fourth wife of the captain Hoturoa, alighted from the Tainui waka and established the iwi Ngamarama. Wharekawa was considered the most northern land boundary of the iwi rōhe and Te Ararimu the southern boundary of the iwi rōhe.</p> <p>Ngāti Tara Tokanui have maintained a long relationship with this sacred harbour, which for a time accommodated the ancestress Marama enabling the birth of the iwi Ngamarama. Some iwi groups have maintained the name Ngamarama, however the majority have realigned and identified with other iwi such as Ngāti Tokanui and Ngāti Tara. A key marriage alliance between Te Awapu, the great-grandson of Tara, and Te Rae of Ngāti Tokanui amalgamated the two tribes. Renaming of iwi cannot obliterate whakapapa. Blood ties and the links to the tūpuna Marama will never be extinguished.</p> <p>Ngāti Tara Tokanui have established ties to Wharekawa through the ancestors Marama and Tara. The latter arrived in Hauraki in the late 1500's.</p>	<p><b>Rohe marker</b></p> <p><b>Kōrero-o-mua</b> <b>Rohe marker</b></p>
		<b>Wharekawa Beach Reserve</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Tara Tokanui</b> <i>Wharekawa Burial Ground is a statutory acknowledgement area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-224</i></p> <p>There are many ancient urupā and fortified pā sites established at Wharekawa that predate the arrival of Tara. Each peak along the hills are pā and/or a fortified lookout point, the flat areas of land surrounding the harbour are laden with middens rich with the remnants of iwi that over time made Wharekawa their home.</p>	<p><b>Wāhi tapu</b> <b>Kōrero-o-mua</b></p>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
27	Upper Whangamatā Harbour	<b>Te Puhi a Tara</b>	<p><b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti tara Tokanui</b> <i>Te Puhi A Tara is part of the larger Coastal Statutory Acknowledgement area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-213.</i></p> <p>Te Puhi a Tara is the name given to the group of pointed rocks located off Whangamatā. Te Puhi a Tara when aligned with the spindle Whaka Tara on Tuhua Island and the Southern group of the Alderman Islands, formed what was, over an extended period, the main fishing grounds for Ngāti Tara Tokanui. Te Puhi a Tara also refers to the kōtare that were prolific throughout the Alderman Islands. According to Reha Kau Hou the kōtare was a pet bird of the chief Tara and continues to be venerated by Ngāti Tara Tokanui.</p> <p>Te Puhi a Tara is said to be the favoured launching place to hunt young mako shark. The water teemed with thousands of young mako shark, which provided endless food for the iwi. The older mako were sought for their teeth, which were interwoven with shards of obsidian and then tied to the tips of war spears or used as implements for cutting food.</p> <p>The mako shark symbolises indomitability, strength and resilience for Ngāti Tara Tokanui. It is known that Tara delighted in both hunting and eating mako shark. This is reflected in the heke panel, Mangopare, at Ngahutoitoi Marae.</p> <p>Traditional fishing methodologies handed down from their tūpuna Tara continue to be practiced today. From the teachings of our ancestor, modern Ngāti Tara Tokanui iwi are able to locate the migration routes and feeding grounds of the mako shark between Aotea Whaka Tara on Tuhua Island, the Alderman Islands and Whiritoa Rock.</p>	<b>Rawa tūturu Mahinga kai Kōrero-o-mua</b>
		<b>Awarua</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage structure mapped: HH76, NZAA T12/975;</li> <li>• Pa site/settlement. Historic midden</li> <li>• Historic midden identified on eastern foreshore, and bricks extending out about 20m possibly identifying Watts trading store (1872)</li> <li>• Colonial 1840-1900</li> <li>• Condition: Fair</li> </ul>	
28	Otahu Estuary		<b>Area of significance to Hauraki iwi</b>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
29	Whangamatā Islands (Hauturu, Maukaha, Rawengaiti, Whenuakura)	There are four islands in the group off the Whangamatā coast: <b>Hauturu</b> (also referred to as Clark Island) <b>Maukaha</b> <b>Rawengaiti</b> <b>Whenuakura</b> (also referred to as Donut Island) lies one kilometre east from Whangamatā Beach.	Area of significance to Hauraki iwi. These Islands are the ancestral home of Nga Marama the first Polynesians to occupy the Whangamatā area. They were here before the Tahitian migration and the Hawaiian migration. Their descendants, who are Uru-Nga-Wera (which means the weapon of fire) and Ngāti Pū, their whānau, are the kaitiaki of the Islands and tangata whenua of Whangamatā.	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>
30	Mercury Bay	<b>Te Puia</b> (Hot Water Beach) <b>Wharekaho</b> (Simpsons Beach)	<b>Statutory Acknowledgement Area – Ngāti Hei</b> <i>This site is part of the large statutory acknowledgement area covering the coastal marine area as shown on deed plan OTS-100-24</i> The Great Bay of Hei was once the food basket of the 23 hapū of the people of Ngati Hei. Known in earlier times as Te Whanga-A-Hei, this harbour has borne witness to the many great Polynesian and European navigators over the last thousand years. Kupe, Toi, Tamatekapua, Hei and even Cook proclaimed and named this great bay as their waka either beached or anchored on or near the golden sandy beaches of the area. Never will you find so many features in one bay that has seduced many a seafarer with its magic and idyllic allure. The Ariki Hei lived at Te O-A-Hei, or Hahei as it is now known, until his death. His mana was carried on through his son Waitaha who populated the shores of Te Whanganui O Hei where Ngāti Hei still remain as tangata whenua, kaitiaki and ahikaroa.  Further south is Te Puia or Hot Water Beach where hundreds of the descendants of Ngati Tuhukea were slain and cooked in "Two tides" at the thermal beaches of Te Puia. Their heads were taken for moko mokai (tattooed preserved heads) to be traded to the curious Europeans and then the rest consumed or discarded by the northern raiders. It was known that bones were piled knee high on the beach of Te Puia.	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b> <b>Wāhi tapu</b> <b>Rawa tūturu</b> <b>Mahinga kai</b>

Ref	Area	Site	Description	Values Associated with site/s
			There were several accounts of fishing net as long as the length of Wharekaho beach, which would have put the length of the net to be at least a kilometre long. The great nets were taken out by several waka in formation, dropped and set and then hauled in to shore by hundreds of whanau hauling on huge taura or flax fibre ropes. The catches were vast and were said to have fed all the hapū of the area for several days and any surplus were dried and stored in pataka kai to stave off hunger through lean times.	
31		<b>Papa Aroha</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage site mapped: HH69, HN2 7464: <a href="https://www.heritage.org.nz/the-list/details/7464">https://www.heritage.org.nz/the-list/details/7464</a>;</li> <li>Area of Wāhi Tapu that includes the land known as Papaaroha 6B7 (CT SA67D/961), Papaaroha 6B8 (CT SA67D/962), Pt Papaaroha No.5 urupā blk (CT 309346), Papaaroha 6B12 (CT SA67D/966), South Auckland Land District</li> <li>Area of Wāhi Tapu contains four known urupā, Kotikotiweka Tapu, Tahuna-Torea Tapu, Te Nanga Tapu and Koputauki Tapu (not known if in CMA)</li> </ul>	<b>Wāhi tapu Kōrero-o-mua</b>
32		<b>Pā site</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage structure mapped: HH29, NZAA T12/504</li> <li>Headland pā defended by double ditch and bank, with transverse and lateral terraces and a possible pit. Cave below at northern end of small beach, with petroglyphs and modern graffiti</li> <li>Petroglyphs in cave below northern end of small beach</li> <li>Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>Condition: good</li> </ul>	<b>Kōrero-o-mua</b>
33		<b>Pā site</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage. Heritage structure mapped: HH30, NZAA T12/498</li> <li>Headland pā with summit platform, lateral terraces (to W) and landward deep transverse ditch. Steep cliff to E and caves at sea level</li> <li>Caves at sea level, and to north and NW of pā there are burial sites recorded in the dunes behind the beach (not known if in the CMA)</li> <li>Indigenous pre-1769</li> <li>Condition: good</li> </ul>	<b>Wāhi tapu Kōrero-o-mua</b>

#### Waikato Regional Policy Statement: Māori culture and traditions assessment criteria

Value	Description
-------	-------------

<b><i>Mauri</i></b>	Ko te mauri me te mana o te wāhi, te taonga rānei, e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori. The mauri (for example life force) and mana (for example prestige) of the place or resource holds special significance to Māori.
<b><i>Wāhi tapu</i></b>	Ko tērā wāhi, taonga rānei he wāhi tapu, arā, he tino whakahirahira ki ngā tikanga, ki ngā puri mahara, ki te taha wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a wāhi tapu of special, cultural, historic and or spiritual importance to Māori.
<b><i>Kōrero-o-mua historical</i></b>	Ko tērā wāhi e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori ki roto i ōna kōrero-o-mua me ōna tikanga. The place has special historical and cultural significance to Māori.
<b><i>Rawa tūturu customary resources</i></b>	He wāhi tērā e kawea ai ngā rawa tūturu a te Māori. The place provides important customary resources for Māori
<b><i>Hiahiatanga tūturu customary needs</i></b>	He wāhi tērā e pupuru nei i ngā tikanga ahurea, wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a venue or repository for Māori cultural practices and spiritual values.
<b><i>Whakaaronui o te wā contemporary esteem</i></b>	He wāhi rongonui tērā ki ngā Māori, arā, he wāhi whakaahuru, he wāhi whakawaihanga, he wāhi tuku mātauranga rānei. The place has special amenity, architectural or educational significance to Māori.

#### **Explanation of terms:**

**Hiahiatanga tūturu** means those parts of the landscape that are important for the exercise of tikanga – the principles and practices to maintain the mauri of parts of the natural world. This might be a place where a particular ritual is performed or a particular feature that is noted for its ability to identify the boundaries of ancestral tribal lands that is acknowledged in iwi or hapū oratory.

**Kōrero-o-mua** refer to places that are important due to particular historical and traditional associations (in pre-European history).

**Rawa tūturu** means the cultural value of places that provide, or once provided, important customary resources to tangata whenua. Customary resources might include food and materials necessary to sustain life in pre-European and post-European times.

**Whakaaronui o te wā** refers to the contemporary relationships tangata whenua have with Māori heritage places. Appreciation of features for their beauty, pleasantness, and aesthetic values is important to tangata whenua. Recreational values attributed to features are also important to tangata whenua as they illustrate the relationship that individuals and groups can have with the environment.



# Schedule 7 – Significant indigenous biodiversity areas | Āpiti 7 – Ngā wāhi motuhake rerenga rauropi

Schedule 7 contains the following schedules:

- Schedule 7A - Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas A identified in the Waikato region coastal marine area (SIBA-A)
- Schedule 7B - Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas identified in the Waikato region coastal marine area (SIBA-B)
- Schedule 7C - Principles of biodiversity offsets

## Significant Biodiversity Area A and B criteria

An area shall be considered a Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area A or B if it meets the criteria for determining significance of indigenous biodiversity outlined in Table 28 of the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016. These criteria will be used to assess proposed future additions to the schedule.

Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas are categorised in accordance with NZCPS Policy 11 and RPS Policy 11 as follows:

- **Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas – A (SIBA-A):** Areas which, due to their physical form, scale or inherent indigenous biodiversity values, are regionally significant because of their rarity, value to Threatened species, provision of critical habitat and/or vulnerable ecosystem types, and/or their disproportionate contribution to broader ecological functions and values. They are also considered to be vulnerable to any adverse effects of anthropogenic activities.
- **Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas – B (SIBA-B):** Areas which, due to their physical form, scale or inherent biodiversity values, are regionally significant because of their predominance of native vegetation, provision of indigenous habitat and/or vulnerable ecosystem types that also form important migratory pathways or ecological corridors in the coastal environment. They are considered more resilient ecosystem types, or ecosystem types that are widespread throughout the region.

Areas that have been assessed against these criteria and have been determined as being Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas, are identified on the overlay maps, and the values for each area are described in in Schedules 7A and 7B.

## Schedule 7A – Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas A identified in the Waikato region coastal marine area (SIBA-A)

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
A1	Marokopa Estuary	3, 6, 8	SIBA-A	Nationally significant saltmarsh supporting several Threatened and At Risk shorebirds including reef heron (Threatened - Nationally Endangered), fernbird (At Risk - Declining), and banded rail (At Risk - Declining).
A2	Kāwhia Harbour (A)	3, 6, 8	SIBA-A	Kāwhia Harbour supports large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds that provide structural complexity and habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates.  Exposed shellbanks and sandbars are utilized as roosts on the falling tide by shorebirds including populations of black stilt (Threatened – Nationally Critical), banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).
A3	Aotea Harbour (A)	3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-A	Aotea Harbour supports large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds that provide structural complexity and habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates.  Exposed shellbanks and sandbars are utilized as roosts on the falling tide by shorebirds including populations of banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).
A4	Karewa/Gannet Island	1, 3, 9	SIBA-A	Karewa/Gannet Island is a rare example of a largely unmodified offshore island off the region’s west coast.  The island is surrounded by high-value subtidal reefs that support diverse populations of marine fish and invertebrates.  The island sustains New Zealand’s largest Australasian gannet colony and is designated a Wildlife Sanctuary under the Wildlife Act.  The SIBA also includes the northernmost breeding and haul out site for New Zealand fur seal.
A5	Whale Bay to Manu Bay	3, 10	SIBA-A	Subtidal rocky reef supports a population of the macroalga <i>Pachymenia lusoria</i> (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).  The southwest coastline forms an ecological sequence encompassing marine and terrestrial ecosystems culminating in the summit of Mt Karioi – from the mountain to the sea.
A6	Whāingaroa/Raglan Harbour (A)	3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-A	Large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds provide habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates.

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				Exposed shellbanks and sandbars are utilized as roosts on the falling tide by shorebirds including variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
A7	Waikato River Mouth (A)	3, 6, 7, 8, 10	SIBA-A	<p>Nesting, foraging and roosting habitat is present adjacent intertidal sand/mudflats for Threatened and At Risk shorebirds including breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and pied shag (At Risk – Recovering).</p> <p>Critical spawning sites for inanga (At Risk – Declining) were historically present.</p>
A8	Firth of Thames Ramsar site	1, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 11	SIBA-A	<p>The Firth of Thames is the most productive coastal waterway in the Hauraki Gulf.</p> <p>This southern Firth of Thames site is designated as an internationally important wetland under the Ramsar Convention. The Ramsar site extends from Pūkorokoro Miranda to the Waihou River mouth and includes most of the area’s approximately 7870 hectares of exposed intertidal bird feeding grounds and shellbanks.</p> <p>The site is considered to be an important (if not critical) snapper nursery.</p> <p>Habitat types in the SIBA include saltmarsh and mangrove, channels and intertidal sand and mudflats. The shoreline along the southern margin of the site contains a band of mangrove forest, which largely formed since the 1950s and in places is now around 1 km wide. The site receives runoff from the Hauraki Plains and nearby areas. Sediment and nutrients have been identified as key threats to the site and broader Firth of Thames, particularly in relation to benthic communities on the tidal flats, the promotion of mangroves and eutrophication.</p> <p>Shellfish, worms, crustaceans, and a myriad of other small animals (benthic invertebrates) live on and in the sand and/or mudflats. They maintain sediment health and functions (such as nutrient cycling) through constantly mixing the sediments. They also provide settlement substrates, shelter, water filtration, and food that sustains the birds and fish that utilise the area.</p> <p>The Firth of Thames is a terminal point for the East Asian-Australasian flyway, which is used by shorebirds migrating from the Siberian and Alaskan winter to feed during the southern hemisphere’s summer. They return to their northern breeding grounds between March and June. The site supports over 20,000 birds per year, most of which are migratory, and is considered to be one of New Zealand’s three most important areas for coastal wading birds.</p> <p>The site is used by large numbers of local native and endemic shore birds, including breeding populations of black-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), Caspian tern (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), banded rail (At Risk – Declining), variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				<p>Increasing) and pied shag (At Risk – Recovering).</p> <p>The site is also of international importance for the presence of the Miranda chenier plain (a series of shelly beach ridges separated by mudflats), which is considered to be one of the best examples worldwide of an active chenier system. The shellbanks provide vital roosting sites for large numbers of shorebirds and are also important breeding sites for a number of species.</p> <p>The site is a productive benthic and pelagic ecosystem providing primary nursery habitat for at least 15 coastal fish species.</p> <p>Foraging area for little shearwaters (At Risk – Declining), common dolphins, killer whales (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and Bryde’s whales (Threatened – Nationally Critical).</p>
A9	Southern Firth of Thames and margins	3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 11	SIBA-A	<p>Habitat types in the SIBA include saltmarsh and mangrove, channels and intertidal sand and mudflats. The shoreline along the south-eastern edge of the site near Thames contains a band of mangrove forest, which largely formed since the 1950s and in places is now around 200-350m wide. The site receives runoff from the Hauraki Plains and nearby areas. Sediment and nutrients have been identified as a key threats to the site and broader Firth of Thames, particularly in relation to benthic communities on the tidal flats, the promotion of mangroves and eutrophication.</p> <p>Shellfish, worms, crustaceans, and a myriad of other small animals (benthic invertebrates) live on and in the sand and/or mudflats. They maintain sediment health and functions (such as nutrient cycling) through constantly mixing the sediments. They also provide settlement substrates, shelter, water filtration, and food that sustains the masses of birds and fish that utilise the area.</p> <p>The Firth of Thames is a terminal point for the East Asian-Australasian flyway, which is used by shorebirds migrating from the Siberian and Alaskan winter to feed during the southern hemisphere’s summer. They return to their northern breeding grounds between March and June. The Firth supports over 20,000 birds per year, most of which are migratory, and is considered one of New Zealand’s three most important areas for coastal wading birds.</p> <p>The site is used by large numbers of local native and endemic shore birds, including breeding populations of black-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), Caspian tern (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), white-fronted tern (At Risk – Declining), variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and pied shag (At Risk – Recovering). Intertidal flats around the mouths of the Waihou and Kuaeranga Rivers are used for feeding by a number of shore birds of conservation concern, while scattered high water roost sites are located to the west of Thames township.</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				Foraging area for little shearwaters (At Risk – Declining), common dolphins, killer whales (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and Bryde’s whales (Threatened – Nationally Critical).
A10	Manaia Harbour (A)	3, 6, 7, 8	SIBA-A	The harbour includes a relatively large mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds, that provide habitat complexity supporting a wide variety of marine fish and invertebrates.  Shellbanks and sandbars provide roosting and nesting habitat for variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
A11	Te Kouma Harbour (A)	3, 6, 8	SIBA-A	The harbour contains a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass (At Risk – Declining) providing habitat complexity supporting a wide variety of marine fish and invertebrates and resident and migrant shorebirds.
A12	Coromandel Harbour (A)	2, 3, 6, 7, 8	SIBA-A	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass (At Risk – Declining) providing habitat complexity supporting a wide variety of marine fish and invertebrates and resident and migrant shorebirds.
A13	Motukawao Group proposed High Protection Area	1, 8	SIBA-A	Ecological values of the Motukawao Group proposed High Protection Area include shallow reefs along the shore, and fringing islands composed of cobble and large boulder-sized materials. Shallow reefs with a narrow fringe of <i>Carpophyllum flexuosum</i> forests (absent in many places) to 3 m depth. <i>Ecklonia radiata</i> occurs at exposed locations. Common north-eastern North Island coastal reef fishes, with the occasional appearance of subtropical species (eg, silver drummer). Dog cockle beds occur in sandy, high-current areas, often below reefs around the islands. Horse mussel beds are also present. <i>Galeolaria hystrix</i> is a tube-building marine worm that forms large mounds. It was recently recorded for the first time in areas south of the proposed area, and might be found on the raised bank to the west of the islands (NIWA, M Morrison, pers. comm.).  Specific ecological objectives for the Motukawao Group proposed High Protection Area are to provide high-level protection to habitats and ecosystems that are typical (representative) of the inner Gulf; to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft and hard substrates (eg, sponges, soft corals) and the species associated with them; and to provide for scientific research and monitoring of reference areas to support Gulf-wide management.
A14	Tukituki Bay to Kikowhakarere Bay	3, 8	SIBA-A	This coastline comprises a series of sandy bays (Tukituki, Waiete, Amodeo, Ngohitanu, Koutauaki, Oamaru, Kikowhakarere) separated by rocky reef and headlands. The intertidal sandflats within the bays support areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) that provide habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish, benthic invertebrates and foraging habitat for breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
A15	Fantail Bay to Waikawau Bay	1, 2, 3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-A	The coastline between Fantail Bay and Waikawau Bay around the top of the Coromandel Peninsula is a remote, rugged and exposed seascape with clear oceanic water, that is subject to large swells, large waves and very strong tidal currents, particularly through Colville Channel. Bays and inlets of sand and gravel are interspersed

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				<p>among steep rocky cliffs, outcrops and reefs. A large proportion of the shore is Department of Conservation public conservation land, and much of it is forested. This provides a natural sequence from hilltop to the seafloor. No other areas in the Waikato Region have the same characteristics. The site overlaps with the Cape Colville proposed Marine Protected Area.</p> <p>The composition and distribution of benthic marine communities reflect those influences. The area has not been extensively surveyed but is known to contain diverse biogenic habitat including seaweeds (including <i>Lessonia</i> sp. A (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon), sponges, and scallop, horse mussel, dog cockle and bryozoan beds. These features have been impacted by scallop dredging and trawling, but biogenic habitats are expected to recover if ongoing bottom disturbance is avoided.</p> <p>A range of Threatened and At Risk biota utilise the area including breeding populations of sea and shorebirds such as northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing), variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), and pied shag (At Risk – Recovering).</p> <p>Orca (Threatened - nationally critical) have infrequently been observed at Poley Bay, adjacent to Lonely Bay.</p> <p>Within Waikawau Estuary along the Waikawau River there is an unmodified sequence from estuarine to freshwater communities, with freshwater swamp characterised by manuka, flax, cabbage tree and toetoe.</p>
A16	Cape Colville proposed High Protection Area	1, 8	SIBA-A	<p>Ecological values of Cape Colville proposed High Protection Area include high tidal currents and a very diverse bathymetry, diverse high-current rocky reef assemblages, and high biodiversity recorded in historic records. A mix of shallow and deep reef habitats and various types of soft substrate habitats (gravels and sand). Extensive, dense dog cockle beds with epifaunal sponges and ascidians. Rocky reefs are dominated by massive sponges, hydroids and anemones. Reef fish diversity includes blue cod, snapper, red moki, goatfishes, scarlet wrasse, butterfly perch and twospot demoiselle.</p> <p>Specific ecological objectives for the Cape Colville proposed High Protection Area are to provide high-level protection to habitats and ecosystems that are typical (representative) of the outer Gulf; to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft substrates (eg, sponges, dog cockles) and the species associated with them; to protect physical features and biogenic structures that support biodiversity in soft-sediment habitats; and to provide for scientific research and monitoring of reference areas to support Gulf-wide management.</p>
A17	Cape Colville proposed Seafloor Protection Area	1	SIBA-A	<p>Ecological values of Cape Colville proposed Seafloor Protection Area include high tidal currents and a very diverse bathymetry, diverse high-current rocky reef assemblages, and high biodiversity recorded in historic records. Extensive, dense dog cockle beds with epifaunal sponges and ascidians. Rocky reefs are dominated by massive sponges, hydroids and anemones. Reef fish diversity includes blue cod, snapper, red moki, goatfishes, scarlet wrasse, butterfly perch and twospot demoiselle. A mix of shallow and deep reef habitats and various types of</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				<p>soft-substrate habitats (gravels and sands).</p> <p>Specific ecological objectives for the Cape Colville proposed Seafloor Protection Area are to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft substrates (eg, sponges, dog cockles) and the species associated with them; to protect physical features and biogenic structures that support biodiversity in soft-sediment habitats.</p>
A18	Repanga/Cuvier Island	1, 2, 3, 8, 10	SIBA-A	<p>Repanga/Cuvier Island provides important habitat for seabirds, including breeding populations of northern blue penguin, (At Risk – Declining), red-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), white-fronted tern (At Risk – Declining), Pycroft’s petrel (At Risk – Recovering), pied shag (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater (At Risk – Relict) and northern diving petrel (At Risk – Relict).</p> <p>The island has been predator free since 1993 and includes a terrestrial to marine ecological sequence, transitioning from predator-free, seabird-rich island through intertidal to subtidal, with notable, high diversity rocky reef systems.</p>
A19	Mercury Islands	2, 3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-A	<p>The SIBA is known to contain diverse biogenic habitat including rhodolith beds located to the west of Great Mercury Island, horse mussel beds, and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds located at Hurihuri Bay. These subtidal seagrass beds have decreased in extent substantially since 1974, but still support high densities of juvenile snapper.</p> <p>The Mercury Islands provide important habitat for seabirds including breeding populations of flesh-footed shearwater (At Risk – Relict), sooty shearwater (At Risk – Declining), little penguin (At Risk – Declining), red-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), white-fronted tern (At Risk – Declining), North Island little shearwater (At Risk – Recovering), Pycroft’s petrel (At Risk – Recovering), pied shag (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater (At Risk - Relict) and northern diving petrel (At Risk – Relict).</p> <p>The Islands have been predator free since 2016 and all the islands, except Ahuahu/Great Mercury Island, are managed by the Department of Conservation as Nature Reserves. The island group includes terrestrial to marine ecological sequences, transitioning from predator-free, seabird-rich islands through the intertidal to subtidal, with notable rocky reef systems that support a diversity of reef fish.</p>
A20	Kennedy Bay and estuary	2, 3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-A	<p>Kennedy Bay includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including mangroves and saltmarsh around the entrances to Harataunga and Omoho Streams, down through intertidal sand and mudflats containing biogenic shellfish beds that provide physical stability, settlement substrates, shelter, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification. Shellfish beds include areas of high density cockles, a small area of oysters, and geoduck clams in subtidal waters.</p> <p>Creeks and stream mouths provide migration pathways for lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk –</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).  High-density shellfish beds and the adjacent sandy shoreline supports breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
A21	Whangapoua Harbour including ocean beaches from New Chums Beach to Matarangi Bluff (A)	1, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11	SIBA-A	Large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds and shellfish beds provide habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates.  Breeding sites located at the harbour mouth, Te Rehutae Point, Whangapoua beach, Matarangi Beach, and Rings Beach for variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and/or northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
A22	Rings Beach to Opito Bay including Otama Beach and Estuary and Rabbit Island (A)	2, 3, 6, 8, 9, 11	SIBA-A	The rocky headland between Otama and Opito Bay includes rocky reef supporting a diversity of sponge and bryzoan communities that are uncommon/rare in the Waikato Region.
A23	Black Rocks, Flat Island, Ohinauti Island and Ohinau Island group and surrounds (A)	3, 8	SIBA-A	The offshore islands and rocks are surrounded by subtidal rocky reef and seagrass (At Risk – Declining) supporting a high diversity of fish, macroalgae and marine invertebrates as well as coastal birds that depend on them for food.
A24	Whitianga Harbour and Buffalo Beach (A)	2, 3, 6, 8, 10, 11	SIBA-A	Large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds provide habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates.  Saltmarsh and adjacent freshwater wetlands support resident populations of Australasian bittern (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and banded rail (At Risk – Declining).
A25	Te Whanganui-A-Hei and Offshore Islands	1, 3, 8	SIBA-A	Marine Reserve extends from the coast at approximately Cook Bluff and offshore to Motukorure/Centre Island then south-eastwards to the northern end of Hahei Beach and offshore to the northern end of Mahurangi/Goat Island.  Hard rock reefs and soft sandy sediments form high quality habitat for a diverse range of corals, macroalgae, marine invertebrates and common marine fish. The rocky intertidal and subtidal reef supports high species diversity of reef fish and marine invertebrates while the coastal waters support breeding population of fluttering shearwater (At Risk – Relict).  Sandy shores and intertidal sand and mud flats support breeding populations of northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).



ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				A breeding population of sooty shearwater (At Risk – Declining) is known at Poikeke Island.
A26	Whanganui-a-Hei (Cathedral Cove) proposed Marine Reserve extension or High Protection Area	1	SIBA-A	<p>Ecological values of the Whanganui-a-Hei (Cathedral Cove) proposed Marine Reserve extension or High Protection Area protects typical northeast North Island coastal rocky reef and shallow sand assemblages and associated biodiversity (green-lipped mussel, anemones, rock lobster, snapper, sponge assemblages, mixed algae. Very shallow rocky reef on the western side of Mahurangi Island and sand between the island and Hahei.</p> <p>Specific ecological objectives of the Whanganui-a-Hei (Cathedral Cove) proposed Marine Reserve extension or High Protection Area are to provide high-level protection to habitats and ecosystems that are typical (representative) of the eastern Coromandel; to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft and hard substrates (eg, sponges, soft corals) and the species associated with them; to protect physical features and biogenic structures that support biodiversity in soft-sediment habitats; to improve the ecological integrity of the Marine Reserve by providing an adequate buffer to reefs; and to provide for scientific research and monitoring of reference areas to support Gulf-wide management.</p>
A27	Te Pupuha Point	3, 8	SIBA-A	<p>Coralline algae and biogenic reef that provides a high diversity of reef fish and marine invertebrates. This is a known site for several At Risk seabirds and New Zealand fur seal that forage in the coastal waters around the point.</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
A28	Sailor’s Grave – Te Karo Bay (A)	3, 5	SIBA-A	The northern rocky platform/reef supports macroalgae beds with <i>Carpophyllum angustifolium</i> , <i>Lessonia</i> sp. A and <i>Pleurostichidium falkenbergii</i> (all of which are At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).
A29	Tairua Harbour, including Tairua Ocean Beach and Pauanui Beach (A)	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	SIBA-A	Large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds provide habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates present within the harbour. These areas along with shellfish beds support a wide range of Threatened and At Risk shore and wetland birds.
A30	Aldermen Islands	2, 3, 8	SIBA-A	<p>The rocky platform/reef supports a high diversity of macroalgae beds with <i>Carpophyllum angustifolium</i>, <i>Lessonia</i> sp. A and <i>Pleurostichidium falkenbergii</i> (all of which are At Risk – Naturally Uncommon) as well as a high diversity of marine fish, invertebrates, and rhodolith beds.</p> <p>Known breeding populations of sooty shearwater (At Risk – Declining), little penguin (At Risk – Declining), red-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), North Island little shearwater (At Risk – Recovering), variable oystercatcher (At</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				Risk – Recovering), pied shag (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater (At Risk – Relict), New Zealand white-faced storm petrel (At Risk – Relict) and northern diving petrel (At Risk – Relict).
A31	Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu) proposed High Protection Area (north)	1, 8	SIBA-A	<p>Ecological values of the Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu) proposed High Protection Area (north) include outstanding underwater scenery and an abundance and high diversity of flora and fauna. Strongly influenced by subtropical waters of the East Auckland Current and high biological productivity driven by seasonal upwelling along the edge of the continental shelf. The reef system associated with the Aldermen Islands spans about 30 km from north to south and runs roughly parallel to the coast. Diverse rocky reef assemblages, including kelp forest above 40 m depth. Rock walls and deeper reefs are dominated by sponges, hydroids, anemones and ascidians. Diverse reef fish assemblages are also present, typical of other north-eastern North Island offshore islands.</p> <p>Specific ecological objectives for the Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu) proposed High Protection Area (north) are to provide high-level protection to habitats and ecosystems that are typical (representative) of the outer Gulf (particularly deep reef systems); to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft and hard substrates (eg, sponges, soft corals and black coral) and the species associated with them; to provide for the restoration of benthic communities following disturbance, particularly slow-growing species such as sponges and corals; and to provide for scientific research and monitoring of reference areas to support Gulf-wide management.</p>
A32	Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu) proposed High Protection Area (south)	1, 8	SIBA-A	<p>Ecological values of the Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu) proposed High Protection Area (south) include outstanding underwater scenery and an abundance and high diversity of flora and fauna. Strongly influenced by subtropical waters of the East Auckland Current and high biological productivity driven by seasonal upwelling along the edge of the continental shelf. The reef system associated with the Alderman Islands spans about 30 km from north to south and runs roughly parallel to the coast. Diverse rocky reef assemblages, including kelp forest above 40 m depth. Rock walls and deeper reefs are dominated by sponges, hydroids, anemones and ascidians. Diverse reef fish assemblages are also present, typical of other northeastern North Island offshore islands.</p> <p>Specific ecological objectives of the Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu) proposed High Protection Area (south) are to provide high-level protection to habitats and ecosystems that are typical (representative) of the outer Gulf (particularly deep reef systems); to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft and hard substrates (eg, sponges, soft corals and black coral) and the species associated with them; to provide for the restoration of benthic communities following disturbance, particularly slow-growing species such as sponges and corals; to provide for scientific research and monitoring of reference areas to support Gulf-wide management.</p>
A33	Little King and Big King Rock	8	SIBA-A	<p>Rocky intertidal and subtidal reef and biogenic habitat for reef fish/indigenous species.</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).
A34	Shoe Island/Motuhoa	8	SIBA-A	<p>Rocky intertidal and subtidal reef and biogenic habitat for a high diversity of reef fish and marine invertebrates.</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
A35	Slipper Island (Whakahau), Pauanui/Penguin Island and Rabbit Island	1, 2, 3, 7, 8	SIBA-A	<p>Slipper Island/Whakahau marine habitats include an extensive shallow reef system and a rich mosaic of intertidal and subtidal soft sediment habitats, including coarse clean sands and shell gravel. Habitats support dense beds of bivalves including scallop beds, kelp forests, subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds (including one of the best remnant seagrass meadows found in the Hauraki Gulf), diverse invertebrate assemblages, and large numbers of juvenile fishes.</p> <p>Known breeding populations of pied shag (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater (At Risk – Relict) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p>
A36	Slipper Island (Whakahau) proposed High Protection Area	1	SIBA-A	<p>Ecological values of Slipper Island (Whakahau) proposed High Protection Area are typical of north-eastern North Island rocky reef assemblages. Diverse habitats, ranging from exposed rocky reefs to the east of the island through to sheltered rocky shores on the west of the island. Largest of the few remnants of subtidal seagrass habitat in the Gulf (to 3 m depth). Species associated with the site include horse mussel, scallops, rock lobster, sea hares, broad squid, morning star shell (very high densities), tuatua, mantis shrimps, red swimming crab and tubicolous amphipods.</p> <p>Specific ecological objectives for Slipper Island (Whakahau) proposed High Protection Area are to provide high-level protection to habitats and ecosystems that are typical (representative) of the eastern Coromandel, particularly shallow reef habitats; to protect sensitive biogenic habitats on soft and hard substrates (eg, sponges, soft corals, seagrass) and the species associated with them; and to provide for scientific research and monitoring of reference areas to support Gulf-wide management.</p>
A37	Wharekawa Harbour (A)	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	SIBA-A	Large areas of intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds provide habitat diversity important for a wide variety of marine fish and benthic invertebrates that are present within the harbour. These areas, along with shellfish beds, support a wide range of Threatened and At Risk shore and wetland birds.
A38	Whangamatā Harbour, including Whangamatā Beach	2, 3, 6, 8, 10, 11	SIBA-A	<p>Intertidal and subtidal seagrass (At Risk – Declining) beds provide habitat for a high diversity of marine fish and invertebrates.</p> <p>Within the Otahu Estuary, is an important estuarine-freshwater-coastal forest sequence displaying intactness,</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
	south to Otahu River (A)			sequence continuity and diversity, with high habitat value for wetland birds such as Australasian bittern (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and banded rail (At Risk – Declining).
A39	Hauturu/Clark Island group	1, 3, 8	SIBA-A	Clark Island Group includes marine habitat that supports a breeding population of little penguin (At Risk – Declining).  Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).

## Schedule 7B – Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas B identified in the Waikato region coastal marine area (SIBA-B)

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
B1	Mōkau River Mouth	3, 8, 11	SIBA-B	<p>The river mouth and adjacent intertidal areas provide low-tide foraging habitat that supports breeding populations of Caspian tern (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable) and variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), as well as a variety of marine fish species.</p> <p>The river mouth is a migration pathway for several Threatened and At Risk native fish including shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B2	Awakino River Mouth	3, 6, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The river mouth and adjacent saltmarsh and sandflats provide foraging habitat for variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering). The river mouth is a migration pathway for several Threatened and At Risk native fish including shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), and inanga (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B3	Waikawau River Mouth	3, 8, 11	SIBA-B	<p>The Waikawau river mouth provides a migration pathway and habitat for several native fish species including longfin eel (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining) as well as foraging habitat for marine fish species and coastal shorebirds. Areas above the high tide line provide nesting and habitat for northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p>
B4	Marokopa River Mouth	3, 6, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The river mouth provides a migration pathway and habitat for several native fish species including longfin eel (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining) as well as foraging habitat for marine fish species and coastal shorebirds. Areas above the high tide line provide nesting and roosting habitat for variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), which are known to breed near the river mouth.</p>
B5	Taharoa Beach and Wainui Stream Mouth	3, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The Wainui Stream mouth and Taharoa beach intertidal area provide foraging habitat for breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>The river mouth provides a migration pathway and habitat for several native fish species including longfin eel (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B6	Kāwhia Harbour (B)	3, 6, 8	SIBA-B	<p>Kāwhia Harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including saltmarsh, mangroves, seagrass, channels, and vast intertidal sand/ mudflats.</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				<p>Shellfish, worms, crustaceans, and a myriad of other small animals (benthic invertebrates) live on and in the sand and/or mudflats. They maintain sediment health and functions (such as nutrient cycling) through constantly mixing the sediments. They also provide settlement substrates, shelter, water filtration, and food that sustains the birds and fish that utilise the area.</p> <p>The harbour mouth and river are migration pathways for several freshwater fish species found in the wider catchment including: shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>West coast estuaries and harbours are known to support populations of marine mammals including Maui dolphin (Threatened - Nationally Critical) and Hector’s dolphin (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), entering the harbour to forage on the rising tide.</p> <p>The rich shellfish beds within the harbour support over-wintering of national importance to resident and migrant shorebirds, including populations of black stilt (Threatened – Nationally Critical), banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B7	Aotea Harbour (B)	3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-B	<p>Aotea Harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including saltmarsh, mangroves, extensive seagrass beds, channels, and intertidal sand and mudflats.</p> <p>Shellfish, worms, crustaceans, and a myriad of other small animals (benthic invertebrates) live on and in the sand and/or mudflats. They maintain sediment health and functions (such as nutrient cycling) through constantly mixing the sediments. They also provide settlement substrates, shelter, water filtration, and food that sustains the birds and marine fish that utilise the area.</p> <p>The harbour mouth and various river entrances are migration pathways and possible spawning habitat for several native fish species found in the wider catchment including: shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>West coast estuaries and harbours are known to support populations of marine mammals including Maui dolphin (Threatened - Nationally Critical) and Hector’s dolphin (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), entering the harbour to forage on the rising tide.</p> <p>Shorebirds feed on inter-tidal flats throughout Aotea Harbour, and the harbour is a wintering site of national importance to indigenous breeding and migrant shorebirds including populations of banded dotterel (At Risk –</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				Declining), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).  Southwest of Pakoka Landing, the SIBA includes an intact estuarine-freshwater wetland-coastal forest sequence.
B8	Whāingaroa/Raglan Harbour (B)	3, 6, 8, 10	SIBA-B	<p>Whāingaroa/Raglan Harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats that provide foraging and breeding habitat for native fauna. Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) are present at shellbanks and sandy shores above MHWS.</p> <p>The harbour is known for extensive shellfish beds and other benthic invertebrates that live on and in the sand and/or mudflats. They maintain sediment health and functions (such as nutrient cycling) through constantly mixing the sediments. They also provide settlement substrates, shelter, water filtration, and food that sustains the birds and marine fish that utilise the area.</p> <p>Important wintering (non-breeding) populations of South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining) are all present within the harbour.</p> <p>West coast estuaries and harbours are known to support populations of marine mammals such as Maui dolphin (Threatened - Nationally Critical) and Hector’s dolphin (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), entering the harbour to forage on the rising tide. The rocky coastline north of the harbour mouth provides haul out area for New Zealand fur seal.</p> <p>The harbour mouth and river are migration pathways and possible spawning habitat for several native fish species i.e. shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B9	Waimai Stream to Waikorea Stream	3, 8	SIBA-B	The river mouth provides a migration pathway and habitat for several native fish species including longfin eel (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining) and adjacent sandflats provide foraging habitat for Threatened and At Risk shorebirds. Species known to be present include variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
B10	Kaawa Stream Mouth	3	SIBA-B	The Kaawa Stream mouth and intertidal area provide foraging habitat for breeding populations of At Risk shorebirds including northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
B11	Waikato River Mouth (B)	3, 6, 7, 8, 10	SIBA-B	<p>The river mouth is characterized by deep channels with adjacent sandy bays and mudflats. Scattered areas of estuarine vegetation are present along the margins of the river mouth and have historically provided spawning habitat for inanga (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>West coast estuaries and harbours are known to support populations of marine mammals including Maui dolphin</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				<p>(Threatened – Nationally Critical) and Hector’s dolphin (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), entering the harbour to forage on the rising tide.</p> <p>The Waikato River Mouth is well known for freshwater and marine fisheries. It is a migration pathway for several native fish species found in the wider catchment including shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>Intertidal sand and mudflats provide foraging habitat for Threatened and At Risk shorebirds including breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and pied shag (At Risk – Recovering).</p>
B12	West coast subtidal reefs	8	SIBA-B	<p>Rocky reefs provide habitat for significant numbers of indigenous and endemic marine flora and fauna in New Zealand including fish, sponges, crustacea and macroalgae. There is limited information on the composition of west coast reef systems.</p>
B13	Manaia Harbour (B)	3, 6, 7, 8	SIBA-B	<p>Coastal wetland made up of saltmarsh and mangrove forest is found along the landward edges of the harbour while biogenic shellfish beds including cockles and pipi are present throughout the central harbour. These habitat types provide essential ecosystem services such as physical stability, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification supporting a wide range of native flora and fauna.</p> <p>These shellfish beds provide over-wintering foraging resource for South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining), as well as breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>The harbour also offers foraging habitat for rays, flatfish and sharks that enter on the rising tide.</p> <p>Estuaries and harbours along the Firth of Thames are known to support populations of marine mammals entering the harbour to forage.</p>
B14	Te Kouma Harbour (B)	3, 6, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The harbour’s coastal wetlands provide essential ecosystem services and biogenic shellfish beds including cockles, that provide physical stability, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification. Shellfish beds support coastal wader bird foraging habitat at low tide and sandy/shellbank areas provide high-tide roosts for these species.</p> <p>The harbour also offers foraging habitat for rays, flatfish and sharks that enter on the rising tide.</p>



ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				Estuaries and harbours along the Firth of Thames are known to support populations of marine mammals entering the harbour to forage.
B15	Coromandel Harbour (B)	2, 3, 6, 7, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The largest harbour on the western side of Coromandel Peninsula. The harbour has been modified with existing uses and development including marine farms, moorings, wharves and jetties, access roads and facilities. Sediment loads to the harbour are also relatively high.</p> <p>Habitat types in the harbour change from saltmarsh and mangrove in the innermost sections, down through intertidal sand and mudflats that provide physical stability, settlement substrates, shelter, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification.</p> <p>Rays, flatfish, and a variety of other fish species move into intertidal areas on rising tides to forage, while a variety of coastal birds forage on falling tides. High conservation areas for demersal fish dominate Coromandel Harbour.</p> <p>Estuaries and harbours along the Firth of Thames are known to support populations of marine mammals such as entering the harbour to forage.</p> <p>Creeks and rivers provide migration pathways and possible spawning habitat for longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining), bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p> <p>Intertidal sand and mudflats provide foraging habitat for Threatened and At Risk shorebirds including breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing), and wintering populations of banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining) and South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining). The harbour also supports migrants such as bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B16	Rangipukea/Wekarua Island group	2, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The Rangipukea/Wekarua Island group includes intertidal and subtidal reef habitat that supports high diversity rocky reef communities including some of the only large Galeolaria hystrix colonies known north of the Marlborough sounds.</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened - nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast. Those sighted include Bryde's whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk - Recovering) (At Risk – recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
B17	Hauraki Gulf Galeolaria biogenic reef fields	8	SIBA-B	Includes some of the only large Galeolaria hystrix colonies known north of the Marlborough sounds. Galeolaria colonies form biogenic reef fields that support species like red algae, sponges, sea squirts, hydroids, bryozoans, and feathery brittlestars. They also provide shelter and foraging habitat for a diversity of fish species.
B18	Cow Island	3, 8	SIBA-B	The coastal waters and shallow subtidal reef support a diversity of marine invertebrates and fish as well as a breeding population of New Zealand white-faced storm petrel (At Risk – Relict).
B19	The Western Coromandel Islands (Motukawao Group, Motuoruhi, Waimate, Motuapere, Whanganui, Rangipukea, Wekarua, Tataweka)	2, 3, 8	SIBA-B	<p>Intertidal and subtidal reef surrounding the island group supports high diversity macroalgae and marine invertebrate communities including some of the only large Galeolaria hystrix colonies known north of the Marlborough sounds. These habitat types support a range of marine fishes and provides foraging habitat for breeding populations of At Risk seabirds.</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering) (At Risk – recovering), minke whale (Data Ddeficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B20	Colville Bay	3, 6, 8	SIBA-B	<p>Colville Bay is a moderately sized estuary with large tracts of native vegetation on its southern shore, and sizable pockets on its eastern shore.</p> <p>Habitat types in Colville Bay grade from saltmarsh and mangrove at the entrances of Maurea and Umangawha Streams, down through intertidal sand and mudflats. The bay is known to contain biogenic shellfish and small patches of seagrass beds that provide physical stability, settlement substrates, shelter, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification.</p> <p>Rays, flatfish, and a variety of other fish species move into intertidal areas on rising tides to forage, while a variety of coastal birds do the same on falling tides.</p> <p>The area sustains regularly-occurring South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining), bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining) and banded rail (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>Creeks and rivers associated with the harbour provide a migration pathway and possible spawning habitat for shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>Intertidal sand and mudflats provide foraging habitat for Threatened and At Risk shorebirds including breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
B21	Waiaro Bay	3, 8	SIBA-B	<p>Waiaro Bay is a small tidal lagoon that contains intertidal shellfish beds, saltmarsh, and sandy shores that sustain breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>The Waiaro stream and other unnamed watercourses run into the bay and provide a migration pathway for native fish.</p>
B22	Whangapoua Harbour including ocean beaches from New Chums Beach to Matarangi Bluff (B)	1, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11	SIBA-B	<p>The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand and mudflats.</p> <p>Wintering site of banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining). northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing)</p> <p>The Whangapoua harbour provides a migration pathway for longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon), and the Kuaotunu River supports longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B23	Rings Beach to Opito Bay including Otama Beach and Estuary and Rabbit Island (B)	2,3, 6, 8, 9, 11	SIBA-B	<p>This coastline includes beaches, tidal lagoons and small river mouths separated by rocky headlands and associated reefs. This forms a relatively intact coastal sequence from sandflats and rocky reef to estuarine vegetation and further inland to freshwater wetland and coastal forest.</p> <p>This stretch of coast includes intertidal shellfish beds and sandy shores that support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>The Otama estuary and dune habitat forms a sequence of relatively unmodified native vegetation of regional significance. The estuary and adjacent sandflats support coastal wading birds as listed above.</p> <p>The diversity and pattern of these habitat types supports a wide range of fish, macroalgae and marine invertebrates as well as the coastal birds that depend on them for food.</p>
B24	Black Rocks, Flat Island, Ohinaiti Island and Ohinau Island group and surrounds (B)	3, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The coastal waters surrounding the island and rock stacks provide high-value foraging habitat for breeding populations of flesh-footed shearwater (At Risk – Relict), little penguin (At Risk – Declining) and North Island little shearwater (At Risk – Recovering).</p>
B25	Needle Rock and surrounds	3, 8	SIBA-B	<p>The coastal waters surrounding the island and rock stacks provide high-value foraging habitat for breeding populations of fluttering shearwater (At Risk – Relict) and northern diving petrel (At Risk – Relict). Associated</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				rocky reef supporting a high diversity of fish, macroalgae and marine invertebrates as well as coastal birds that depend on them for food.
B26	Matapaua Bay to Whauwhau Beach	3	SIBA-B	Sandy shoreline and intertidal areas support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
B27	Wharekaho Beach	3	SIBA-B	Sandy shoreline and intertidal areas support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
B28	Whitianga Harbour and Buffalo Beach (B)	2, 3, 6, 8, 10, 11	SIBA-B	<p>The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats with areas of high density cockles, crabs and crustacean burrows from the middle to upper reaches of the estuary.</p> <p>Biogenic shellfish and seagrass beds provide physical stability, settlement substrates, shelter, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification.</p> <p>Rays, flatfish, and a variety of other fish species move into intertidal areas on rising tides to forage. A variety of coastal birds do the same on falling tides.</p> <p>Intertidal areas and beaches (Buffalo Beach) support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), pied shag (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>A resident population of common dolphins is present.</p> <p>The estuary provides a migration pathway for freshwater fish i.e. shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B29	Maramaratotara Bay and Flaxmill Bay	3	SIBA-B	<p>Sandy shores and intertidal shellfish beds support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Nationally Increasing), gannets, black-billed gull (At Risk – Declining) and red-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), white fronted tern (At Risk – Declining), pied shag (At Risk – Recovering).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering) (At Risk – recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
B30	Lonely Bay	3	SIBA-B	<p>Sandy shores and intertidal shellfish beds support resident and breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Nationally Increasing), gannets, black-billed gull (At Risk – Declining) and red-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), white fronted tern (At Risk – Declining), pied shag (At Risk – Recovering).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering) (At Risk – recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B31	Cooks Beach and Purangi Estuary	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	SIBA-B	<p>This SIBA includes intertidal sandflats and shellfish beds along Cook’s Beach and the estuarine wetland within Purangi Estuary. Estuarine habitat types including seagrass beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand and mudflats with high density pipi, cockles and crustacean burrows.</p> <p>Biogenic shellfish and seagrass beds provide physical stability, settlement substrates, shelter, food and water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification.</p> <p>The estuary is also a migration pathway for native freshwater fish including longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon)</p> <p>The estuary also supports a breeding population of northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and resident populations of Australasian bittern (Threatened – Nationally Critical), banded rail (At Risk – Declining), fernbird (At Risk - Declining).</p>
B32	Hahei Beach, Wigmore pass and Mahurangi Island	2, 3, 8	SIBA-B	<p>Hahei beach and surrounds is predominantly sandy beach and coastal dunes located between two rocky headlands with intertidal and shallow subtidal rocky reef.</p> <p>Resident populations of gannet and At Risk birds including fluttering shearwater (At Risk – Relict), red-billed gull ((At Risk – Declining), black-billed gull (At Risk – Declining), caspian tern (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), little penguin (At Risk – Declining) occur on rocks and offshore islands.</p> <p>Mahurangi Island, Te Pare Point and south - rocky intertidal and subtidal reef supports high species diversity of reef fish and marine invertebrates.</p> <p>Intertidal shellfish beds along Hahei beach support breeding populations of Northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering).</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				<p>Orca (Threatened - nationally critical) are seen infrequently off the southern end of Hahei Beach along with common dolphins.</p> <p>River mouths are migration pathways for longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B33	Hot Water Beach	3	SIBA-B	The intertidal sandflats provide nesting, roosting and foraging habitat for variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
B34	Sailor’s Grave – Te Karo Bay (B)	3, 5	SIBA-B	The intertidal sand/flats and associated shellfish beds provides foraging resource for coastal wading species including breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).
B35	Tairua Harbour, including Tairua Ocean Beach and Pauanui Beach (B)	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	SIBA-B	<p>Habitat types in the SIBA change from saltmarsh and mangrove in the innermost sections harbour, down through intertidal sand and mudflats that provide physical stability, settlement substrates, shelter, food, water filtration, and maintain processes in sediments such as denitrification.</p> <p>Rays, flatfish, and a variety of other fish species move into intertidal areas on rising tides to forage. A variety of coastal birds do the same on falling tides.</p> <p>Tairua Harbour has a high diversity of estuarine benthic invertebrates (e.g. cockles, wedge shell, pipi) and fish (rockfish, yelloweyed mullet, kahawai, variable triplefin, trevally, flounder, parore, grey mullet, eel, snapper and stingray).</p> <p>Adjacent sandflats and intertidal sand and mudflats at Tairua Ocean Beach and Pauanui support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened - nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p> <p>The wider estuary supports resident populations of reef heron (Threatened – Nationally Endangered) and banded rail (At Risk – Declining). The harbour provides a wintering site for banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining) and South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) with regular occurrence of Caspian tern (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable).</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				The river mouth provides a migration pathway and potential spawning habitat for several native fish: longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kōkopu (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).
B36	Ohui/North end of Opoutere Beach	3	SIBA-B	The sandy shores and intertidal shellfish support post-breeding flocking populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).
B37	Wharekawa Harbour (B)	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	SIBA-B	<p>The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand and mudflats. Present are areas of high-density pipi, cockles and crustacean burrows towards the harbour entrance, and a relatively small area of oysters.</p> <p>Intertidal mudflats support intermittent breeding populations of reef heron (Threatened – Nationally Endangered), red-billed gull (At Risk – Declining) and white-fronted tern (At Risk – Declining). Breeding and resident populations of Australasian bittern (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and banded rail (At Risk – Declining), and regularly-occurring banded dotterel (At Risk – Declining) are present within the coastal wetlands.</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p> <p>The harbour also provides habitat and migration pathway for several native fish species i.e. lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B38	Onemana Beach to southern Tokakahakaha Peninsula	3	SIBA-B	<p>Sandy shores and intertidal sandflats support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical), and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B39	Whangamatā Harbour, including Whangamatā Beach	2, 3, 6, 8, 10, 11	SIBA-B	<p>The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand and mudflats.</p> <p>Beaches and intertidal shellfish beds support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk –</p>

ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
	south to Otahu River (B)			<p>Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).</p> <p>Within the Whangamatā Harbour relatively small patches of high density cockles and crustacean burrows are present.</p> <p>Within the Otahu River there are areas of low density invertebrate fauna present with relatively small areas of high density cockles, pipi and crustacean burrows.</p> <p>The harbour also provides habitat and migration pathway for several native fish species i.e. shortjaw kōkopu (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), kōaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B40	Whiritoa Beach to Waimana Bay	3	SIBA-B	<p>Sandy shores and intertidal shellfish beds support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast. Those sighted include Bryde’s whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).</p>
B41	Whiritoa Lagoon	3, 6, 8, 11	SIBA-B	<p>A coastal wetland (saltmarsh) including intertidal sand/mudflats and associated macroinvertebrates support a wide range of shellfish, macroinvertebrates that provide foraging habitat for breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing) as well as a wide range on coastal shorebirds. The lagoon also provides a migration pathway and habitat for several native fish species including longfin eel (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining).</p>
B42	Mataora Bay	3	SIBA-B	<p>Sandy shores and intertidal shellfish beds support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (Threatened – Naturally Increasing).</p> <p>Transient populations of marine mammals occur including orca (Threatened – nationally critical) and common</p>



ID	Name	Significance criteria	SIBA type	SIBA values
				dolphins. Whale sightings have infrequently been reported on the east coast of the Coromandel. Those sighted include Bryde's whale (Threatened – Nationally Critical), southern right whale (At Risk – Recovering), minke whale (Data Deficient), humpback whale (Non-Resident Native – Migrant), pilot whale (Data deficient / Not Threatened), sei whale (Data Deficient) and false killer whale (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).
B43	Homunga Bay	3	SIBA-B	Intertidal sandflats provide foraging habitat for At Risk shorebirds.
B44	East Coast – Benthic Habitat	2, 8	SIBA-B	Subtidal reef and biogenic habitat support highly diverse populations of reef fish, marine invertebrates and macroalgae. This includes highly sensitive taxa such as Porifera (sponges); Actiniaria (anemones), Alcyonacea (soft corals), Gorgonacea (sea fans), Pennatulacea (sea pens), Scleractinia (stony corals), Antipatharia (black corals), Stylasteridae (hydrocorals), Crinoidea (sea lilies), and Brisingida (armless stars).

# Schedule 7C – Principles of biodiversity offsets

## Principles of biodiversity offsets

Biodiversity offsets are measurable conservation outcomes resulting from actions designed to compensate for significant residual adverse biodiversity impacts arising from project development after appropriate prevention and mitigation measures have been taken. The goal of biodiversity offsets is to achieve no net loss and preferably a net gain of biodiversity on the ground with respect to species composition, habitat structure, ecosystem function and people's use and cultural values associated with biodiversity. These principles establish a framework for designing and implementing biodiversity offsets and verifying their success.

Biodiversity offsets should be designed to comply with all relevant national and international law, and planned and implemented in accordance with the Convention on Biological Diversity and its ecosystem approach, as articulated in National Biodiversity Strategies and Action Plans.

1. **No net loss:** A biodiversity offset should be designed and implemented to achieve in situ, measurable conservation outcomes that can reasonably be expected to result in no net loss and preferably a net gain of biodiversity.
2. **Additional conservation outcomes:** A biodiversity offset should achieve conservation outcomes above and beyond results that would have occurred if the offset had not taken place. Offset design and implementation should avoid displacing activities harmful to biodiversity to other locations.
3. **Adherence to the mitigation hierarchy:** A biodiversity offset is a commitment to compensate for significant residual adverse impacts on biodiversity identified after appropriate avoidance, minimisation and on-site rehabilitation measures have been taken according to the mitigation hierarchy.
4. **Limits to what can be offset:** There are situations where residual impacts cannot be fully compensated for by a biodiversity offset because of the irreplaceability or vulnerability of the biodiversity affected.
5. **Landscape context:** A biodiversity offset should be designed and implemented in a landscape context to achieve the expected measurable conservation outcomes taking into account available information on the full range of biological, social and cultural values of biodiversity and supporting an ecosystem approach.
6. **Stakeholder participation:** In areas affected by the project and by the biodiversity offset, the effective participation of stakeholders should be ensured in decision-making about biodiversity offsets, including their evaluation, selection, design, implementation and monitoring.
7. **Equity:** A biodiversity offset should be designed and implemented in an equitable manner, which means the sharing among stakeholders of the rights and responsibilities, risks and rewards associated with a project and offset in a fair and balanced way, respecting legal and customary arrangements. Special consideration should be given to respecting both internationally and nationally recognised rights of indigenous peoples and local communities.
8. **Long-term outcomes:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset should be based on an adaptive management approach, incorporating monitoring and evaluation, with the objective of securing outcomes that last at least as long as the project's impacts and preferably in perpetuity.
9. **Transparency:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset, and communication of its results to the public, should be undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.

10. **Science and traditional knowledge:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset should be a documented process informed by sound science, including an appropriate consideration of traditional knowledge.

Advisory note:

1. *The document [Guidance on Good Practice Biodiversity Offsetting in New Zealand 2014](#) provides a New Zealand context to biodiversity offsetting, including guidance on how the Principles on Biodiversity Offsets relate to RMA requirements. In particular, it provides an explanation for terminology used in the BBOP that has a different meaning under the RMA.*

# Schedule 8 – Surf breaks | Āpiti 8 – Ngā ngaru moana

Schedule 8 contains identified significant surf breaks in the Waikato region. Schedule 8 includes the following schedules:

- Schedule 8A – Nationally significant surf breaks
- Schedule 8B – Regionally significant surf breaks

## Schedule 8A - Nationally significant surf breaks

Surf break Name	TYPE
<b>Nationally Significant</b>	
Whangamatā Bar	Bar
Raglan - Indicators	Point
Raglan - Whale Bay	Point
Raglan - Manu Bay	Point

## Schedule 8B - Regionally significant surf breaks

Surf break Name	TYPE
<b>Regionally Significant</b>	
Albatross Point	Point, Beach
Aotea Reef	Bombora
Awakino	Beach, River Bars
Hahei	Point, Beach
Homunga	Beach, Bombora
Hotwater Beach	Point, Beach, Bombora
Kiritehere	Point, Boulder/Pebble/Sand Beach
Kuaotunu	Point/Reef, Beach
Marokopa	Beach, River Bars
Matarangi	Beach, Bar
Mōkau	Beach, River Bars
Mussel Rocks	Beach
New Chums	Point, Beach
Ngarunui Beach	Beach
Onemana	Beach
Opito	Beach
Opoutere	Beach, River Bar
Black Jacks	Point Break
Otama Beach	Beach
Pauanui	Bar, Beach, Point
Raglan Bar	Bar
The Reef	Point

Surf break Name	TYPE
<b>Regionally Significant</b>	
Sunset Beach	Beach
Rings	Beach
Ruapuke	Beach
Sailors Grave	Beach, Reef
Tairua	Beach, Point
Te Akau	Beach
Waikawau Bay	Beach, Reef/Point
Whangamatā Beach	Beach
Whangamatā Estuary	Bar
Whangapoua	Point, Beach
Whiritoa	Reef, Beach
Whitianga	Beach, Bar, Point

# Schedule 9 – Water quality standards | Āpiti 9 – Ngā paerewa kounġa wai

Schedule 9 identifies water quality standards for the CMA in the Waikato region. Schedule 9 includes the following schedules:

- Schedule 9A – Water quality limits
- Schedule 9B – Trigger value limits
- Schedule 9C – Areas of degraded water

## Schedule 9A – Water quality limits

This schedule provides receiving water quality standards for coastal waters. The standards apply after reasonable mixing of any contaminant or water with the receiving water and disregarding the effect of any natural perturbations that may affect the water body. The effect of more than one discharge will be assessed cumulatively.

The standards set out in the table below are not to be breached alone or cumulatively with other inputs.

Attribute	Compliance	Compliance narrative	Qualitative description	Water Quality Unit		
				Degraded estuarine	Estuarine	Open coast
Dissolved oxygen concentration (mg/l)	Annual median	Minimum value should be at or above minimum standard		>6.9	>6.9	no discernible change
	Minimum			4.6	4.6	4.6
Dissolved oxygen saturation (%)	Maximum	Annual / seasonal median should be between or at maximum and minimum standards		110	110	110
	minimum			80	80	90
pH	pH units are dimensionless	Annual minimum and annual maximum		7.0 to 8.5	7.0 to 8.5	8.0 to 8.4
Temperature (°C)	(°C)			no change by more than 3°C	no change by more than 3°C	no change by more than 3°C
Euphotic Depth	Waters shallower than euphotic depth			Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 20%	Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 20%	Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 20%
Euphotic Depth	Waters deeper than euphotic depth			Euphotic depth should not be reduced	Euphotic depth should not be reduced	Euphotic depth should not be reduced

Attribute	Compliance	Compliance narrative	Qualitative description	Water Quality Unit		
				Degraded estuarine	Estuarine	Open coast
				by more than 10%	by more than 10%	by more than 10%
Visual Water Clarity	Secchi depth(m)		There is no conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity of waters	Less than 20% reduction and exceed 1.6m based on 200mm black disc	Less than 20% reduction and exceed 1.6m based on 200mm black disc	Less than 20% reduction and exceed 1.6m based on 200mm black disc
Enterococci concentration /100ml	Concentration must not exceed		The waters are not rendered unsuitable for bathing by the presence of contaminants	280	280	40
E. Coli /faecal coliform concentration /100ml	median value of seasonal data is at or below the standard		Aquatic organisms are not rendered unsuitable for human consumption by the presence of contaminants.	14	14	14
	90th percentile value of seasonal data is at or below the standard			43	43	43
	Maximum value not to be exceeded		The waters are not rendered unsuitable for bathing by the presence of contaminants	550	550	
Nuisance Biological Growths	Presence/absence		There is no undesirable biological growths as a result of any discharge of a contaminant into the water			
Oil, grease, scum, foam, floatable material	Presence/absence		There is no production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials as a result of any discharge			

Attribute	Compliance	Compliance narrative	Qualitative description	Water Quality Unit		
				Degraded estuarine	Estuarine	Open coast
Aquatic ecosystems	Presence/absence		There is no significant adverse effects on aquatic life			
Chlorophyll-a – mg/l	Annual median			<0.004	<0.004	No discernible change

## Schedule 9B – Trigger value limits

This schedule provides receiving water quality standards for coastal waters.

The trigger values apply after reasonable mixing of any contaminant or water with the receiving water and disregarding the effect of any natural perturbations that may affect the water body. The effect of more than one discharge will be assessed cumulatively

### Advisory note:

1. *If values are close to or over the trigger value then additional monitoring may be required as a condition of resources consent or triggered by a review of the condition of that resource consent.*

Attribute	Compliance	Water Quality Unit		
		Degraded estuarine	Estuarine	Open coast
Ammoniacal Nitrogen (g/m <sup>3</sup> )	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard.	0.015	0.015	0.015
Nitrate-Nitrite Nitrogen (g/m <sup>3</sup> )	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.015	0.015	0.005
Total Nitrogen (g/m <sup>3</sup> )	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.3	0.3	0.12
Dissolved reactive phosphorus (g/m <sup>3</sup> )	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.005	0.005	0.01
Total phosphorus (g/m <sup>3</sup> )	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.03	0.03	0.025
Toxicants	Values in water should not exceed recommended standards as per ANZG (2018) for relevant parameter and protection level	Default Guideline values in ANZG (2018)	Default Guideline values in ANZG (2018)	Default Guideline values in ANZG (2018)

## Schedule 9C – Areas of degraded water

Areas of coastal water identified as degraded water:

- Firth of Thames
- Whiritoa lagoon



# Schedule 10 – Financial contributions | Āpiti

## 10 – Ngā pūtea tautoko

Where Waikato Regional Council grants a consent under the rules in this plan, it may impose a condition requiring that a financial contribution be made of the purposes specified in the plan.

The term ‘financial contribution’ is defined in section 108(9) of the RMA to mean:

“... a contribution of:

- (a) money; or
- (b) land, including an esplanade reserve or esplanade strip (other than in relation to a subdivision consent), but excluding Māori land within the meaning of Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993 unless that Act provides otherwise; or
- (c) a combination of money and land.”

The RMA requires the regional council to specify in the plan the purposes for which such contributions may be required and used; and the manner in which the amount of the contribution will be determined. Financial contributions may be for various purposes specified in the plan, including the purpose of ensuring positive effects on the environment to mitigate any adverse effects.

When deciding how those contributions should be levied or allocated, consideration will be given to matters contained within any submissions on a coastal permit application.

### 10.1 Purpose

Financial contributions may be imposed on any coastal permit for the purposes set out below. Contributions of money to the Waikato Regional Council will be used for the purpose for which the contribution is required.

Note that if the adverse effects of an activity can be appropriately avoided, remedied, mitigated or, offset, and this is identified in a resource consent application, then financial contributions will not be required. However, if mitigation or offsetting is dependent on a third party, Waikato Regional Council may require financial contributions or a contractual agreement.

The following provisions set out the purposes for which financial contributions may be imposed.

Circumstance	Purpose
Preservation or enhancement of natural character	To mitigate or offset adverse effects of an activity of natural character values in a manner that protects or restores natural character values.
Protection, maintenance or enhancement of landscape or amenity	To mitigate adverse effects of erection or placement of a structure and/or disturbance of the foreshore or seabed on landscape or amenity by landscaping or planting.
Protection, maintenance or enhancement of biodiversity	To mitigate the adverse effects of damage, destruction or erosion of coastal habitats by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. enhancing or restoring habitat on the site; or</li> <li>2. creating, restoring or enhancing a similar coastal habitat at a site in the same general locality; or</li> <li>3. enhancing or restoring habitat of taonga species.</li> </ol>

Circumstance	Purpose
Protection, maintenance or enhancement of public access to and along the coast	<p>To remedy or mitigate the effects of an activity restricting public access to or along the coast by;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. providing for public access through or around the area to which the consent applies; or</li> <li>2. contributing to new or enhanced access to or along another part of the coastal marine area within the same general locality or serving the same general community;</li> </ol> <p>except where the restriction is for purposes consistent with PA-P3.</p> <p><i>Advisory note:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>The operation of this section is limited to mitigating restrictions on access caused by activities within the coastal marine area. The limitation of access to and along the coastal marine area from activities that are conducted solely above MHWS is not able to be compensated for under this section.</i></li> </ol>
Protection, maintenance or enhancement of recreational values	<p>To mitigate adverse effects of an activity on recreational values in the coastal marine area by creating or improving:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. recreational opportunities;</li> <li>2. public access; or</li> <li>3. public amenities</li> </ol> <p>on or in the vicinity of the site, or serving the same general community.</p>
Protection, maintenance or restoration of sites of cultural and historical importance	<p>To mitigate adverse effects on sites of cultural or historic importance by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. providing for works that protect, maintain or restore the affected site;</li> <li>2. contributing to protection, maintenance or restoration of some alternative historic or cultural site in the same general locality.</li> </ol>
General environmental compensation	<p>To provide environmental compensation where an activity will have adverse effects, which will not be adequately avoided, remedied or mitigated by any other types of contribution described elsewhere in this section.</p> <p>Environmental compensation may include a financial contribution towards environmental restoration, or marae/community enhancement projects to assist in offsetting adverse effects.</p>

## 10.2 Determining a financial contribution

An assessment as to whether a financial contribution is appropriate to the activity will be made on a case by case basis.

## 10.3 Amount of financial contribution

The amount of contribution will be determined on a case-by-case basis by Waikato Regional Council with reference to the matters to be considered. The amount will not exceed the reasonable cost of

funding positive environmental effects required to offset the adverse effects caused directly by the activity.

The contribution will be used to provide positive mitigation effects reasonably equivalent in standard, amenity value or environmental value to those amenities or resources that will be lost, compromised or adversely affected. These may be determined as part of the hearing process for notified resource consent applications.

### **10.3.1 Matters to be Considered**

In deciding whether or not to impose financial contributions, the types of contribution and their value, Waikato Regional Council will have particular regard to the following matters:

1. The purpose of the financial contribution is to avoid, remedy or mitigate the community, cultural or environmental effects caused or contributed to by the activity and not otherwise avoided, remedied or mitigated by the resource consent holder.
2. Whether granting a resource consent and requiring a financial contribution would be more effective in achieving the purpose of the RMA and the objectives and policies of the plan than declining consent, or granting a consent without a condition requiring a financial contribution.
3. Financial contributions will relate to the effects of the activity for which consent is granted and be consistent with the significance of any adverse effects resulting from the activity that are not otherwise mitigated.
4. Any financial contribution required will be reasonable, and consistent with the purpose of the RMA and the effects of the activity.

# Schedule 11 – Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011

The Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 (MACAA) sets out a legal framework for recognising customary interests in the common marine and coastal area (CMCA).

The common marine and coastal area includes any part of the coastal marine area that is not privately owned, conservation land, a reserve or national park.

Iwi, hapū or whānau can apply for:

- Customary marine title (CMT), and/or
- Protected customary rights (PCR).

If either of these customary recognitions is granted, they can affect the way that resource consents are considered and what affected party approvals are required.

The link provides information on the status of MACCA applications in the region.

<https://www.courtsofnz.govt.nz/the-courts/high-court/high-court-lists/marine-and-coastal-area-takutai-moana-act-2011-applications-for-recognition-orders/>

## Customary Marine Title (CMT)

Customary Marine Title recognises that the group has an interest in a specific area of the CMCA and gives the group rights that are similar, but not equivalent, to a freehold landowner. If CMT is granted to a group, the group gains various rights (set out in section 62 of the MACAA). These rights exist once the CMT is given effect by an Act of Parliament (section 96 of the MACAA).

Most relevant to the Resource Management Act 1991 and resource consent processes are:

- **A Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) permission right** - the right to grant or decline permission for an activity to occur that requires a resource consent in the CMT area for any reason (section 66 of the MACAA).
- **A right to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi tapu areas** - the CMT can contain conditions to protect wāhi tapu. The regional council is required to take any appropriate action that is reasonably necessary to encourage public compliance with any wāhi tapu conditions (see sections 78 to 81 of the MACAA).
- **The ownership of minerals** other than petroleum, gold, silver, and uranium.
- **The right to create a planning document** (see sections 85 to 93 MACAA) – after the planning document is lodged with the regional council it must be taken into account during decision-making, and the regional council must review its planning documents to ensure that they recognise and provide for the CMT planning document.

## When a CMT application is lodged

Once an application for a CMT is lodged, a resource consent applicant for an activity in that area must notify and 'seek the views' of the CMT applicant group before lodging their consent application.

## **When CMT is given effect**

### **RMA Permission Right**

The most important ‘right’ with regard to resource consents is the RMA permission right. In a CMT area, activities requiring a resource consent (including controlled activities) cannot be undertaken unless an RMA permission right has been obtained from the CMT group.

Accommodated activities do not require an RMA permission right. These activities are set out in section 64 of the MACAA and include:

- any activity if the application for resource consent was lodged before the CMT was granted.
- a minimum impact activity under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 relating to petroleum.
- existing infrastructure structures and associated activities (including maintenance).
- activities related to managing an existing marine reserve, wildlife sanctuary, marine mammal sanctuary or concession:
  - existing aquaculture activities provided there is no increase in the area or location (the species and method of farming can be changed).
  - emergency works (undertaken under section 330 of the RMA).
  - scientific research or monitoring that is undertaken or funded by the Crown, any Crown agent or the regional council.
  - a deemed accommodated activity (new infrastructure).

The process for obtaining an RMA permission right is set out in section 67 of the MACAA. In summary:

- A resource consent applicant must request an RMA permission right from the CMT group – this can be done at any point.
- The CMT group must notify the resource consent applicant and regional council of its decision.
- If the RMA permission right is granted it can be for a duration that is shorter than the resource consent term.
- If the resource consent is granted, but the applicant has not been notified of a decision on the RMA permission right, the CMT group has to make a decision within 40 working days from the day that it receives notification from the applicant that the consent has been granted.
- If no decision is made after 40 working days, then permission is deemed to have been given and the resource consent can commence.
- The resource consent applicant cannot appeal the decision made by the CMT group on the RMA permission right.
- The CMT group can grant or decline an RMA permission right on any grounds.

### **Affected Party Status – accommodated activities**

A consent authority must give limited notification to an affected CMT group even if a rule or national environmental standard precludes limited notification (see section 95B of the RMA). This only applies to CMT groups for accommodated activities.

A CMT group is deemed to an affected CMT group (see section 95G of the RMA) in relation to an accommodated activity if the activity is occurring in an area over which the group has been granted CMT and:

- the activity may have adverse effects on the exercise of rights applying to a CMT group; and
- written approval has not provided by the CMT group.

### **Protected Customary Rights (PCR)**

Protected Customary Rights are activities, uses and practices that have been undertaken since 1840 in a particular part of the CMCA in accordance with tikanga. Possible examples include tauranga waka (waka landing sites) or collecting hangi stones.

Once PCR have been granted over an area, the following apply:

- A resource consent is not required to carry out the PCR in that area (section 52(1) of the MACAA 2011) – the Minister of Conservation may impose controls if there is likely to be significant adverse effects from an activity.
- The PCR group is not liable for any coastal occupation charges or royalty payments for sand and shingle associated with the PCR in that area (section 52(2) of the MACAA 2011).
- The PCR group can benefit commercially from a PCR activity (except from a non-commercial aquaculture or fishery activity).
- Rights can be delegated or transferred.
- The public cannot be excluded from the area.
- A resource consent cannot be granted for an activity (including controlled activities) that will have a more than minor adverse effect on a PCR unless the PCR group has given written approval *or* the activity is one of the following (section 55 of the MACAA):
  - Existing aquaculture activities provided there is no increase in the area or location (the species and method of farming can be changed).
  - Emergency works (undertaken under section 330 of the RMA).
  - Existing infrastructure (see section 63 of the MACAA) provided the adverse effects on the PCR are likely to remain the same or similar in extent OR temporary in nature.
  - A deemed accommodated activity (see section 65 of the MACAA).

Deemed accommodated activities are associated with new infrastructure in the CMCA that has national or regional significance. The Minister of Land Information has the power to decide whether an activity is a deemed accommodated activity, using a process set out in Schedule 2 to the MACAA.

If a resource consent application is for a deemed accommodated activity the consent authority must have particular regard to the nature of the PCR when considering the application.

### **Affected Party Status**

A consent authority must give limited notification to an affected PCR group even if a rule or national environmental standard precludes limited notification (see section 95B of the RMA).

A PCR group is deemed to an affected PCR group (see section 95F of the RMA) in relation to an accommodated activity if the activity is occurring in an area over which the group has been granted PCR and:

- the activity may have adverse effects on a protected customary right; and
- written approval has not been provided by the PCR group.

# Schedule 12 – Accidental Discovery Protocol |

## Āpiti 12 – Tikanga tūhuratanga

### Accidental Discovery Protocol:

Where, during disturbance of foreshore or seabed, any archaeological feature, artefact or human remains are accidentally discovered or are suspected to have been discovered, the following protocol is to be followed:

1. Work is to cease immediately at that place and within 20m around the site.
2. The contractor must shut down all machinery, secure the area, and advise the Site Manager.
3. The Site Manager is to secure the site and notify the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist. Further assessment by an archaeologist may be required, including determining if it is an archaeological site and whether or not any bones discovered are human in origin.
4. If the site is of Māori origin, the Site Manager is to notify the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist and the appropriate iwi groups or kaitiaki representative of the discovery and ensure site access to enable appropriate cultural procedures and tikanga to be undertaken, as long as all statutory requirements under legislation are met (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act, Protected Objects Act).
5. If human remains (koiwi tangata) are uncovered the Site Manager is to advise the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist, NZ Police and the appropriate iwi groups or kaitiaki representative and the above process under 4 applies. Remains are not to be moved until such time as iwi and Heritage New Zealand have responded.
6. Works affecting the archaeological site and any human remains (koiwi tangata) are not to resume until Heritage New Zealand gives written approval for work to continue. Further assessment by an archaeologist may be required.
7. Where iwi so request, any information recorded as the result of the find such as a description of location and content, is to be provided for their records.
8. Heritage New Zealand will determine if an archaeological authority under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 is required for works to continue.

It is an offence under S87 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 to modify or destroy an archaeological site without an authority from Heritage New Zealand irrespective of whether the works are permitted or consent has been issued under the Resource Management Act 1991.

#### Advisory note:

1. *Accidental Discovery protocols need to address requirements of the relevant rohe Environmental Management Plan, which is likely to include an iwi cultural advisor or representative undertaking appropriate tikanga.*

# Waikato



REGIONAL COUNCIL

*Te Kaunihera ā Rohe o Waikato*

He taiāo mauriora  
**Healthy environment**

He hāpori hihiri  
**Vibrant communities**

He ōhanga pakari  
**Strong economy**

Policy Series 2023/11  
ISSN 2230-4339 (Print)  
ISSN 2230-4347 (Online)  
Printed 2023 #7337

Private Bag 3038, Waikato Mail Centre,  
Hamilton 3240, New Zealand  
0800 800 401 [waikatoregion.govt.nz](http://waikatoregion.govt.nz)